LightCycler® 480 Instrument Operator's Manual

Software Version 1.5

www.roche-applied-science.com

	Prologue	**9**
I	**Revision History**	**9**
II	**Contact Addresses**	**9**
III	**Declaration of Conformity**	**10**
IV	**21 CFR Part 11 Compliance**	**10**
V	**Warranty**	**10**
VI	**Trademarks**	**10**
VII	**Intended Use**	**11**
VIII	**License Statements for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument**	**11**
IX	**Software License Agreement**	**12**
1	Program License Agreement	12
2	Grant of Software License	12
3	Limited Warranty	13
4	Disclaimer of Warranties	13
5	Limitations of Remedies	14
6	General Information	14
7	Intellectual Property Rights	14
8	Duration and Termination	15
9	Import, Export and Use of the Software	15
10	Miscellaneous	15
11	Governing Law and Place of Jurisdiction	15
X	**Preamble**	**16**
XI	**Usage of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument Operator's Manual**	**16**
XII	**Conventions Used in this Manual**	**17**
XIII	**Warnings and Precautions**	**19**
XIV	**Disposal of the Instrument**	**22**
A	**Overview**	**25**
1	**Introduction**	25
2	**New Features**	26
2.1	Hardware	26
2.2	Software	26
2.3	Upgrade from Software Version 1.2 to 1.5	28
3	**Specifications of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument**	29
3.1	General	29
3.2	Environmental Parameters	29
3.3	Interfaces	30
3.4	Xenon Lamp	30
3.5	Sample Capacity	30
3.6	Shipping	30
3.7	Control Unit	31
4	**Specifications of the Detection Unit**	32
4.1	Excitation	32
4.2	Detector	32

4.3 Filter ... 32
4.3.1 Filter Set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I ... 32
4.3.2 Filter Set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II ... 33

5 Specifications of the Thermal Block Cyclers ... 34
5.1 LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Aluminum ... 34
5.2 LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Silver ... 34

6 Specifications of the Multiwell Plate Bar-Code Scanner ... 35

7 Specifications of the Handheld Bar-Code Scanner ... 36

B System Description 39

1 System Package ... 39

2 Installation ... 40
2.1 Installation Requirements ... 40
2.2 Space and Power Requirements ... 40
2.3 Environmental Requirements ... 42
2.4 Installation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 43

3 System Description ... 47
3.1 Description of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 47
3.2 Description of the Block Cycler Unit ... 51
3.3 Description of the Detection Unit ... 54
3.4 Description of the Detection Channels ... 56
3.4.1 LightCycler® 480 Instrument I Filter Set ... 56
3.4.2 LightCycler® 480 Instrument II Filter Set ... 57
3.5 LightCycler® 480 Disposables ... 58
3.6 LightCycler® 480 Reagents ... 60
3.7 Additional Equipment Required ... 62
3.8 Detection Formats for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 63
3.8.1 Overview ... 63
3.8.2 Monitoring PCR with the SYBR Green I Dye ... 65
3.8.3 Monitoring PCR with Hydrolysis Probes ... 67
3.8.4 Monitoring PCR with HybProbe Probes ... 69
3.8.5 Genotyping with SimpleProbe Probes ... 71

C Operation 75

1 Introduction ... 75

2 System Start-Up ... 76

3 Preparing and Starting a LightCycler® 480 Instrument Run ... 77

4 Exchanging the LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler ... 80

D LightCycler® 480 Software 85

Basic Software Functionalities 90

1 Overview of LightCycler® 480 Software ... 90
1.1 General LightCycler® 480 Software User Interface Conventions ... 91
1.2 Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software ... 92
1.3 Understanding the LightCycler® 480 Software Main Window ... 94

1.4 Selection and Navigation Features 100
1.4.1 The Navigator 100
1.4.2 The Query Tab 104
1.4.3 Sample Selector 108
1.4.4 Sample Table 111
1.5 Exporting and Importing 113
1.5.1 Exporting Individual LightCycler® 480 Software Objects and Experiment Raw Data 115
1.5.2 Exporting Multiple Files Simultaneously 116
1.5.3 Importing Individual Files 119
1.5.4 Importing Multiple Files Simultaneously 120

2 Programming and Running an Experiment 123
2.1 Programming an Experiment 123
2.1.1 Setting Detection Formats 126
2.1.2 Defining Programs and Temperature Targets 128
2.1.3 Customizing the Online Data Display 131
2.2 Running an Experiment 133
2.3 Entering Sample Information 135
2.3.1 Sample Editor Window 135
2.3.2 Sample Editor Action Bar 137
2.3.3 Configuring Sample Editor Properties 138
2.3.4 Entering Sample Information 139

3 Overview of Experimental Analysis 147
3.1 Overview of Analysis Steps 148
3.2 Using the Analysis Window 150
3.2.1 Selecting Filter Combination and Color Compensation 151
3.2.2 Working with Samples in the Analysis 152
3.2.3 Working with Charts in the Analysis Window 153
3.2.4 Adding Analysis Notes 154
3.2.5 Removing or Renaming an Analysis 154
3.3 Exporting Analysis Results 156

Software Applications 160

4 Quantification 160
4.1 Overview 160
4.2 Absolute Quantification Analysis 161
4.2.1 Understanding Sample Crossing Points 162
4.2.2 Understanding the Role of Standard Curves 162
4.2.3 Providing the Standard Curve 164
4.2.4 Performing Absolute Quantification Analyses Using the Second Derivative Maximum Method 167
4.2.5 Performing Absolute Quantification Analysis Using the Fit Points Method 170
4.2.6 Viewing Results 176
4.3 Relative Quantification Analysis 179
4.3.1 Overview 179
4.3.2 Mono-Color or Dual-Color Experiment 182
4.3.3 Principle of Relative Quantification Analysis 183
4.3.4 Performing a Basic Relative Quantification Experiment 185
4.3.5 Performing an Advanced Relative Quantification Experiment 187
4.3.6 Performing a Relative Quantification Analysis 193
4.3.7 Viewing the Results 198
4.3.8 Pairing Samples and Creating Result Sets 199
4.3.9 External Standard Curves 202
4.3.10 Supplementary Information 203

5	***T_m* Calling Analysis**	206
5.1	Using Melting Curve Profiles to Identify DNA Products and Genotypes	206
5.1.1	Defining a Melt Program	206
5.1.2	Content of a Melting Temperature Analysis	207
5.2	Performing *T_m* Calling Analysis	208
6	**Genotyping**	216
6.1	Overview	216
6.2	Endpoint Genotyping Analysis	217
6.2.1	Overview	217
6.2.2	Principle of Endpoint Genotyping	219
6.2.3	Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Experiment	219
6.2.4	Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Analysis	225
6.2.5	Supplementary Functions	231
6.3	Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis	232
6.3.1	Overview	232
6.3.2	Principle of Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis	234
6.3.3	Performing a Melting Curve Genotyping Experiment	235
6.3.4	Supplementary Functions	245

Advanced Software Functionalities **248**

7	**Color Compensation Analysis**	248
7.1	Performing a Color Compensation Experiment	250
7.2	To Apply Color Compensation	256
8	**Working with Templates and Macros**	257
8.1	Creating and Using Templates	257
8.2	Creating and Using Macros	262
9	**Working with Subsets**	266
10	**Working with Charts**	270
10.1	Printing, Exporting, and Copying Charts	270
10.2	Zooming and Panning to View Chart Details	274
11	**Working with Tables**	276
12	**Generating Reports**	278
13	**Working with Preferences**	282
13.1	Using Chart Preferences	282
13.1.1	Specifying Chart Heading and Label Styles	284
13.1.2	Specifying the Content of Fluorescence Charts	284
13.1.3	Specifying the Appearance of Standard Curve Charts	286
13.1.4	Specifying the Content and Appearance of the Temperature Chart	287
13.1.5	Overriding Default Chart Preferences	287
13.1.6	Creating a Separate Chart Preferences Item and Making it the Default	290
13.2	Using Sample Preferences	291
13.3	Specifying User Preferences	293

14 Administrative Tools 294
14.1 Managing User Access 295
14.1.1 Understanding User Accounts 295
14.1.2 Understanding Groups 296
14.1.3 Understanding Roles 296
14.1.4 Privileges of the Standard User Role 297
14.1.5 Privileges of the Expert User Role 298
14.1.6 Privileges of the Local Administrator Role 299
14.1.7 User Access to Objects 300
14.1.8 Managing Users, Groups, and Roles 306
14.1.9 Working with Roles 309
14.1.10 Changing Your Password 311
14.2 Report Settings 312
14.3 Error Log 313
14.4 Database Information 314
14.4.1 Traceable and Research Databases 314
14.4.2 To Clean up the Database 315
14.4.3 To Compress the Database 317
14.4.4 How to Handle Databases from Software Version 1.3 or Earlier 317
14.4.5 How to Handle Objects from Software Version 1.3 or Earlier 318
14.5 Instruments 319
14.6 Detection Formats 323
14.7 Setting the Plate Type 327

15 Diagnostic Tools 328
15.1 Instrument Problem Report 328
15.2 Error Log 329
15.3 Self Test 329

16 Installation and Maintenance of LightCycler® 480 Software 330
16.1 Installing LightCycler® 480 Software 331
16.2 Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software and Connecting an Instrument 336
16.3 Saving an Existing Database and Installing Additional Databases 339
16.4 Logging on to Different Databases 343
16.5 Replacing an Existing Database File with a Database File of the Same Name 345
16.6 Setting up a Client/Server Network 346
16.7 Removing LightCycler® 480 Software 350

E Maintenance 353

1 General Maintenance 353

2 Cleaning Instructions 353
2.1 General Cleaning 353
2.2 Preventive Maintenance 353

3 Exchanging the Xenon Lamp 354

4 Exchanging the Ventilation Dust Filters 358

5 Exchanging Fuses 360

F Appendix 367

1 Troubleshooting 367
1.1 Messages in the Message Area of the LightCycler® 480 Software 368
1.2 Instrument Control Software Messages 369
1.3 Hardware Errors 371

2 Ordering Information 373

3 Index 375

Prologue

I Revision History

Version	Revision Date
1.0	September 2005
2.0	June 2006
3.0	February 2008

© Copyright 2008, Roche Diagnostics GmbH. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Roche Diagnostics GmbH.

Questions or comments regarding the contents of this manual can be directed to the address below or to your Roche representative.

Roche Diagnostics GmbH
Roche Applied Science
Customer Support
Nonnenwald 2
82372 Penzberg, Germany

Every effort has been made to ensure that all the information contained in the LightCycler® 480 Instrument Operator's Manual is correct at the time of printing.

However, Roche Diagnostics GmbH reserves the right to make any changes necessary without notice as part of ongoing product development.

II Contact Addresses

	Manufacturer	Roche Diagnostics Ltd. Forrenstrasse CH-6343 Rotkreuz Switzerland
	Distribution	Roche Diagnostics GmbH Sandhofer Straße 116 D-68305 Mannheim Germany
	Distribution in USA	Roche Diagnostics 9115 Hague Road PO Box 50457 Indianapolis, IN 46250 USA

III Declaration of Conformity

CE	The instrument meets the requirements laid down in Council Directive 89/336/EEC relating to “Electromagnetic Compatibility” and Council Directive 73/23/EEC relating to “Low Voltage Equipment”. The following standards were applied: IEC/EN 61326 (EMC) and IEC/EN 61010-1 (Safety).
c UL us LISTED	UL 61010-1 Electrical Equipment for Measurement, Control and Laboratory Use; Part 1: General Requirements CAN/CSA-C22.2 No. 61010-1 (Second Edition) Safety Requirements for Electrical Equipment for Measurement, Control and Laboratory Use; Part 1: General Requirements

IV 21 CFR Part 11 Compliance

LightCycler® 480 Software is designed to provide compatibility[#)] with FDA’s 21 CFR Part 11 requirements. The software is compatible with the regulations for electronic records (Subpart B). Since LightCycler® 480 Software does not feature electronic signatures the regulations for electronic signatures (Subpart C) are not applicable.

[#)]Full part 11 compliance of the LightCycler® 480 Software is to be established at the user’s site and depends on appropriate configuration and setup, and the implementation of suitable organizational measures.

V Warranty

Information on warranty conditions are specified in the sales contract. Contact your Roche representative for further information.

Any unauthorized modification of the instrument entails the invalidity of the guarantee and service contract.

VI Trademarks

LIGHTCYCLER, LC, HYBPROBE, SIMPLEPROBE and COBAS are trademarks of Roche.

PROBELIBRARY is a registered trademark of Exiqon A/S, Vedbaek, Denmark. Universal ProbeLibrary is covered by US and other patent applications owned by Exiqon A/S.

SYBR is a trademark of Molecular Probes, Inc., Eugene, OR, USA.

FAM and HEX are trademarks of Applera Corp., Norwark, CT, USA.

Other brands or product names are trademarks of their respective holders.

VII Intended Use

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is intended for performing rapid, accurate polymerase chain reaction (PCR) in combination with real-time, online detection enabling Absolute or Relative Quantification of a target nucleic acid, as well as post-PCR analysis of the amplified nucleic acid by Melting Curve analysis.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is intended for general laboratory use and must be used exclusively by laboratory professionals trained in laboratory techniques and having studied the instructions for use of this instrument. **The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is not intended for use in diagnostic procedures**.

VIII License Statements for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

This LightCycler® 480 Real-Time PCR System is an Authorized Thermal Cycler. Its purchase price includes the up-front fee component of a license under the non-U.S. counterparts of U.S. Patents Nos. 4,683,202, 4,683,195 and 4,965,188 owned by F. Hoffmann-La Roche Ltd. ("Roche"), covering the Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR) process, to practice the PCR process for internal research and development using this instrument. The running royalty component of that license may be purchased from Applied Biosystems or obtained by purchasing Authorized Reagents. This instrument is also an Authorized Thermal Cycler for use with applications licenses available from Applied Biosystems. Its use with Authorized Reagents also provides a limited PCR license in accordance with the label rights accompanying such reagents. Purchase of this product does not itself convey to the purchaser a complete license or right to perform the PCR process.

This LightCycler® 480 Real-Time PCR System is a real-time thermal cycler licensed for use in research under U.S. Patent No. 6,814,934 and corresponding claims in its non-U.S. counterparts, and under one or more of U.S. Patents Nos. 5,038,852, 5,656,493, 5,333,675, or corresponding claims in their non-U.S. counterparts, owned by Applera Corporation. No right is conveyed expressly, by implication or by estoppel under any other patent claim, such as claims to apparatus, reagents, kits, or methods such as 5' nuclease methods. This instrument is for research use only. For further information on purchasing licenses other than for in vitro diagnostics, contact the Director of Licensing at Applied Biosystems, 850 Lincoln Centre Drive, Foster City, California 94404, USA.

Parts of the Software used for the LightCycler® 480 System are licensed from Idaho Technology Inc., Salt Lake City, UT, USA.

This product is covered in-part by US 5,871,908 or any foreign equivalents, co-exclusively licensed from Evotec OAI AG. The purchase price includes a license to practice the methods covered by US 5,871, 908 by using the product. Purchase of this product, however, does not convey to the purchaser a license or right to

(i) commercially make, have made or sell reagents and/or kits, or

(ii) buy or use reagents and/or kits provided by a third party

used in conjunction with the product or any other thermocycler to practice the methods covered by US 5,871,908 or any foreign equivalents.

IX Software License Agreement

Read the following terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement ("Agreement") carefully before installing the LightCycler® 480 Software, hereinafter referred to as ("Software"). Proceeding with the installation of the Software will constitute acceptance of the terms and conditions of this Agreement. By accepting the terms and conditions of this Agreement, the end-user ("Licensee") assumes all responsibility and liability for the selection of this Software to achieve the intended results, and for its installation and subsequent use. If Licensee is not willing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement, the Software package must be promptly returned to Roche ("Supplier") with a copy of the receipt against refunding of the purchase price for this Software.

1 Program License Agreement

Licensee assumes all responsibility and liability for the selection of this Software to achieve the intended results, and for its installation and subsequent use. The Software is protected by copyright.

2 Grant of Software License

Supplier grants to Licensee subject to continuous compliance with all the provisions hereinafter, a non-exclusive, single-use license to use the Software upon the terms and conditions contained in this Agreement.

Licensee may:

a. Use the Software on up to five workstations at a time and such workstations have to be owned, leased or otherwise controlled by Licensee, whether in a network or other configuration.

b. Transfer the Software by assigning the rights under this Agreement to another party, provided that the other party agrees in writing to accept the terms and conditions of this Agreement. In addition, Licensee must ensure that the copyright notice is maintained on the Software transferred.

Licensee may not:

a. Use the Software, in whole or in part, except as expressly provided in this Agreement.

b. Use the Software on more than five workstations at a time.

c. Copy, sell, or otherwise transfer the Software or assign its rights under this Agreement, in whole or in part, to another party, except as expressly provided in this Agreement.

d. Rent, distribute, license or sublicense the Software.

e. Create derivative works based on Software.

f. Modify, adapt, translate, reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the Software.

Supplier reserves all rights not expressly granted herein, including, but not limited to, the rights to market the Software either directly or through affiliates, distributors and/or third parties.

For further information, please contact your local Roche Applied Science support organization. You will find the contact information on the following webpage: www.roche-applied-science.com.

3 Limited Warranty

The Software is provided "as is" without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. The entire risk as to the quality and performance of the Software is with Licensee, should the Software prove to be defective. Licensee assumes the entire costs of all necessary servicing, repair, or correction. However, Supplier warrants that the program media on which the Software is furnished is free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of delivery as evidenced by a copy of your receipt. SUPPLIER MAKES NO FURTHER WARRANTIES OR GUARANTEES NOR EXPLICIT NOR IMPLIED.

4 Disclaimer of Warranties

THE WARRANTY SET FORTH IN THE PREVIOUS PARAGRAPH, IS IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, ARISING BY LAW, FROM A COURSE OF PERFORMANCE, A COURSE OF DEALING, TRADE USAGE, OR OTHERWISE. SUPPLIER AND ANY ENTITY CONTROLLING, CONTROLLED BY OR UNDER COMMON CONTROL WITH SUPPLIER ("SUPPLIER'S AFFILIATE") SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. SUPPLIER AND SUPPLIER'S AFFILIATES MAKE NO REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY AS TO THE SOFTWARE OR AS TO THE RESULTS TO BE ATTAINED BY LICENSEE OR ANY THIRD PARTY FROM THE SOFTWARE. LICENSEE ACKNOWLEDGES THAT IT HAS NOT RELIED UPON ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES MADE BY SUPPLIER OR A SUPPLIER'S AFFILIATE EXCEPT FOR THOSE EXPRESSLY AND SPECIFICALLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT.

5 Limitations of Remedies

Supplier's sole liability and Licensee's sole remedy shall be:

a. The replacement of the program media not meeting Supplier's limited warranty and which is returned to Supplier with a copy of Licensee's receipt;

b. If Supplier is unable to deliver replacement of program media which is free of defects in material and workmanship, Licensee may terminate this Agreement by returning the Software and a copy of Licensee's receipt to Supplier, and Licensee's money will be refunded.

IN NO EVENT WILL SUPPLIER OR ANY OF SUPPLIER'S AFFILIATES (OR THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, CONSULTANTS, ATTORNEYS OR AGENTS), BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOST PROFITS, LOST DATA OR INFORMATION, LOSS OF USE OF THE SOFTWARE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS REPUTATION OR GOODWILL, OR DOWNTIME COSTS) WHICH THE LICENSEE OR THIRD PARTIES MAY INCUR OR EXPERIENCE, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE SOFTWARE, THIS AGREEMENT, OR THE TERMINATION OF THIS AGREEMENT, EVEN IF SUPPLIER OR A SUPPLIER'S AFFILIATE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES AND NOTWITHSTANDING ANY FAILURE OF ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THE AGGREGATE LIABILITY, ON A COMBINED BASIS, OF SUPPLIER AND SUPPLIER'S AFFILIATES (AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES CONSULTANTS, ATTORNEYS, AND AGENTS) FOR DAMAGES FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY RELATING TO OR ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT OR THE SOFTWARE, AND REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF ACTION, SHALL BE LIMITED TO, AT SUPPLIER'S OPTION, REPLACEMENT OF THE SOFTWARE OR REFUND OF THE FEES RECEIVED BY SUPPLIER OR A SUPPLIER'S AFFILIATE FROM LICENSEE WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE.

6 General Information

Licensee may not sublicense, assign or transfer the license or the Software, in whole or in part, except as expressly provided in this Agreement. Any attempt otherwise to sublicense, assign or transfer any of the rights, duties or obligations hereunder is void.

7 Intellectual Property Rights

Licensee shall only hold those rights to the Software that are expressly described in Section 2 of this Agreement. Any other rights with regard to the Software, including without limitation, ownership rights and patent, copyright, trademark, trade secret and other intellectual property rights, shall remain the sole property of Supplier. Licensee will not remove from the Software any references to copyrights, trademarks or other ownership rights, or cover up or alter any such references. Licensee will take all reasonable steps to prevent any unauthorized use, reproduction, sale, or publication of the Software or the unauthorized provision of access thereto. Licensee will indemnify and hold harmless Supplier from any losses, damages, claims and expenses (including, without limitation, reasonable legal expenses) relating to any infringement of the rights of Supplier caused by Licensee, Licensee's breach of this Agreement or Licensee's use of the Software in a manner not authorized under this Agreement.

8 Duration and Termination

The Agreement is effective until terminated. Licensee may terminate this Agreement at any time by destroying the Software and documentation relating to the Software in any form. The Agreement will terminate automatically and without notice from Supplier, if Licensee fails to comply with any term or condition of this Agreement. Licensee agrees to destroy the Software upon termination of this Agreement by Supplier. On any termination of this Agreement, all rights of use of the Software held by Licensee shall expire.

9 Import, Export and Use of the Software

Licensee shall be exclusively responsible for ensuring compliance with the relevant legislation relating to its rights to import, export or use the Software.

10 Miscellaneous

Should any part of this Agreement be declared void or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, the remaining terms shall remain in full force and effect.

Failure of Supplier to enforce any of its rights in this Agreement shall not be considered a waiver of its rights, including but not limited to its rights to respond to subsequent breaches.

By opening and using this Software Licensee acknowledges that he has read this Agreement, understands it, and agrees to be bound by its terms and conditions. Licensee further agrees that this Agreement is the complete and exclusive statement of the Agreement between Licensee and Supplier and supersedes any proposal or prior agreement, oral or written, any other communications between Licensee and Supplier relating to the subject matter of this Agreement.

The headings of the several Sections of this Agreement are intended for convenience of reference only and are not intended to be a part of or to affect the meaning or interpretation of this Agreement.

11 Governing Law and Place of Jurisdiction

This Agreement shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Indiana, without giving effect to any choice of law principles thereof. The parties agree that the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods (1980) is specifically excluded from application to this Agreement.

X Preamble

Before setting-up operation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, it is important to read this Operator's Manual thoroughly and completely. Non-observance of the instructions contained in this manual could entail safety hazards.

XI Usage of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument Operator's Manual

This Operator's Manual assists with operating the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. It contains the following chapters:

Chapter A Overview contains a short introduction to the operating mode of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument and describes the system's specifications.

Chapter B System Description contains instructions on the installation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument and a description of the system's components and consumables.

Chapter C Operation describes the operating procedures for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

Chapter D LightCycler® 480 Software contains instructions for programming LightCycler® 480 Instrument runs and performing data analysis.

Chapter E Maintenance describes the maintenance procedures that are required for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

Chapter F Appendix contains the Index and Ordering Information.

XII Conventions Used in this Manual

Text Conventions

To impart information that is consistent and memorable, the following text conventions are used in this Operator's Manual:

Numbered Listing	Steps in a procedure that must be performed in the order listed.
Italic type, blue	Points to a different chapter in this Operator's Manual which should be consulted.
Italic type	Describes how to proceed when operating the LightCycler® 480 Software.
Asterisk (*)	Denotes a product available from Roche Applied Science.

Symbols

In this Operator's Manual symbols are used as an optical signal to point out important things.

Symbol	Heading	Description
	WARNING	This symbol is used to indicate that noncompliance with instructions or procedures could lead to physical injury or even death or could cause damage to the instrument. Consult the Operator's Manual.
	HOT SURFACE	This symbol is used to label potentially hot instrument surfaces.
	BIO HAZARD	This symbol is used to indicate that certain precautions must be taken when working with potentially infectious material.
	IMPORTANT NOTE	Information critical to the success of the procedure or use of the product.
	INFORMATION NOTE	Additional information about the current topic or procedure.
▶ ▶ ▶		Procedure continued on next page.
■		End of procedure.

The Following Symbols Appear on the Instrument or Components of the Control Unit

	MANUFACTURER OF DEVICE	On the instrument type plate.
	CE MARK	The CE mark on the instrument type plate expresses conformity with requirements of the directives relevant for this instrument.
	cUL MARK	On the instrument type plate.
	CONSULT THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL	On the instrument type plate.
	HOT SURFACE	1. On the margin of the multiwell plate loader. 2. On the surface of the block cycler cover. 3. On the surface of the block cycler unit. 4. On the Xenon lamp unit.
	BIO HAZARD	On the margin of the multiwell plate loader.
	WEEE	Electrical and electronic equipment marked with this symbol are covered by the European directive WEEE. The symbol denotes that the equipment must not be disposed off in the municipal waste system.

XIII Warnings and Precautions

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument must only be used by trained and skillful personnel.

It is essential that the following safety information required for installation and operation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument are carefully read and observed. Please assure that this safety information is accessible for every employee working with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

Handling Requirements

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is an electromechanical instrument. There is a potential danger for the user of an electric shock or physical injury if the instrument is not used according to the instructions given in this manual.

- Follow all safety instructions printed on or attached to the analytical instrument.
- Observe all general safety precautions which apply to electrical instruments.
- Do not access any electrical parts while the LightCycler® 480 Instrument is connected to the mains.
- Never touch switches or power cord with wet hands.
- Do not open the housing while the LightCycler® 480 Instrument is connected to the main power supply.
- Never clean the instrument without turning the instrument power switch off and disconnecting the power cord.
- Users may replace fuses and the Xenon lamp if they follow the procedures described in in this Operator's Manual. Any other electrical modification is not allowed and could render the warranties on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument null and void.
- Only authorized service personnel are allowed to perform service or repairs required for this unit.

- Do not open the block cycler compartment during operation.
- Always wear safety goggles and gloves when dealing with toxic, caustic or infectious materials.

- Although working with highly purified nucleic acids, please regard for your own safety all biological material as potentially infectious. Handling and disposal of such material should be performed according to local safety guidelines. Spills should be immediately disinfected with an appropriate disinfectant solution to avoid spreading contamination to laboratory personnel or equipment.
- Please refer to section *Maintenance* to find instructions for cleaning the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

- The multiwell plate holder, the thermal block cycler, the block cycler cover, and the Xenon lamp are hot while the instrument is operating.

General Precautions

The LightCycler® 480 System is equipped with software, enabling the user of the Product to connect it with a network. Roche draws the attention of the user to the fact that such connection may have an adverse effect on the Product's integrity, *e.g.*, due to an infection of the Product with malicious code (viruses, Trojan horses, etc.) or access by unauthorized third parties (*e.g.*, intrusion by attackers). Roche therefore highly recommends to protect the Product against such risks by taking appropriate and state-of-the-art action.

As the Product is not intended to be used within networks without an appropriate firewall and has not been designed for such use, Roche assumes no liability in that regard.

Roche offers the user the **Cobas IT** firewall to be installed prior to the first connection of the Product to any network. For further information on this **Cobas IT** firewall and/or the Roche network security concept please contact your local Roche representative.

In the event the user connects the Product with any network without using the **Cobas IT** Firewall, Roche cannot offer any Product support regarding any problem resulting from such network connection.

In case of a stand-alone use of the software of the Product on or in connection with other IT components (*e.g.*, installation on other PCs) Roche assumes no liability with respect to any interference of the user's networks and/other IT components such use might have. Roche's liability for the proper functioning of the software under the respective license and/or purchase agreements with the user shall remain unaffected.

Contact your local Roche representative for detailed information on the **Cobas IT** *firewall.*

Microsoft Office and Norton Antivirus software are tested not to interfere with LightCycler® 480 Software and LightCycler® 480 Software modules. Any other additional software must not be installed on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument control unit. Installation of any other additional software on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument control unit presents the risk of interference with LightCycler® 480 Software and LightCycler® 480 Software modules, and could affect result security.

Anti-virus software is not provided. Therefore, it is essential to take precautions to ensure that any software loaded onto the LightCycler® 480 Instrument control unit is virus-free.

It is not allowed to connect two LightCycler® 480 Instruments to one control unit.

Make sure the main switch is freely accessible.

Incorrect location can cause incorrect results and damage to the equipment parts. Follow the installation instructions carefully. Moving the instrument must be performed only by qualified Roche service personnel.

Danger of explosion through sparks. Keep all potentially inflammable or explosive material (for example, anesthetic gas) away from the instrument. Spraying liquid on electrical parts can cause a short circuit and result in a fire. Keep the cover closed while the instrument is connected to the mains and do not use sprays in the vicinity of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. During firefighting operations, disconnect the LightCycler® 480 Instrument from the mains.

Do not manipulate the instrument.

Electrical Safety

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is designed in accordance with Protection Class I (IEC). The chassis/housing of the instrument is connected to protection earth (PE) by means of a cord. For protection against electrical shock hazards, the instrument must be directly connected to an approved power source such as a three-wire grounded receptacle for the 230V line. Where an ungrounded receptacle is encountered, a qualified electrician must replace it with a properly (PE) grounded receptacle in accordance with the local electrical code. An extension must not be used. Any break in the electrical ground path, whether inside or outside the instrument, could create a hazardous condition. Under no circumstances should the user attempt to modify or deliberately defeat the safety features of this instrument. If the power cord becomes cracked, frayed, broken, or otherwise damaged, it must be replaced immediately with the equivalent part from Roche Diagnostics.

Warnings should be consulted as regards interactions and non-recommended functions. The likely scope for misuse must be considered. It is advisable to draw attention to the likely consequences.

XIV Disposal of the Instrument

Disposal Recommendations

All electrical and electronic products should be disposed off separately from the municipal waste system. Proper disposal of your old appliance prevents potential negative consequences for the environment and human health.

The instrument must be treated as biologically contaminated-hazardous waste. Decontamination (*i.e.,* a combination of processes, including cleaning, disinfection and/or sterilization) is required before reuse, recycling or disposal.

Dispose the instrument according to local and/or labor regulations.

For more information contact your local Roche Support personnel.

Components of your Control Unit such as the computer, monitor, keyboard, etc. which are marked with the crossed-out wheeled bin symbol are covered by the European Directive 2002/96/EC on waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE) of the European Parliament and the Council of 27 January 2003.

These items must be disposed off via designated collection facilities appointed by government or local authorities.

For more information about disposal of your old product, please contact your city office, waste disposal service or your local Roche Support personnel.

Constraint

It is left to the responsible laboratory organization to determine whether control unit components are contaminated or not. If contaminated, treat in the same way as the instrument.

Overview

A

Chapter A • Overview

Short introduction to the operating mode of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument and description of system specifications

A	Overview	25
1	**Introduction**	25
2	**New Features**	26
2.1	Hardware	26
2.2	Software	26
2.3	Upgrade from Software Version 1.2 to 1.5	28
3	**Specifications of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument**	29
3.1	General	29
3.2	Environmental Parameters	29
3.3	Interfaces	30
3.4	Xenon Lamp	30
3.5	Sample Capacity	30
3.6	Shipping	30
3.7	Control Unit	31
4	**Specifications of the Detection Unit**	32
4.1	Excitation	32
4.2	Detector	32
4.3	Filter	32
4.3.1	Filter Set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I	32
4.3.2	Filter Set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II	33
5	**Specifications of the Thermal Block Cyclers**	34
5.1	LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Aluminum	34
5.2	LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Silver	34
6	**Specifications of the Multiwell Plate Bar-Code Scanner**	35
7	**Specifications of the Handheld Bar-Code Scanner**	36

Overview

A

1 Introduction

The LightCycler® 480 System enables you to perform real-time, online PCR combined with rapid cycling of up to 96 or 384 samples (depending on the thermal block cycler installed).

After monitoring fluorescence during nucleic acid amplification, results can be analyzed, for example, by quantification. The outstanding thermal homogeneity and cycling speed of the LightCycler® 480 System provide exact results in a short time.

The optical detection system offers the flexibility to detect a broad range of sequence-dependent (*e.g.*, HybProbe probes and hydrolysis probes) and sequence-independent probes (*e.g.*, SYBR Green I).

The streamlined LightCycler® 480 Software provides excellent tools to generate high-quality data. Advanced software tools facilitate intuitive, fast navigation, allowing easy programming, data capture and analysis. The sophisticated new software offers an unmatched broad range of supported applications combined with a versatile analysis workflow for each application:

- Acquire Relative Quantification results in one click with the new fast-tracking Basic Relative Quantification analysis mode. Or benefit from the extended software capabilities represented by the Advanced Relative Quantification analysis mode.
- Perform Endpoint Genotyping as a fast and easy method for genotyping with hydrolysis probes. In addition to the well known Melting Curve Genotyping method a fast-tracking approach is provided for simple experimental setups to analyze a single SNP with the Endpoint Genotyping method.
- With the accessory Software Module Gene Scanning analyze genetic variations (SNPs, mutations, methylations) with the novel High Resolution Melting method. The LightCycler® 480 Software automatically determines differences in the genotype of each sample by comparing all melting curve profiles.

  Use the accessory Multiple Plate Analysis Software to perform statistic analyses with different analysing modules, *e.g., AbsQuant Summary* or *Haplotyping*.

  To remote control your instrument with a LIMS System, use the additional LIMS Module.

For more details on the broad range of Software capabilities and their usage, see section *LightCycler® 480 Software*.

Based on the latest improvements a new LightCycler® 480 Instrument (LightCycler® 480 Instrument II) is launched employing advanced state-of-the-art instrument parts (*e.g.*, novel optical system and thermal block cycler).

Based on the excellent flexibility of the novel LightCycler® 480 Software (Version 1.5) all new instrument components of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II are compatible with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I.

2 New Features

2.1 Hardware

New Components
LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Silver
LightCycler® 480 Optical Unit II (improved filter set)
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plates 96/384, clear

2.2 Software

The following section provides a list of the new features of LightCycler® 480 Software Version 1.5.

General Software Features

Function	New Feature
Basic	Improved overall performance
	Guided workflows to ease-up daily work
	Improved data handling in all modules
	Simplified workflow to open existing experiments, create new experiments and to use macros or templates via the *Overview* screen
	Flexible sort functionalities for all tables
	Zoom and multi-select functions in all charts
	Display of charts from different analyses (of one experiment) in one dialog (both channels in dual color analyses)
	State-of-the-art batch export functionalities to tab-delimited files
	Broader range for melting curve analysis (start at 20 °C)
Sample Editor	Flexible *Plate View* to depict sample information and results, additionally to the well known *Table View* (also for all analysis modes)
	Flexible display of results by different properties
	Novel fast-tracking editing tools (*e.g.,* for standard curve setup)
	Print function in the multiwell plate image for pipetting purposes
	Multi-select and zoom functions in all multiwell plate images
Macro functions	Display of the macro summary information
	Check of the barcode reader plate ID and input field plate ID (optional) before starting the macro run
	Import of sample names and notes during a macro run
	Abort of macro runs

A

Analysis Modules

Module	New Feature
Endpoint Genotyping analysis	Fast-tracking approach for simple experimental setups to analyze a single SNP
	Easy to interpret result figures (*e.g.*, scatter plot, amplification curves)
Relative Quantification analysis	Pairing for multiple reference genes and for multiple targets and references
	Two different replicate statistics: mean or median
	Display of more detailed information on the standard curves
	Two independent analysis modes for Basic and Advanced Relative Quantification analysis: **Basic Relative Quantification** analyses for results with just one click based on the $\Delta\Delta C_T$-Method with defined analysis parameters. **Advanced Relative Quantification** analyses for highly reliable results due to the extended range of parameters which can be integrated and flexibly combined in this module.

Administrative and Diagnostic Tools

Function	New Feature
Databases	Additional installation of a research (non-traceable) database
Roles	Standard user role
Instrument	Instrument self-test
Error logs	Export of error and operation logs

A

2.3 Upgrade from Software Version 1.2 to 1.5

While software version 1.5 is fully backwards compatible, some of the additional features are not available in databases created with software version 1.2:

- Virtual LightCycler® 480 Instruments II
- New filter combinations and detection formats
- New Universal Color Compensation objects
- New demo experiments
- New run templates (for new applications and for LightCycler® 480 Instrument II)

The following limitations for objects created with LightCycler® 480 Software version 1.2 or version 1.3 should be considered:

- Auto pairing in Relative Quantification will not generate any pairs (without editing the sample names in the *Sample Editor*), but existing pairs are preserved.
- The size of experiments in a traceable database and therefore the size of the complete traceable database is enlarged compared to SW 1.3 or earlier. This is due to precalculations performed automatically after a run is finished (to speed up subsequent analysis calculations) which are saved in the revision history of each experiment. Thus, the experiment size within a traceable database might exceed 10 MB. Consequently it is recommended to check the size of a database regularly and to save a copy of the database when being useful. Make sure the size of the database does not exceed 4.5 GB when saved to a removable DVD.

The following objects created with LightCycler® 480 Software version 1.2, version 1.3 or earlier versions cannot be used:

- Macros
- Sample list templates, analysis templates and report templates
- Fit Points method standard curve objects

A

3 Specifications of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

The specifications given below are identical for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I and the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is equipped with a block cycler unit accommodating either 96- or 384-well format:

LightCycler® 480 Instrument I, 96-wells	Cat. No. 04 640 268 001
LightCycler® 480 Instrument I, 384-wells	Cat. No. 04 545 885 001
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, 96-wells	Cat. No. 05 015 278 001
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, 384-wells	Cat. No. 05 015 243 001

3.1 General

Dimensions	57.4 × 58.8 × 49.7 cm (W × D × H)
Weight	55 kg
Power supply/consumption	200 – 240 Vac 50/60 Hz 1500 VA
Noise level	< 60 dB (A)
Protection class	I
Installation/overvoltage category	II
Electromagnetic emission	Class B
Heat output During run (mean value): In Standby:	~4000 Btu/h or 4200 kJ/h ~850 Btu/h or 900 kJ/h

3.2 Environmental Parameters

Temperatures allowed during transportation/ storage/packaging	-25°C to +60°C
Relative humidity allowed during transportation/ storage/packaging	10% to 95%, no condensation
Temperatures allowed during operation	+15°C to +32°C
Relative humidity allowed during operation	Max. 80% at 32°C, no condensation Min. 30% at +15°C to +32°C
Altitude/pressure allowed during operation	0 – 2000 m above sea level 80 – 106 kPa

A

3.3 Interfaces

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument provides the following external interfaces:

Interface	Device
IEEE1394	Interface to CCD camera (for service only)
PS/2	External bar-code scanner through keyboard wedge
LAN 10/100 Base T	Connection to control unit for instrument control and data transfer

3.4 Xenon Lamp

You can purchase the Xenon lamp for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument as an accessory:

LightCycler® 480 Xenon Lamp	Cat. No. 04 686 136 001

3.5 Sample Capacity

Number of samples per run	96 or 384
Sample volume	▶ 96-well thermal block cycler: 10 – 100 µl ▶ 384-well thermal block cycler: 5 – 20 µl *Smaller reaction volumes down to 3µl are possible but require an oil overlay.*

3.6 Shipping

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is shipped in a palletized styrofoam container encircled by a cardboard box.

The original shipping container must be transferred unopened to the installation site. On delivery, carefully inspect the containers. Make a note of any indications of physical damage, and record your observations in the accompanying shipping documents. It is essential that you report any suspected damage immediately to Roche Diagnostics and to the shipping agent before accepting the unit.

Use only the original packaging for transportation or relocation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

A

3.7 Control Unit

A fully equipped control unit is delivered by Roche with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

The control unit complies with the requirements of the following European Directives:

- Low Voltage Equipment 73/23/EEC
- Electromagnetic Compatibility 89/336/EEC

In addition (for customers in the USA) the control unit is certified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc., USA, with respect to electrical and mechanical safety. Consequently the control unit is marked with a UL and a CE mark.

By using special software (laboratory information management system, LIMS) it is possible to access the LightCycler® 480 control unit by remote control and to combine it, for example, with an automated robotic plate-loading system. To enable this functionality, you must install the optionally available LightCycler® 480 LIMS Interface Module. Contact your Roche representative for more information.

A

4 Specifications of the Detection Unit

4.1 Excitation

Type	Xenon reflector lamp
Luminous intensity	10 µW/mm²
Wattage	100 W
Lifetime	> 500 h

4.2 Detector

Type	Cooled monochrome CCD camera.
Resolution	1024 × 1344 pixel
Integration time	10 ms to 10 s
Integration time selection	Dynamic or manual
Sensitivity	< 0.2 nmol/l fluorescein, typically 0.1 nmol/l (20 µl reaction volume)
Reproducibility	CV ≤ 0.15%
Crosstalk well-to-well	< 0.2% optically < 0.02% with software correction

4.3 Filter

For the LightCycler® 480 Instrument two different filter sets exist:

- Filter set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I
- Filter set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II

4.3.1 Filter Set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I

	Bandpass	Half Band Width (HBW)
Excitation wavelengths (nm)	450 nm	30 nm
	483 nm	35 nm
	523 nm	20 nm
	558 nm	30 nm
	615 nm	30 nm
Detection wavelengths (nm)	500 nm	20 nm
	533 nm	20 nm
	568 nm	20 nm
	610 nm	20 nm
	640 nm	20 nm
	670 nm	20 nm

4.3.2 Filter Set of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II

Excitation wavelengths (nm)	Bandpass	Half Band Width (HBW)
	440 nm	35 nm
	465 nm	25 nm
	498 nm	40 nm
	533 nm	25 nm
	618 nm	35 nm
Detection wavelengths (nm)	488 nm	20 nm
	510 nm	20 nm
	580 nm	20 nm
	610 nm	20 nm
	640 nm	20 nm
	660 nm	95 nm (low pass)

A

5 Specifications of the Thermal Block Cyclers

Two different thermal block cycler units are available for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument:

- LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Aluminum
- LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Silver

5.1 LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Aluminum

The aluminum thermal block cycler can also be used with the new LightCycler® 480 Instrument II.

Temperature control	Peltier-based heating and cooling
Temperature range	37 – 95°C 20°C starting temperature to perform specific Melting Curve analysis if required
Heating rate	96-well block: 4.4°C/s 384-well block: 4.8°C/s
Cooling rate	96-well block: 2.2°C/s 384-well block: 2.5°C/s

5.2 LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-/384-well) Silver

If the new software version 1.5 has been installed, the new silver thermal block cycler can also be used with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I.

Temperature control	Peltier-based heating and cooling
Temperature range	37 – 95°C 20°C starting temperature to perform specific Melting Curve analysis if required
Heating rate	96-well block: 4.4°C/s 384-well block: 4.8°C/s
Cooling rate	96-well block: 2.2°C/s 384-well block: 2.5°C/s

A

6 Specifications of the Multiwell Plate Bar-Code Scanner

The multiwell plate bar-code scanner is an integral part of the block cycler unit. It is used for automated identification and identifier (ID) tracking of PCR multiwell plates. During plate loading, the linear bar-code present on the LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plates is scanned.

Supported bar-code types	▶ Code 39 (250 – 500 µm; Code with Checkdigit, min. code length = 2) ▶ Code 2 of 5 (250 – 500 µm; Code with Check-digit, min. code length = 2) ▶ Code 128 (250 – 500 µm; min. code length = 2)
Maximum label size	68.0 × 6.5 mm

A

7 Specifications of the Handheld Bar-Code Scanner

You can purchase a handheld bar-code scanner for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument as an optional accessory:

LightCycler® 480 Bar-Code Scanner	Cat. No. 04 710 606 001

The handheld bar-code scanner is connected to the control unit via the keyboard.

Use the handheld bar-code scanner to scan information from bar codes into text input fields of LightCycler® 480 Software.

Note that the type of handheld bar-code scanner is subject to change without notice. The specifications listed below apply to the type provided at the time of publishing of this Operator's Manual.

Interface

Keyboard Wedge of PC AT & PS/2

Supported bar-code types

- Code 39 (250 – 500 µm; Code with Checkdigit, min. code length = 2)
- Code 2 of 5 (250 – 500 µm; Code with Checkdigit, min. code length = 2)
- Code 128 (250 – 500 µm; min. code length = 2)

System Description

B

Chapter B • System Description

Instructions for the installation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument and a description of system components and consumables

B	System Description	39
1	**System Package**	39
2	**Installation**	40
2.1	Installation Requirements	40
2.2	Space and Power Requirements	40
2.3	Environmental Requirements	42
2.4	Installation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument	43
3	**System Description**	47
3.1	Description of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument	47
3.2	Description of the Block Cycler Unit	51
3.3	Description of the Detection Unit	54
3.4	Description of the Detection Channels	56
3.4.1	LightCycler® 480 Instrument I Filter Set	56
3.4.2	LightCycler® 480 Instrument II Filter Set	57
3.5	LightCycler® 480 Disposables	58
3.6	LightCycler® 480 Reagents	60
3.7	Additional Equipment Required	62
3.8	Detection Formats for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument	63
3.8.1	Overview	63
3.8.2	Monitoring PCR with the SYBR Green I Dye	65
3.8.3	Monitoring PCR with Hydrolysis Probes	67
3.8.4	Monitoring PCR with HybProbe Probes	69
3.8.5	Genotyping with SimpleProbe Probes	71

System Description

1 System Package

The table below lists all components delivered with the LightCycler® 480 System package. Use this list to check the completeness of all components.

After opening, check for damage that occurred in transit. Report any visual damage to your local Roche Diagnostics representative.

Quantity	Component
1	LightCycler® 480 Instrument, 96-wells or LightCycler® 480 Instrument, 384-wells
1	LightCycler® 480 control unit (incl. monitor)
1	LightCycler® 480 Operator's Manual
1	LightCycler® 480 Software 1.5 Installation CD-ROM
1	Cable Mains Power (EU)
1	Cable Mains Power (US)
1	LAN Cable (3 m)
1	LightCycler® 480 Xenon Lamp
4	Ventilation Dust Filters
1	Sealing Foil Applicator
1	Protective Cap Lens
1	Protective Cap CCD Camera
1	Protective Cap Light Guide
10	Fuse 5×20 1.6AT 250V ULR/IEC
10	Fuse 5×20 3.15AT 250V ULR/IEC
10	Fuse 5×20 8AT 250V ULR
10	Fuse 5×20 T 10A H 250V ULR/IEC
10	Fuse 5×20 16AT 250V ULR

B

2 Installation

2.1 Installation Requirements

- Place the LightCycler® 480 Instrument on a level surface in the upright position.
- Do not place the LightCycler® 480 Instrument next to instruments that cause vibration, electromagnetic interference, or have high inductance (*e.g.*, refrigerators, centrifuges, or mixers).
- Peripheral instruments connected to the LightCycler® 480 Instrument must meet the IEC 950 (UL 1950) standard.
- All plugs used with the LightCycler® 480 System (instrument, control unit, monitor) should have the same phasing to prevent switch-on peaks and electronic noise generated by other instruments or by the power supply itself.
- Use only the power cables and LAN connector supplied with the system package.
- Do not place the instrument in direct sunlight or close to radiators or heating devices.
- Do not put (heavy) devices on top of the instrument.

2.2 Space and Power Requirements

Place the LightCycler® 480 Instrument on a site that can support the following instrument requirements:

Dimensions	The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is 57.4 cm wide, 58.8 cm long and 49.7 cm high.
Weight	The LightCycler® 480 Instrument has a weight of approximately 55 kg.
Power	▶ The LightCycler® 480 Instrument operates at 200 – 240 V (50/60 Hz). ▶ The instrument can be connected to a single-phase or dual-phase supply only. The mains current consumption capacity must not be exceeded. ▶ There are no special provisions for protective grounding. *Any break in the electrical ground wire, whether inside or outside the instrument, or disconnection of the electrical ground connection could create a hazardous condition.* *Do not under any circumstances attempt to modify or deliberately override the safety features of this system.* ▶ The LightCycler® 480 Instrument uses 1500 VA maximum. The control unit consumes approximately an additional 500 VA. *Depending upon the quality of electrical grounding of the local mains, an uninterruptable power supply (UPS) could be required. An UPS is not provided with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. We recommend that you contact a local supplier that can provide a UPS in accordance with the electrical requirements specifications. If the instrument will be connected to a UPS, the following requirement should be met: "Online / Direct Mode".*

B

Ventilation

There are no specific ventilation requirements other than to ensure the following:

- The ventilation inlet of the electronic rack (1) is not obstructed. The ventilation inlet is located in the upper left corner of the back instrument panel. There should be a horizontal gap of at least 4 cm between this inlet and any surrounding wall, partition or other obstacle.
- The ventilation outlets (2) of the thermal block cycler are not obstructed. These outlets are located in the lower right corner of the back instrument panel and the lower left corner of the left instrument panel. Do not place anything in front of these outlets.

Figure 1 Ventilation inlet (1) and outlet (2) at the rear side and left side of the instrument

- The ventilation inlet of the thermal block cycler (3) and the ventilation inlet of the power box (4) are not obstructed. These inlets are located in the lower right side of the instrument.

Figure 2 Ventilation inlets at the right side of the instrument

B

Access	
	▶ A gap of 4 cm is recommended between the back of the instrument and the wall, to allow access to the power supply fan filter and the electronic rack. ▶ A minimum clearance of 40 cm must be available on the right side of the instrument to allow access to the block cycler unit and electronic rack fan filter, and to enable safe ejection and loading of the multiwell plate loader. ▶ A gap of 20 cm is required on the left side of the instrument to allow access to the instrument side cover. ▶ A gap of 5 cm is required above the instrument cover to allow the cover to be lifted.

2.3 Environmental Requirements

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument has been designed to safely operate within specifications according to CE and UL certified technical standards at ambient room temperatures between 15°C and 32°C, relative humidity between 30% and 80% (no condensation) and at an altitude up to 2000 meters above sea level (850 – 1050 hP). Atmospheric conditions should conform to Pollution Degree II.

Environmental conditions that exceed these specifications could result in instrument failure or could cause incorrect test results.

Keep the instrument in a dry place. Moisture could cause malfunction.

2.4 Installation of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

The original shipping containers must be transferred unopened to the installation site. The LightCycler® 480 Instrument should be unpacked and installed only by authorized Roche Diagnostics service personnel. In this case, you need take no further action until the arrival on site of authorized Roche Diagnostics service personnel. Should this not be possible, follow these steps to install the instrument successfully:

- Unpack the instrument:

Carefully inspect the container for damage. Report any damage to your local Roche Diagnostics office before accepting the unit.

- Position the instrument on the workbench in the upright position.

To carry the instrument, place your hands under the base of the instrument. For this purpose, the instrument base plate provides four recessed carrier grips.

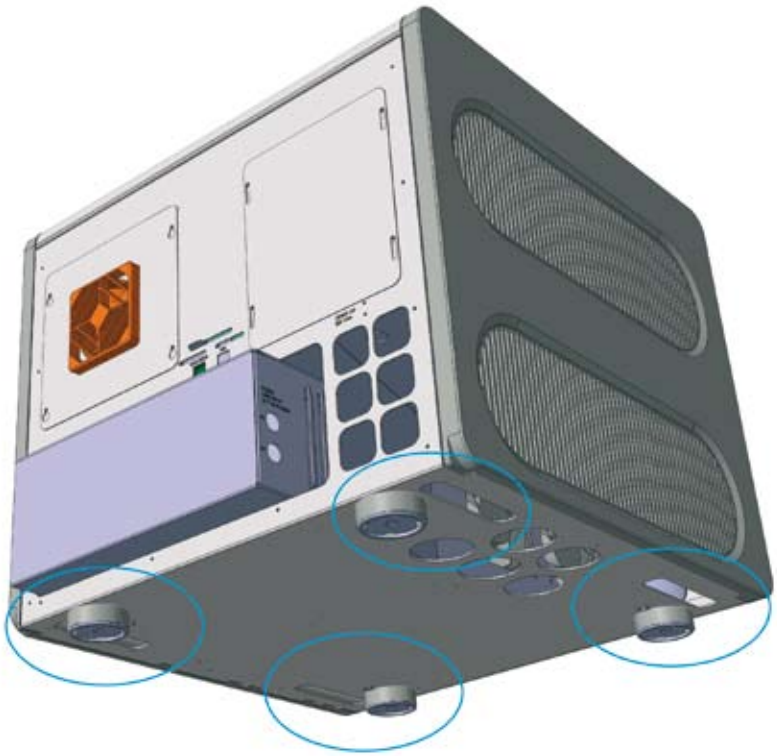


Figure 3 Diagram showing the location of carrier grips at the instrument base plate.

Allow sufficient space to the left, right and behind the instrument to ensure sufficient cooling of the electronic components (for details, see section *Space and Power Requirements*). Ensure that there is absolutely nothing placed below the base or behind the rear of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument (*e.g.*, paper, plastic film, etc.). For details, see section *Space and Power Requirements*.

Failure to provide the proper ventilation space could cause damage to the instrument due to overheating.

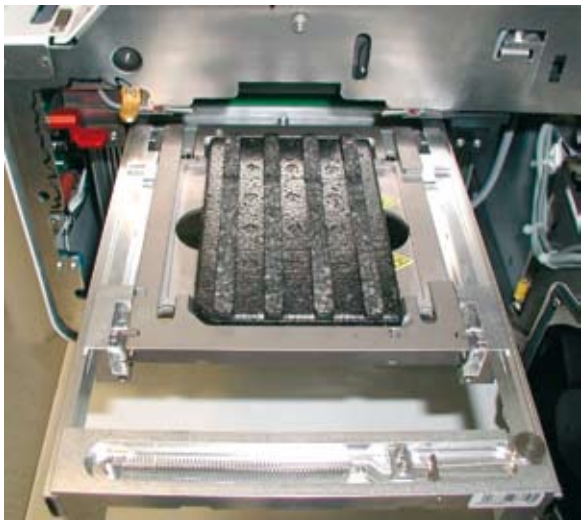
B

► Remove the transport locking device:

The transport locking device is a foam part that is inserted into multiwell plate loader to prevent it from unwanted movement during transport.

Remove the transport locking device during the installation process before the instrument is switched on. Otherwise, the block cycler door will be locked and the multiwell plate loader will be deadlocked due to motor movement.

1. To remove the transport locking device, open the block cycler door and manually pull out the multiwell plate loader. To remove the transport locking device, pull back the drawer. For opening the block cycler door see section *Exchanging the LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler*.



Do not discard the transport locking device. Keep it in the accessories box.

2. Pull out the thermal block cycler. Remove the multiwell plate that is placed on the plate mount. Pull back the thermal block cycler and close the door.

■

B

- **Connect the power cable:** The LightCycler® 480 Instrument runs with an operating voltage of 200 to 240 V. Connect the instrument to the mains socket using the cable supplied. The main voltage input circuits are located at the lower back of the instrument.

Figure 4 Location of mains switch and socket at the instrument's power box.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is delivered with a 2 m long, standard detachable power supply cord. There are two versions of the power cord, one for North America and one for Europe.

Do not touch mains cables when your hands are wet. Do not attempt to connect or disconnect either of the mains cables when the instrument is switched on. If any power connector becomes worn or frayed, it must be replaced immediately with an approved cable. Always connect the equipment to a grounded wall outlet.

- Unpack the components of the LightCycler® 480 control unit (*i.e.*, computer, keyboard, mouse, and monitor).
- Place the control unit components beside the LightCycler® 480 Instrument and connect the power cables.

We recommend placing the control unit to the left of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument to provide free access to the multiwell plate loader and the block cycler door which are located in the right instrument panel. Also, power outlets for all control unit components should be easily accessible.

Ensure that the PC and monitor have been set to the correct voltage.

Follow the same precautions regarding handling of power cables as stated above.

B

- **Connect the network cable:** The LAN (10/100 Base T) interface with the LAN mode switch is located in the center of the instrument back panel. Plug the network cable into LAN interface named DATASTATION.

Use the LAN cable provided with the instrument. The LAN cable must not be longer than 3 m.

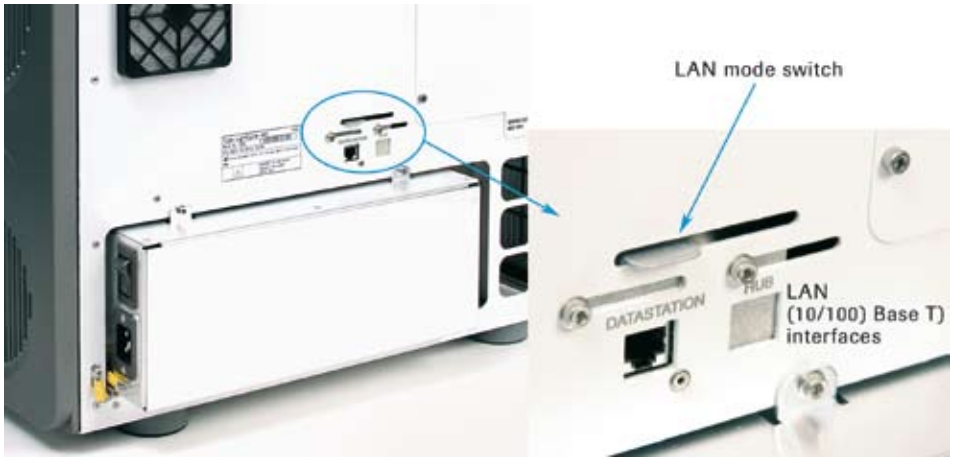


Figure 5 LAN interface at the rear side of the instrument

Do not plug the network cable into the LAN interface named HUB.

- Plug the network cable into the **upper** LAN (10/100 BT) interface on the back of the PC.

The control unit that comes together with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument has two LAN interfaces: You must use the upper LAN connector (Instrument LAN) to connect the control unit to the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. This must be a one-to-one (peer-to-peer) connection. You cannot connect them via a network hub. You can use the lower LAN connector (Laboratory LAN) to interface the LightCycler® 480 System to a laboratory network (LIMS) by using the functions of the LightCycler® 480 LIMS Interface Module. To connect several LightCycler® 480 Instruments to a laboratory network you need a control unit for each instrument, because (as mentioned above) the connection between instrument and control unit must always be a direct connection. Installations with a network hub between instrument and control unit are currently not supported.

- **(Optional) Connect the handheld bar-code scanner:** Connect bar-code scanner and keyboard using the Y-interface cable. Connect the lilac-colored keyboard plug with one of the paired connectors of the Y-cable. Connect the free paired connector of the Y-cable to the lilac-colored interface at the back of the PC.
- Connect mouse, monitor and printer (optional) to the back of the computer. The connectors are shaped to ensure connection only in the proper orientation. For more information on connecting the printer to the PC, refer to the manual that is delivered with the printer. The connectors are color-coded for easy matching (mouse=green, monitor=blue, printer=purple). Ensure that the color of the connector matches the color of the plug.

A printer is not included in the LightCycler® 480 System package.

3 System Description

3.1 Description of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is a rapid thermal block cycler with integrated real-time, online detection capabilities. This set-up enables homogeneous PCR to be performed, *i.e.*, simultaneous amplification and detection of target nucleic acids. Detection of target nucleic acid is performed by adding either a fluorescent double-stranded-DNA-specific dye or sequence-specific oligonucleotide probes labeled with fluorophores. Both approaches allow measuring the generation of PCR products during amplification, the basis of quantitative PCR (qPCR). Post-PCR analysis of previously generated PCR products by Melting Curve analysis is either used for PCR product characterization or detection of mutations (*i.e.*, single nucleotide polymorphisms). The possibility to freely combine five excitation and six emission filters allows analysis of signals from multiple dyes in multiplex PCR assays. For details on available detection formats, see section *Detection Formats for the LightCycler® 480 System*.

The main building blocks of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument are the following:

- **Block cycler unit**, including exchangeable thermal block cycler with block cycler cover (available in two versions: for 96- or 384-multiwell PCR plates), ventilation, multiwell plate loader, and multiwell plate bar-code scanner
- **Detection unit** consisting of the following
  - **Lamp unit**, housing the Xenon excitation lamp
  - **Optics unit**, including the liquid light guide, emission and detection filters wheel, and the CCD camera

All components are assembled on the instrument chassis and shielded by the instrument housing.

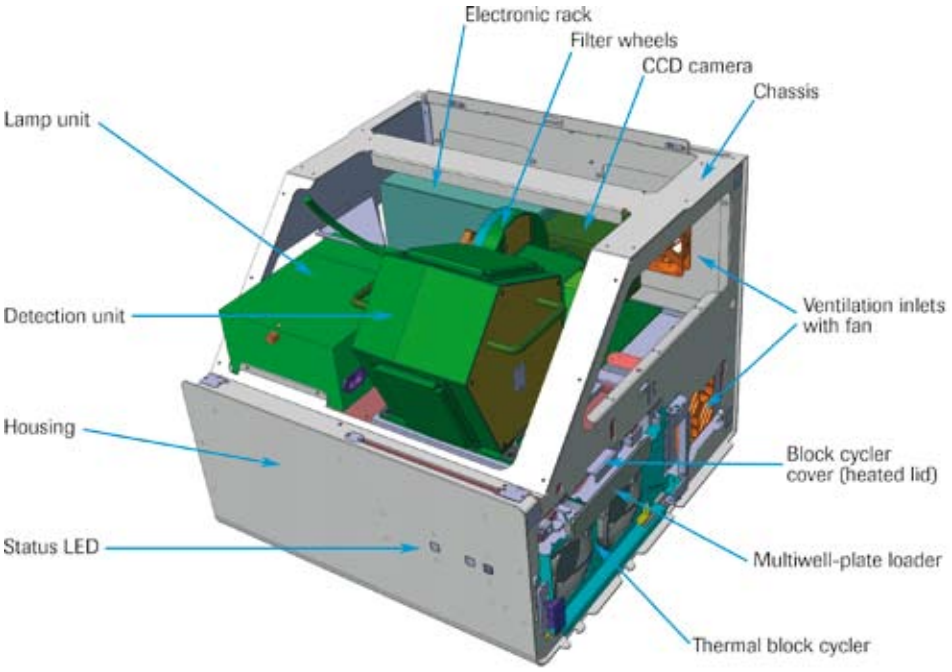


Figure 6 Diagram showing the main building blocks of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

B

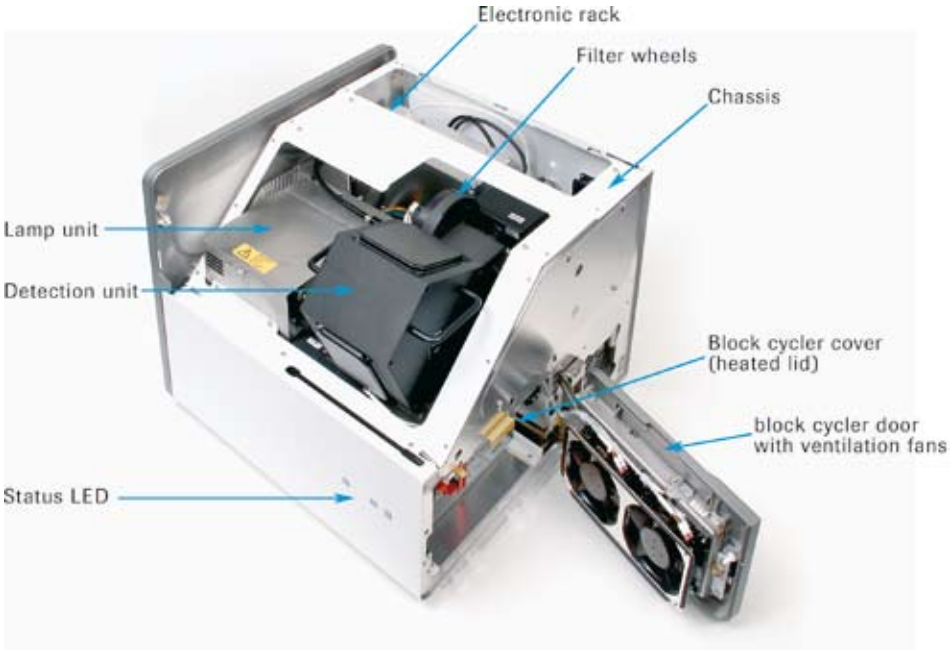


Figure 7 Main building blocks of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument (instrument cover removed)

The front of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument provides two status LEDs which inform the user of the hardware status. The push button for opening and closing the multiwell plate loader is located next to the two LEDs. The instrument cover can be lifted and moved to the right from the front to access the internal instrument components. For instance, the instrument cover must be lifted to exchange the Xenon lamp. (For details about exchanging the Xenon lamp, see section *Maintenance*.)

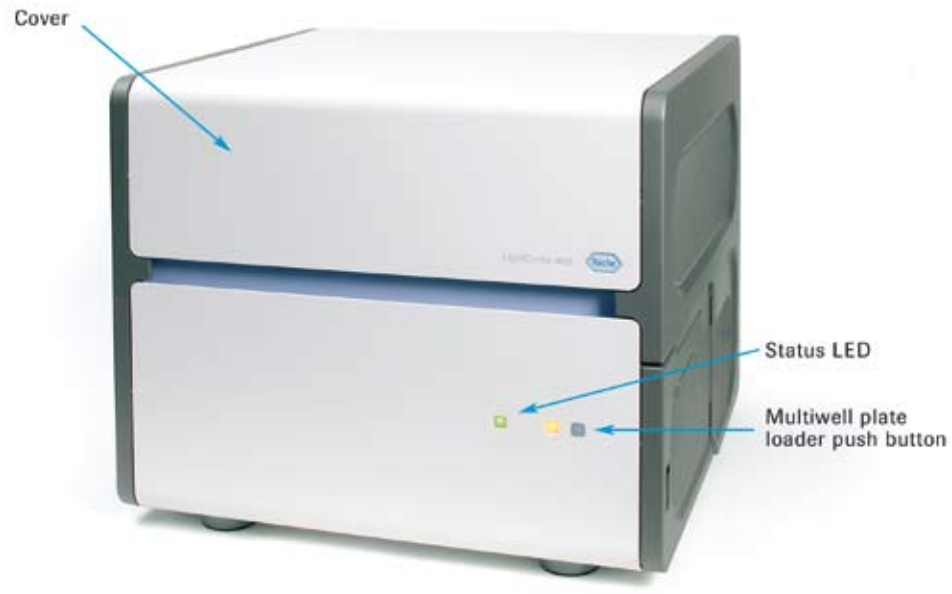


Figure 8 Front view of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

The right side of the instrument provides the PCR multiwell-plate loading mechanism as well as access to the thermal block cycler through the block cycler door. The multiwell plate loader is ejected and retracted by pressing the push button on the front of the instrument. (For more information about loading a multiwell plate, see section *Preparing and Starting a LightCycler® 480 Instrument Run*.) If you use both available block cycler versions (*i.e.*, for 96- and 384-well PCR plates), open the block cycler door to exchange the thermal block cycler and its corresponding heated block cycler cover. (For more details about exchanging the thermal block cycler, see section *Exchanging the LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler*.)

Figure 9 View of the right side of the instrument

Figure 10 View of an ejected multiwell plate loader

B

Figure 11 Block cycler door opened allowing a view of the inserted thermal block cycler and block cycler cover

The back of the instrument houses the power box with instrument mains and mains switch, and the LAN interface required for connecting the LightCycler® 480 Instrument to the control unit. (For details about instrument mains and LAN connection, see section *Installation*.) The ventilation inlet (for the instrument electronic rack; equipped with a dust filter) and ventilation outlet (for the thermal block cycler and power box) are located on the back of the instrument.

Figure 12 View of the back of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

The LightCycler® 480 Software is an integral part of the system and controls both the PCR process (including detection) and the successive data analysis and data output. (LightCycler® 480 Software is described in detail in section *LightCycler® 480 Software*.)

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument works in combination with specially designed PCR reagent kits. Optimal performance of the system is achieved only by using the LightCycler® 480 Instrument in combination with the dedicated LightCycler® 480 reagent kits and LightCycler® 480 disposables.

3.2 Description of the Block Cycler Unit

There are four different thermal block cycler units for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument:

- LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit Silver for 96-multiwell or 384-multiwell plates.

  The new silver thermal block cycler can only be used with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I if the new software version 1.5 has been installed.

- LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Unit Aluminum for 96-multiwell or 384-multiwell plates.

  The aluminum thermal block cycler can also be used with the LightCycler® 480 II Instrument.

Both block cycler units consist of the following main components:

- Thermal block cycler, which includes the multiwell plate mount, Peltier elements, Therma-Base, cooling elements (heat sink) and electronics interface
- Block cycler cover (heated lid)
- Multiwell plate loader
- Multiwell plate detector
- Multiwell plate bar-code scanner
- Block cycler door with fans

The thermal block cyclers with accompanying block cycler cover are available in two versions:

- For 96-multiwell plates
- For 384-multiwell plates.

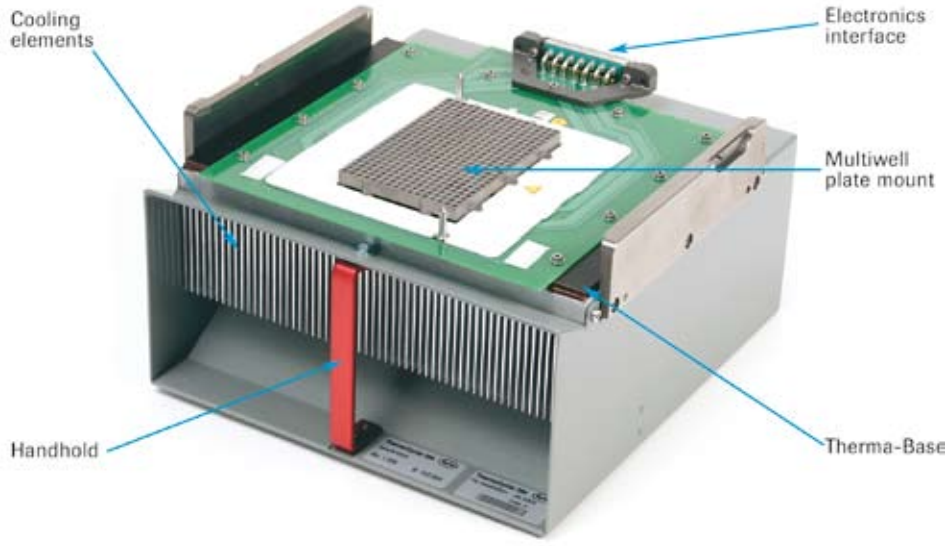


Figure 13 Thermal block cycler of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument (384-multiwell PCR plate version)

B

Each version of the thermal block cycler has a matching block cycler cover. The lid has 96 or 384 pinholes (depending on the version) allowing fluorescence detection by the detection unit through the closed lid. During cycling the block cycler cover is pressed onto the PCR multiwell plate and heated to 100°C. This heating minimizes evaporation of the reaction mixture during thermocycling, and, therefore, it is not necessary to cover the reaction mixture with oil or wax.

Figure 14 Figure 15: Top view of the 96-well (left) and 384-well (right) block cycler cover

The thermal block cycler is driven by six Peltier elements. In combination with an improved heat-transfer technology (Therma-Base), this enables PCR to be completed in less than 40 minutes (384-multiwell plate). Therma-Base is a heat equalizer which moves a concentrated heat load and distributes it to a surface area many times greater than is possible using conventional cyclers, thus reducing the overall component temperature and ensuring homogeneous heat transfer.

The block cycler unit is easily accessible through the block cycler door in the right instrument panel. The thermal block cycler, including the block cycler cover, is provided in a storage box. This box takes up the block cycler and cover enclosed in the loading device, which is used to facilitate block exchange. (For full details about exchanging the thermal block cycler and block cycler cover, see section *Exchanging the LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler*.) Using the loading device, the thermal block cycler can be exchanged within minutes.

To cool the thermal block cycler during operation, the block cycler door in the right instrument panel is equipped with two high-efficiency fans. The air flow is guided through the instrument and expelled at the back on the right side.

Once the appropriate thermal block cycler is installed, the only manual handling step the user must perform is loading and removal of the PCR multiwell plate. The PCR multiwell plate is taken up by the multiwell plate loader, which moves the plate into the block cycler unit and places it on the multiwell plate mount of the thermal block cycler. The loader is moved out from and into the instrument by pressing the push button on the front of the instrument. For white plates a built-in plate detector checks whether the correct multiwell plate type (96-or 384-well) has been inserted properly.

If clear plates are used, the sensor has to be disabled by selecting the Clear Plates option in the software before the run is started.

Furthermore, the built-in multiwell plate bar-code scanner can be used to read the plate ID bar code label. The scanned plate ID is automatically transferred to LightCycler® 480 Software. The PCR multiwell plate is adjusted on the thermal block cycler to ensure that the reaction wells are centered exactly under the pinholes in the block cycler cover. In addition, the detection unit optimizes its position relative to the block cycler cover using fluorescent markers present on the lid surface. By this means, emitted fluorescent light is efficiently detected by the detection unit.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument can also be connected to a LIMS system via the LightCycler® 480 LIMS Interface Module which then controls opening and closing of the multiwell plate loader to perform automated loading. Furthermore you can start an experiment using a macro, get the experiment status, read the multiwell plate bar-code, and receive results via a LIMS connection.

Both versions of the thermal block cycler are available as individual accessories (including block cycler cover, storage box, and loading station):

LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-well) Silver	Cat. No. 05 015 219 001
LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (384-well) Silver	Cat. No. 05 015 197 001

B

3.3 Description of the Detection Unit

The detection unit consists of two main components:

- **Lamp unit** containing the excitation light source (Xenon reflector lamp).
- **Optics unit** consisting of the liquid light guide with light pipe, the emission filters wheel, the excitation filters wheel, and the CCD camera with camera optics.

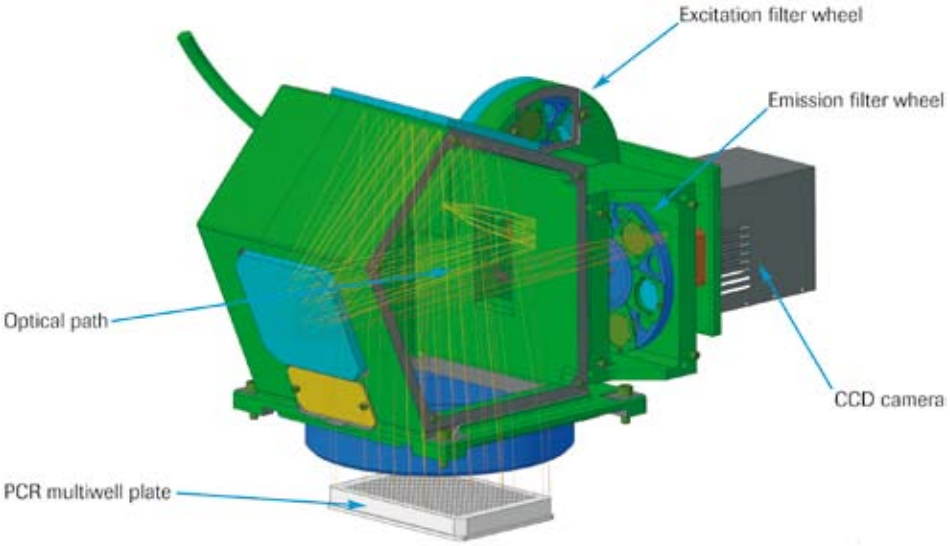


Figure 15 Diagram of the LightCycler® 480 detection unit

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument uses a Xenon reflector lamp as excitation light source. The lamp emits light in a broad wavelength range from 430 to 630 nm, making it possible to use various different fluorophores. The lamp requires a pre-warming phase of approximately two minutes to reach full intensity. The lamp is shut off automatically after 10 minutes of instrument inactivity. This delay ensures that no additional pre-warming is needed for a subsequent run that is performed within a short time of an initial run. The Xenon lamp has an average lifetime of at least 500 hours. Light intensity is measured automatically by the instrument, and the user is informed when the intensity falls below a minimum limit ensuring sufficient excitation efficiency. The Xenon lamp can be exchanged manually by the user: Operation by a Roche service engineer is not necessary. (For details about exchanging the Xenon lamp, see section *Maintenance*.)

The light emitted by the Xenon lamp is passed to the optics unit through a liquid light guide. A light pipe at the end of the light guide generates a uniform illumination and converts it from a round to a rectangular profile to match the shape of the PCR multiwell plate. The actual wavelength used for excitation of fluorophores in the amplification reaction is determined by the chosen excitation filter. Excitation filters are located in a revolving filter wheel, which is driven by a stepper motor with six filter positions. Five of these positions are equipped with excitation filters (for details, see section *Specifications of the Detection Unit*), while the sixth position is used for taking a "dark picture". This dark picture is taken every time the instrument is restarted and is used for dark correction of the pictures taken during a LightCycler® 480 Instrument run.

After passing the excitation filter, the light is projected to the PCR multiwell plate through a large field lens that efficiently collects rays also from lateral wells of the plate. The optics module adjusts the light beams so that each reaction well in the PCR multiwell plate is illuminated with exactly the same slight angel (2°) through the pinholes of the block cycler cover. In the same way, fluorescent light emitted by the excited fluorophores in the amplification reaction is passed vertically into the optics module. This ensures that (1) there are no shading effects within the plate wells and (2) there are absolutely no distortions or variations in the signals coming from wells located at the edges of the PCR multiwell plate compared to center wells, enabling homogeneous sensitivity over the complete plate. Achieving homogeneous sensitivity over the complete imaging range is further supported by an in-built automated flatfield correction, specific for each individual detection unit.

The fluorescent light emitted by the PCR multiwell plate again enters the optics module and is then guided through a second filter wheel carrying six emission filters (for details, see section *Specifications of the Detection Unit*). Finally, the fluorescent signals are detected by the CCD camera. At the heart of the camera lays a cooled CCD chip with a resolution of 1024 × 1344 pixels. Temperature of the chip is controlled to be constantly +10°C to minimize generation of stray electrons which otherwise would contribute to thermal noise. Acquisition time of the CCD camera is adjusted either manually or dynamically (*i.e.*, the integration time is adjusted by signal dynamics to ensure an optimal ratio to the signal strength) by the instrument software. Before measurements are transferred to the LightCycler® 480 control unit and software, further corrections and data reduction are performed.

In parallel to the fluorescent signals emitted by the PCR multiwell plate, a reference channel is measured. Using this reference channel, the intensity of the Xenon lamp is measured and the values are used to compensate for possible intensity fluctuations that could influence the intensity of fluorescent signals. This measure guarantees the lowest possible intra- and inter-assay variance.

Because excitation and emission filters are placed on filter wheels, detection of dye-specific fluorescence cannot be performed simultaneously in multicolor assays. Rather, one detection "channel" is measured after the other. Time required to switch the filter position is less than 0.65 seconds. The recommended combinations of excitation and emission filters for the dyes used in LightCycler® 480 Instrument real-time PCR assays are predefined in the LightCycler® 480 Software as "detection formats". Because only those signals specific for the selected filter combinations are measured, always make sure to use appropriate detection formats.

B

3.4 Description of the Detection Channels

The five excitation filters and six emission filters of a LightCycler® 480 Instrument filter set can be freely combined to enable optimal excitation of fluorophores and exact measurement of emitted fluorescence signals.

The excitation–emission filter pairs can either be used singly in mono-color applications or in successive combination for multicolor applications. You will find suitable filter pair combinations used in either mono- or multicolor applications as predefined detection formats in LightCycler® 480 Software (*e.g.*, the "Multi Color HybProbe" detection format combines the Red 610, Red 640 and Cy5 filter pairs). For details, see section *Detection Formats*.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument can simultaneously detect signals from two or more dyes, which make it possible to obtain more information from a single reaction. The channels chosen for analysis depend on the fluorescent dyes used in the experiment. In a multicolor reaction, the wavelengths of light emitted by the dyes overlap, causing one channel to pick up signals from more than one dye. This so-called cross-talk can cause misleading data. "Color Compensation" is required to correct for this bleed-over between channels in multicolor experiments. For details on how to perform Color Compensation on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, see section Color Compensation Analysis.

For multicolor hydrolysis probe assays, it is strongly recommended to use dark quencher dyes (i.e., dye molecules which efficiently quench the fluorescence of a FRET reporter dye without emitting fluorescence themselves). (For details see section Monitoring PCR with hydrolysis Probes.)

3.4.1 LightCycler® 480 Instrument I Filter Set

The table shows excitation–emission filter combinations of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I filter set recommended for fluorophores used in various different real-time PCR detection formats:

Fluorophore	Excitation Filter	Emission Filter	Detection Format
LightCycler® Cyan 500	450	500	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter)
SYBR Green I	483	533	SYBR Green I
Fluorescein (Fluos / FAM)	483	533	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Donor) SimpleProbe Probes
VIC / HEX / Yellow555 / Joe	523	568	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Acceptor)
LightCycler® Red 610	558 483	610 610	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Acceptor)
LightCycler® Red 640	558 483	610 640	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Acceptor)
Cy5	615 483	670 670	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Acceptor)

Besides the dyes listed in the table above all dyes that are compatible with the excitation and emission filter wavelengths can be measured by the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I.

3.4.2 LightCycler® 480 Instrument II Filter Set

The table shows excitation–emission filter combinations of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II filter set recommended for fluorophores used in various different real-time PCR detection formats:

Fluorophore	Excitation Filter	Emission Filter	Detection Format
LightCycler® Cyan 500	440	488	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter)
SYBR Green I	465	510	SYBR Green I
Fluorescein (Fluos / FAM)	465 498	510 580	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Donor) SimpleProbe Probes Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter, only in combination with Cyan 500)
VIC / HEX / Yellow555 / Joe	533	580	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter)
LightCycler® Red 610	533 498	610 610	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Acceptor)
LightCycler® Red 640	498	640	HybProbe Probes (Acceptor)
Cy5 / Cy 5.5 / LightCycler® Red 705	618 498	660 660	Hydrolysis Probes (Reporter) HybProbe Probes (Acceptor)

Besides the dyes listed in the table above all dyes that are compatible with the excitation and emission filter wavelengths can be measured by the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II.

B

3.5 LightCycler® 480 Disposables

Specially designed PCR multiwell plates are available for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument:

- LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plates 96/384, clear
- LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plates 96/384, white

Well geometry and material of these plates are optimized to ensure best heat transfer, a prerequisite for specific PCR and fast cycling rates. Furthermore, these plates generate minimal autofluorescence which is important to achieve a good signal-to-noise ratio in detection. The multiwell plates come together with matching self-adhesive sealing foils.

Use only the PCR multiwell plates recommended in this Operator's Manual. The block cycler unit of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument has an in-built plate type detector that detects and distinguishes the LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plates. When clear plates are used, the sensor has to be disabled by selecting the Clear Plates option in the software before the run is started.

Use the clear multiwell plates only with recommended formats, hydrolysis probes and SYBR Green I.

All multiwell plate types have two notches on each of their long sides to allow handling of the plates by robotic loading instruments.

The multiwell plates carry a bar code label (Code 128, 8 characters) on the long side at row A. This bar-code label represents a running plate ID that can be read by the Multiwell Bar-Code Scanner.

Figure 16 LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 96 white (left) and clear (right)

Figure 17 Clear LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 384 white (left) and clear (right)

B

Before loading the PCR multiwell plate into the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, it has to be sealed properly with the self-adhesive sealing foil. Sealing the plate is crucial to eliminate evaporation at high temperatures. Use only the recommended foil. Always centrifuge the filled and sealed plate before loading it into the instrument.

Figure 18 LightCycler® 480 Sealing Foil

It is not possible to use strip PCR tubes on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. Only the LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plates can be used.

LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 96, white	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	Cat. No. 04 729 692 001
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 384, white	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	Cat. No. 04 729 749 001
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 96, clear	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	Cat. No. 05 102 413 001
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 384, clear	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	Cat. No. 05 102 430 001
LightCycler® 480 Sealing Foil	1 × 50 foils	Cat. No. 04 729 757 001

B

3.6 LightCycler® 480 Reagents

The LightCycler® 480 Real-Time PCR System includes generic master mixes tailor-made for each of the main LightCycler® 480 Instrument applications (gene identification, gene quantification, genotyping). The LightCycler® 480 Instrument master mixes have been adapted to the special rapid cycling environment of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument and to the different probe chemistries supported by the system. Optimal experimental results can therefore only be obtained when LightCycler® 480 Instrument and reagents are used in combination. Due to the differences in design (dimensions, material) of the respective reaction devices, reagents are tailor-made and must not be interchanged between LightCycler® 480 System and the capillary-based LightCycler® 2.0 and 1.5 instruments.

Enzyme variants and buffer conditions have been carefully chosen and optimized for each application:

- LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Master is designed for specific DNA amplification and high-resolution melting analysis. The mix contains LightCycler® 480 ResoLight Dye for detection of double-stranded DNA.
- LightCycler® 480 SYBR Green I Master contains components which help to minimize primer-dimers.
- LightCycler® 480 Probes Master is designed for real-time PCR using the LightCycler® 480 Instrument in combination with suitable probes (*e.g.*, hydrolysis probes, Universal ProbeLibrary probes, and others) and gene-specific primers. The kit is ideally suited for hot-start PCR assays for gene quantification and Endpoint Genotyping assays.
- LightCycler® 480 RNA Master Hydrolysis Probes is an easy-to-use hot-start reaction mix, specifically adapted for one-step RT-PCR under the rapid and accurate cycling conditions of the plate-based LightCycler® 480 Instrument using hydrolysis probes (*e.g.*, Universal ProbeLibrary probes) as the detection format.
- LightCycler® 480 Genotyping Master is optimized for Melting Curve analysis with HybProbe or SimpleProbe probes.

Since all mixes are provided as one-component master reagents, reaction setup requires only the addition of template DNA, primers and (except for experiments with SYBR Green I or ResoLight) probes. The mixes can be used with different types of DNA (*e.g.*, genomic, cDNA) or RNA (*e.g.*, total RNA, mRNA) in the case of the LightCycler® 480 RNA Master Hydrolysis Probes, and are ideally suited for high-throughput applications in 96- or 384-well plates. All master mixes have an extended room temperature stability for maximum robustness in automated highthroughput applications.

Each master mix is optimized for a fixed $MgCl_2$ concentration, which works with nearly all primer combinations. No adjustment of the $MgCl_2$ concentration is needed to amplify different sequences. The only exception is the LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Master, where $MgCl_2$ is provided as an extra vial to adjust.

LightCycler® 480 PCR master mixes are all based on enzymes compatible with hot-start protocols. When used on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, these protocols have been shown to significantly improve the specificity, sensitivity, and yield of PCR. For example, heat-labile blocking groups on some of the amino acid residues of FastStart Taq DNA Polymerase make the modified enzyme inactive at temperatures below 75°C. Therefore, no primer elongation occurs during the period when primers can bind nonspecifically. The FastStart Taq DNA Polymerase is activated by removing the blocking groups at a high temperature (*i.e.*, during the pre-incubation step at 95°C).

All LightCycler® 480 PCR master mixes contain a dNTP mix including UTP instead of dTTP. Therefore they can be used in conjunction with heat-labile Uracil-DNA N-Glycosylase (UNG) for carry-over prevention during PCR.

LightCycler® 480 master mixes can be used in two-step RT-PCR applications, for example, downstream of Transcriptor Reverse Transcriptase.

Product name	Main application	Enzyme	Supported detection formats	Cat. No.
LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Master	▶ High-resolution amplicon melting analysis for mutation scanning ▶ Genotyping using unlabeled probes	FastStart Taq DNA Polymerase	Fluorescent dye binding to double-stranded DNA	04 909 631 001
LightCycler® 480 SYBR Green I Master (2× concentrated)	▶ Qualitative gene detection ▶ Absolute Quantification	FastStart Taq DNA Polymerase	SYBR Green I	04 707 516 001
LightCycler® 480 Probes Master (2× concentrated)	▶ Absolute and Relative Quantification ▶ Endpoint Genotyping	FastStart Taq DNA Polymerase	▶ Optimized for hydrolysis probes (*e.g.*, Universal ProbeLibrary probes) ▶ Also suitable for other probe formats, for example HybProbe probes (FRET probes), Molecular Beacon, and Scorpions	04 707 494 001
LightCycler® 480 RNA Master Hydrolysis Probes	One-step RT-PCR system for ▶ gene expression analysis ▶ absolute and relative quantification of RNA	Reverse Transcription and amplification using a Tth polymerase based hot-start system, fast cycling protocol	Optimized for hydrolysis probes (*e.g.,* Universal ProbeLibrary probes)	04991885001
LightCycler® 480 Genotyping Master (5× concentrated)	▶ Genotyping via melting curves ▶ SNP genotyping and mutation analysis ▶ Especially recommended for multiplex assays	5'-3'-exo-minus, N-terminal deletion of a thermostable recombinant Taq DNA polymerase	▶ HybProbe probes ▶ SimpleProbe probes ▶ NOT to be used with hydrolysis probes!	04 707 524 001
LightCycler® 480 Control Kit	Verify and monitor real-time PCR and Melting Curve analysis performance of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument	Enzyme not included. To be complemented with appropriate master mix	Contains Universal ProbeLibrary probe and HybProbe probes, also for demonstration of SYBR Green I detection and high-resolution melting analysis if combined with the respective master mixes	04 710 924 001

B

3.7 Additional Equipment Required

The following additional equipment is required to perform real-time PCR assays with the LightCycler® 480 System:

- Standard swing-bucket centrifuge containing a rotor for well plates with suitable adaptors
- Nuclease-free, aerosol-resistant pipette tips
- Pipettes with disposable, positive-displacement tips
- Sterile reaction (Eppendorf) tubes for preparing master mixes and dilutions

3.8 Detection Formats for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

3.8.1 Overview

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument makes use of fluorescent dyes for online, real-time monitoring of both the generation of PCR products during cycling and melting of PCR products in post-PCR Melting Curve analysis. Fluorescence signals measured during cycling are correlated with the amount of PCR product in the reaction, allowing the calculation of input copy number of the target nucleic acid (possible both with sequence-independent and sequence-specific detection formats). Fluorescence measurements taken during post-PCR Melting Curve analysis are either used for PCR product characterization (in sequence-independent detection formats) or genotyping (in sequence-specific detection formats). For maximum flexibility, the LightCycler® 480 Instrument supports several fluorescent analysis formats and can use a broad range of probes and dyes:

- Sequence-Independent Detection Assays

  Rely on fluorophores that bind to all double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) molecules regardless of sequence; for example SYBR Green I.

- Sequence-Specific Probe Binding Assays

  Rely on fluorophores coupled to sequence-specific oligonucleotide probes that hybridize to their complementary sequence in target PCR products:

  - Single-labeled probes (SimpleProbe chemistry)
  - Hybridization probes (HybProbe chemistry)
  - Hydrolysis probes (5´-nuclease assay)

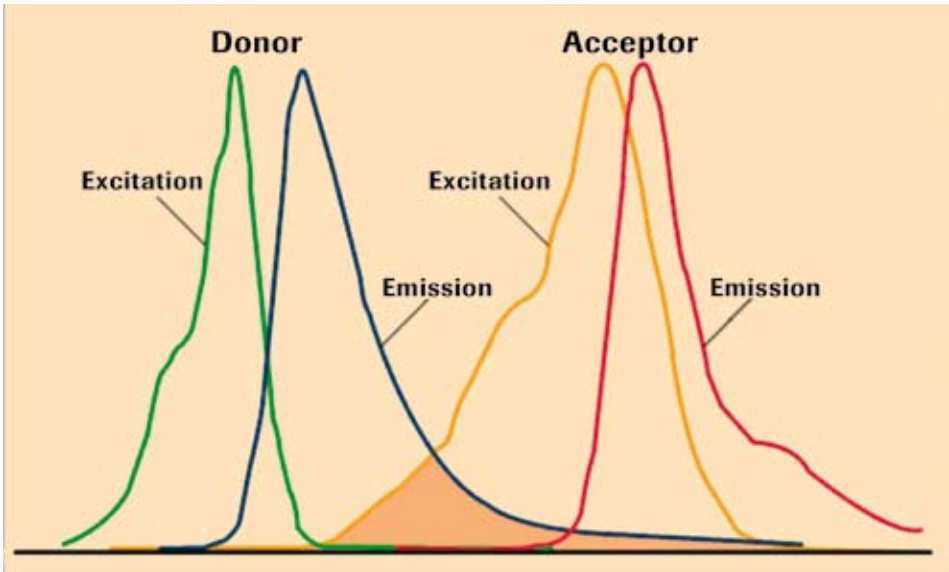
Other assay formats may also be adapted for real-time PCR on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. For example, adaptable probe formats include Bi-Probes (iFRET-Probes), Molecular Beacons and Scorpions. However, it is essential that any fluorescent dye used in an analysis is compatible with the optical unit of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

B

HybProbe and hydrolysis probe chemistries use the fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) principle, which is based on the transfer of energy from one fluorophore (the donor) to another adjacent fluorophore (the acceptor).

The following are primary conditions for FRET:

- Donor and acceptor molecules must be close to each other
- Excitation spectrum of the acceptor must overlap fluorescence emission spectrum of the donor
- Dipole orientations of donor and acceptor must be approximate parallel



The donor dye is excited by the light source of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument by choosing an excitation filter that matches the dye's absorption maximum (*e.g.*, 483 nm for fluorescein). This wavelength excites certain electrons in the donor molecule from ground level to a higher energy level. This energy is released by the following:

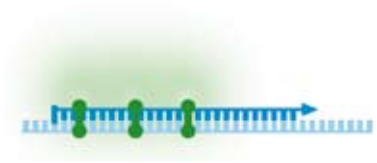
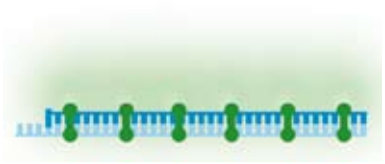
- Emitting fluorescent light of different, longer wavelength
- Transfer of energy to the acceptor dye (*e.g.*, LightCycler® Red 640). When the energy is released, the electrons return to ground level. By transferring energy to the acceptor molecule, fluorescence of the donor itself is quenched.

The FRET process can be used in various ways to generate a sequence-specific signal during PCR. While hydrolysis probe chemistry is based on quenching the fluorescence of the donor dye (the acceptor dye is thus called quencher), the HybProbe chemistry uses the fluorescence emission of the acceptor dye.

3.8.2 Monitoring PCR with the SYBR Green I Dye

Generation of PCR products can be detected by measurement of the SYBR Green I fluorescence signal. SYBR Green I intercalates into the dsDNA helix. In solution, the unbound dye exhibits very little fluorescence; however, fluorescence (measured at 530 nm) is greatly enhanced (100-fold) upon binding to DNA due to conformational changes. Therefore, during PCR, the increase in SYBR Green I fluorescence is directly proportional to the amount of dsDNA generated. Since SYBR Green I dye is very stable it is the reagent of choice when measuring total DNA quantity.

The following are the basic steps of DNA detection by SYBR Green I during real-time PCR on the LightCycler® 480 System:

1		During annealing, PCR primers hybridize to the target DNA strand and form small regions of dsDNA where SYBR Green I intercalates: the fluorescent signal slightly increases.
2		In the elongation phase, more dsDNA is formed and more SYBR Green I dye can intercalate: the fluorescent signal increases.
3		At the end of the elongation phase, all DNA has become double-stranded and the maximum amount of SYBR Green I is intercalated. The fluorescence is measured (530 nm) at the end of each elongation phase.

B

Since SYBR Green I binds to any dsDNA, the SYBR Green I format cannot discriminate between different dsDNA species. The specific product, non-specific products and primer-dimers are detected equally well. Any double-stranded PCR artifact contributes to signal intensity, which could result in overestimation of the concentration of the target sequence.

To determine whether only your desired PCR product has been amplified, you can perform a Melting Curve analysis after PCR. PCR product characterization by Melting Curve analysis is based on the fact that each particular double-stranded DNA molecule has its characteristic melting temperature T_m, at which 50% of the DNA is double-stranded and 50% is melted, *i.e.,* single-stranded. The most important factors that determine the thermal stability of dsDNA are length and GC content of the molecule.

During a melting curve run, the reaction mixture is slowly heated up to 95°C, which causes melting of dsDNA and a corresponding sharp decrease of SYBR Green I fluorescence when the temperature reaches the T_m of a PCR product present in the reaction. The LightCycler® 480 Instrument continuously monitors fluorescence over temperature transitions. In Melting Curve analysis using LightCycler® 480 Software these data are then displayed as a melting curve chart (fluorescence [F] vs temperature [T]). The T_m of a PCR product present in the reaction can be estimated from the inflection point of the melting curve. But the T_m is more easily discerned using the LightCycler® 480 Basic Software T_m Calling analysis module by plotting a derivative melting curve (-dF/dT) where the center of a melting peak corresponds to the point of inflection.

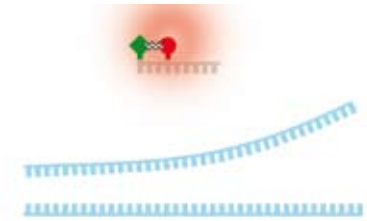
If the PCR generated only one amplicon, Melting Curve analysis will show only one melting peak. If primer-dimers or other non-specific products are present, they will be shown as additional melting peaks. Checking the T_m of a PCR product can thus be compared with analyzing a PCR product by length in gel electrophoresis.

3.8.3 Monitoring PCR with Hydrolysis Probes

Hydrolysis probe assays can technically be described as homogeneous 5´-nuclease assays, since a single 3´-non-extendable (due to phosphorylation) probe, which is cleaved during PCR amplification, is used to detect the accumulation of a specific target DNA sequence. This single probe contains two labels, a fluorescent reporter and a quencher, in close proximity to each other. When the probe is intact, the quencher dye is close enough to the reporter dye to suppress the reporter fluorescent signal (fluorescent quenching takes place via FRET). During PCR, the 5´-nuclease activity of the polymerase cleaves the hydrolysis probe, separating the reporter and quencher. In the cleaved probe, the reporter is no longer quenched and emits a fluorescent signal when excited.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument can detect hydrolysis probes that are *e.g.*, labeled with the reporter dyes LightCycler® Cyan 500, FAM, HEX, LightCycler® Red 610, LightCycler® Red 640, or Cy5. Hydrolysis probes can be used separately or in combination, which permits either single- or multicolor detection.

For multicolor hydrolysis probe assays, it is strongly recommended to use dark quencher dyes (i.e., dye molecules which efficiently quench the fluorescence of a FRET reporter dye without emitting fluorescence themselves). Roche Applied Science recommends the use of BHQ-2 (quenching range 550 – 650 nm) for all hydrolysis probe reporter dyes listed above. Alternatively, DABCYL (quenching range 380 – 530 nm) can be used for quenching LightCycler® Cyan 500, FAM, or HEX.

1		A hydrolysis probe carries two fluorescent dyes in close proximity, with the quencher dye suppressing the reporter fluorescence signal. The 3´-end of the probe is phosphorylated, so it cannot be extended during PCR.
2		In the annealing phase of PCR, primers and probes specifically anneal to the target sequence.
3		As the DNA polymerase extends the primer, it encounters the probe. The polymerase then cleaves the probe with its inherent 5´-nuclease activity, displaces the probe fragments from the target, and continues to polymerize the new amplicon.
4		In the cleaved probe, the reporter dye is no longer quenched and therefore can emit fluorescent light that can be measured by one detector channel of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. Thus, the increase in fluorescence from the reporter dye directly correlates to the accumulation of released reporter dye molecules (and thus indirectly to the amount of PCR products). As with SYBR Green I, the fluorescent signal of the reporter dye is measured at the end of the elongation phase.

In the hydrolysis probe format, Melting Curve analysis cannot be performed, because generation of the fluorescent signal does not depend on the hybridization status of the probe but on digestion of the probe. Therefore, this type of assay requires a different experimental approach for genotyping: the Endpoint Genotyping method.

For a digestible hybridization complex to form correctly, the hydrolysis probe must anneal to the target before primer extension. The T_m of the probe should be only slightly higher than the T_m of the PCR primer, so the hybridization complex is stable.

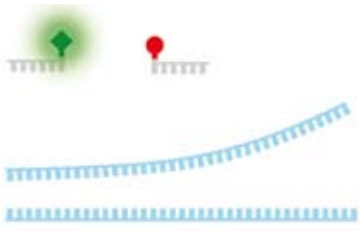
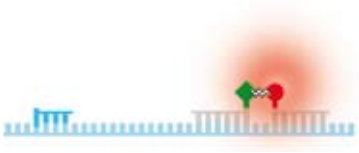
Two principle PCR run programs are possible for hydrolysis probe assays. Both two-step and three-step PCR programs will provide suitable experimental results. Higher $MgCl_2$ amounts in the amplification solution might be necessary to ensure stable hybridization of the hydrolysis probe and favor the hydrolysis event. The amplicon should be short (up to 150 bp) and when performing a two-step PCR program the temperature for annealing and elongation should be around 60°C.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument in combination with the LightCycler® 480 Probe Master is fully compatible with the 165 pre-validated, dual-labeled (labeled 5´-terminal with fluorescein/FAM and 3´-proximal with a dark quencher dye) real-time PCR probes of the Universal ProbeLibrary for gene expression analysis. The probes are available either as single probes or as organism-specific Universal ProbeLibrary Sets containing 90 pre-validated probes. Each Universal ProbeLibrary Set is able to detect at least 95 – 99% of all transcripts for a given organism. Currently Universal ProbeLibrary Sets are available for human and mouse. Additionally an extention set is provided to complete the human set to all 165 probes. For detailed information, visit http://www.universalprobelibrary.com.

3.8.4 Monitoring PCR with HybProbe Probes

In the HybProbe detection format, two specially designed, sequence-specific oligonucleotide probes labeled with different fluorescent dyes, called donor and acceptor, hybridize to the target sequences on the amplified DNA fragment in a head-to-tail arrangement, thereby bringing the two dyes into close proximity. The donor dye (*e.g.*, fluorescein) is excited by choosing the appropriate excitation filter (483 nm). When the two dyes are close to each other, the energy emitted by the donor dye excites the acceptor dye (*e.g.*, LightCycler® Red 640) attached to the second HybProbe oligonucleotide, which then emits fluorescent light at a different wavelength. The amount of fluorescence emitted is directly proportional to the amount of target DNA generated during PCR.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument can detect HybProbe probes that are labeled with the acceptor dye LightCycler® Red 610, LightCycler® Red 640, or Cy5. These labeled HybProbe probes can be used separately or in combination, which permits either single- or multicolor detection. Use fluorescein (FLUOS) as donor dye. Note, that the donor-acceptor combination FLUOS-HEX is not suitable as the spectra of both dyes are too close to each other.

1		In the example shown, the HybProbe donor probe is labeled with fluorescein at the 3´-end, while the HybProbe acceptor probe is labeled at the 5´-end with a Light Cycler® Red dye (the acceptor probe is also 3´-phosphorylated to prevent extension). (Note that this set-up might also be reversed: acceptor probe labeled at the 3´-end and donor probe labeled at the 5´-end.) Hybridization does not occur during the denaturation phase of PCR. Since the distance between the unbound probes prevents energy transfer between the two dye labels, no fluorescence will be detected from the acceptor dye during this phase.
2		During the annealing phase, the two probes hybridize to the amplified DNA fragment in a close head-to-tail arrangement. The donor dye is excited by the light source of the instrument, which causes it to emit energy. Instead of being emitted as fluorescent light, the emitted energy excites the acceptor dye. The fluorescence emitted by the acceptor dye is measured at the end of each annealing step, when the fluorescence intensity is highest.
3		After annealing, the temperature is raised and the HybProbe probes are displaced during elongation. At the end of this step, the PCR product is double-stranded and the displaced HybProbe probes are again too far apart to allow FRET to occur.

The HybProbe detection format is suited for both sequence-specific detection in qPCR and genotyping (SNP detection). SNP detection using HybProbe probes is based on Melting Curve analysis. At temperatures below the T_m of the oligonucleotides, the HybProbe pair binds to the complementary template and this brings the anchor probe in close proximity with the sensor probe, hence, producing FRET. As the temperature is raised, the probes will melt at their corresponding T_ms and no longer produce FRET. This melting coincides with a drop in fluorescence signal. The temperature at which the sensor probe melts will be dependent on the underlying sequence. Thus, if a SNP exists on the sensor-probe binding region, the complex is destabilized and melts at a lower temperature compared to the perfect match.

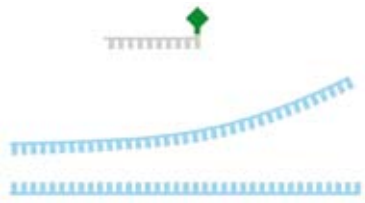
3.8.5 Genotyping with SimpleProbe Probes

SimpleProbe probes are a special type of hybridization probe. These probes differ from HybProbe probes in one important way: Instead of two probes working together, only a single probe is needed. This single probe hybridizes specifically to a target sequence that contains the SNP of interest. Once hybridized, the SimpleProbe probe emits a greater fluorescent signal than it does when it is not hybridized to its target. As a result, changes in fluorescent signal depend solely on the hybridization status of the probe. The SimpleProbe detection format is not based on the FRET principle.

Typically a SimpleProbe probe is designed to specifically hybridize to a target sequence that contains an SNP of interest. Once hybridized to its target sequence, the SimpleProbe probe emits more fluorescence than it does when it is not hybridized. As a result, changes in fluorescence are based solely on the hybridization status of the probe. SimpleProbe probes are an excellent tool for SNP genotyping and mutation detection because they readily identify wild type, mutant, and heterozygous samples with only a single short probe.

A SimpleProbe probe can be labeled either terminally (the 3´- or 5´-end) or internally (*e.g.*, by using SimpleProbe 519 Labeling Reagent*). If a SimpleProbe probe is free in solution, emission of the reporter dye is quenched by a specific, non-fluorescent quencher. When the probe hybridizes to its target, quenching is reduced and the reporter dye, when excited by the excitation channel of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, emits fluorescence. However, even when the probe is not hybridized, no background fluorescence is detectable at 530 nm, resulting in a low signal-to-noise ratio.

For SNP analysis, the LightCycler® 480 Instrument monitors the melting behavior of the SimpleProbe probe. By measuring the fluorescence, the instrument can detect melting of the probe–target hybrids as the temperature increases. The more stable the hybridization between Simple probe and target sequence, the higher the melting temperature. Mutations, such as SNPs, weaken the stability of SimpleProbe probe binding.

1		During the denaturation phase no hybridization takes place, thus, only a low fluorescence background is detected at 530 nm.
2		During the annealing phase, the probe hybridizes to the amplified DNA fragment and is no longer quenched. Fluorescein, when excited by the light source of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, emits green fluorescent light which is measured only at the end of each annealing step at maxi mum intensity.
3		During the subsequent elongation step, the SimpleProbe probe is displaced.
4		At the end of the elongation step, the PCR product is double stranded and the displaced SimpleProbe probe is again quenched.

B

Operation

C

Chapter C • Operation

Description of the operating procedures for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

C	Operation	75
1	**Introduction**	75
2	**System Start-Up**	76
3	**Preparing and Starting a LightCycler® 480 Instrument Run**	77
4	**Exchanging the LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler**	80

Operation

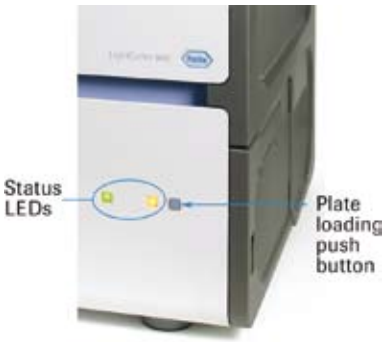
1 Introduction

Prior to starting operation, review sections *Overview* and *LightCycler® 480 Software* to verify the identification and location of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument components and to become familiar with the software.

2 System Start-Up

1. 

The mains switch is located on the left side of the power box at the back of the instrument. Use this switch to turn the instrument on or off.



Two status LEDs are located at the front of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

During instrument operation, the status LEDs function as described in the table below:

Color of Left LED	Color of Right LED	Indication
Orange (flashing)	Orange (flashing)	Instrument is initializing.
Green	Orange	Instrument is turned on. Instrument status is ready. No plate loaded.
Green	Orange (flashing)	Plate is loading.
Green	Green	Instrument is turned on. Instrument status is ready. Plate is loaded.
Green (flashing)	Green (flashing)	Instrument is running.

2. Turn on the control unit.

3. Log on to Windows XP.

4. Start the LightCycler® 480 Software. Details on working with the LightCycler® 480 Software are described in section *LightCycler® 480 Software*.

3 Preparing and Starting a LightCycler® 480 Instrument Run

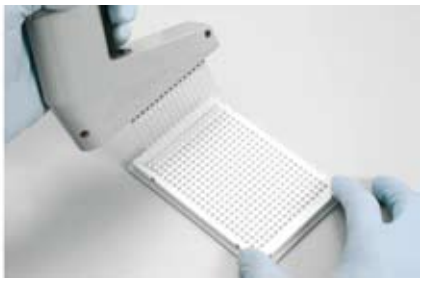
The procedure described below represents a typical example. Other approaches (e.g., distributing replicates of a master mix already containing template DNA) are possible.

1. Program the experimental protocol and define the sample numbers, names, etc. For detailed instructions, see section *LightCycler® 480 Software*.

2. Prepare a master mix that contains all of the reaction reagents except the DNA template in a 1.5 ml or 0.5 ml reaction tube.

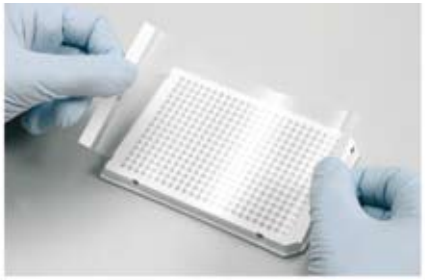
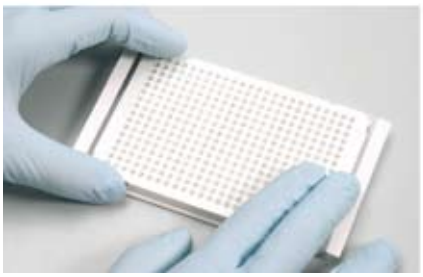
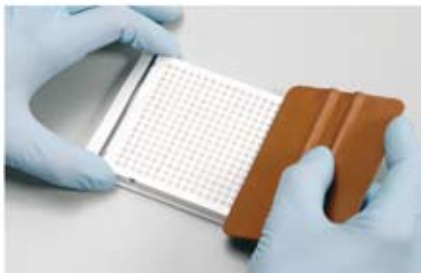
   Follow the protocols provided in the Instruction Manual of the LightCycler® 480 reagent kit. Use only reaction volumes recommended for the type of PCR multi-well plate in use. Use dark reaction tubes to avoid bleaching of fluorescent dyes by ambient light.

3. Pipette the reagent mix into the wells of the LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate. Robotic or parallel (8 or 16 tip) pipetting is helpful when processing a large number of samples.

4. Add the DNA template to each well.

5. Seal the plate properly with a LightCycler® 480 Sealing Foil by pressing it firmly to the plate surface using your hand or a scraper (*e.g.*, the Sealing Foil Applicator provided with the instrument).

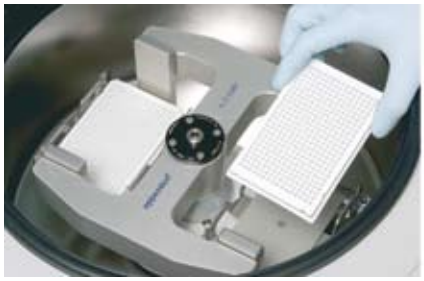




Sealing the plate is crucial to eliminate evaporation at high temperatures.

▶ ▶ ▶

C

6 Place the multiwell plate in a standard swing-bucket centrifuge, containing a rotor for multiwell plates with suitable adaptors. Balance it with a suitable counterweight (e.g., another multiwell plate). Centrifuge the plate at 1,500 × g for two minutes. Check the wells for bubbles, and repeat if necessary.



7 ▶ To load the prepared multiwell plate into the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, press the push button on the front of the instrument (located next to the instrument status LEDs):

▶ The multiwell plate loader extends out of the right side of the instrument:

8 Place the multiwell plate into the loading frame of the loader with the flat edge pointing towards the instrument. (The short plate edge with beveled corners points away from the instrument.)

9 Press the plate loading push button again to retract the loader with the inserted multiwell plate into the instrument. You are now ready to start the run.

▶ ▶ ▶

10 When the run is finished, open the plate loader again to remove the PCR multiwell plate.

Directly after completion of a run, the multiwell plate loader may be hot enough to cause an immediate burn. Wait an appropriate time period to let the loader cool down. Always include a final cooling step in your LightCycler® 480 Instrument run protocol.

Be aware that in case of a long standby the multiwell plate itself may be heated to +60 to +80°C by the heated lid, even if you have cooled down the LightCycler® 480 Instrument to +40°C after the PCR.

4 Exchanging the LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is available in two versions, one with a thermal block cycler for the LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 96-wells, the other for the LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 384-wells

Additionally, both LightCycler® 480 Instrument versions are available with two different thermal block cyclers:

- LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit Silver
- LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit Aluminum

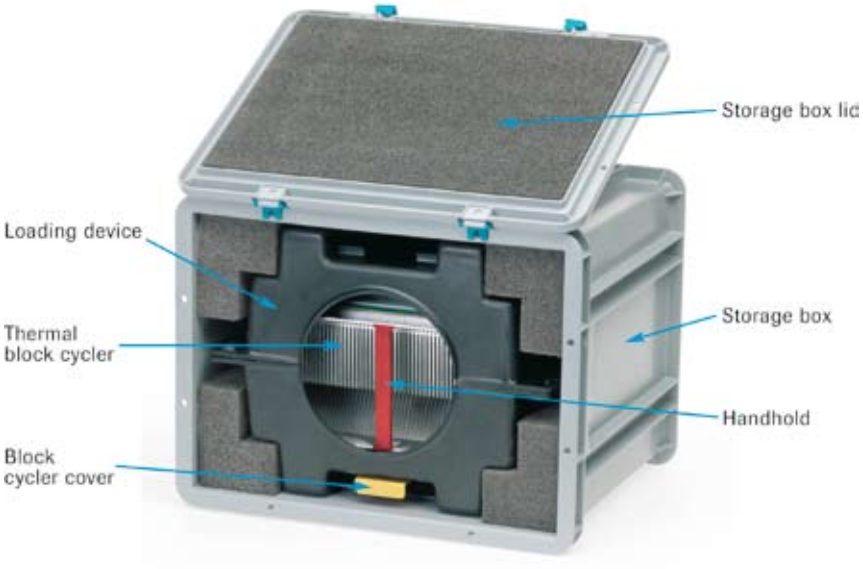
Both thermal block cyclers can be used with LightCycler® 480 Instrument I and II.

You can purchase each version of the thermal block cycler as an exchangeable accessory (LightCycler® 480 Block Kit 96 or 384). If different thermal block cycler versions are available to you, you can change the thermal block cycler manually depending on which multiwell plate type you want to use. The table below describes how to exchange the thermal block cycler.

Turn off the LightCycler® 480 Instrument before attempting to exchange the thermal block cycler.

Before exchanging the thermal block cycler, make sure you have waited an appropriate period of time (approximately 20 minutes) after switching off the LightCycler® 480 Instrument to allow the thermal block cycler and block cycler cover to cool. Directly after completion of a run, both thermal block cycler and block cycler cover are hot enough to cause an immediate burn. Including a final cooling step in your LightCycler® 480 Instrument run protocol does not cool the block cycler cover.

1	The LightCycler® 480 thermal block cycler is provided in a storage box, which protects the accessory from damage occurring during transport. The storage box takes up the thermal block cycler assembled together with the block cycler cover within the block cycler loading device.



2 Open the storage box lid. Grasp the block cycler handhold and pull the block cycler together with the loading device out of the box.

The loading device consists of two identical halves: During block exchange, the upper half is removed and used to take up the thermal block cycler currently installed in the instrument (see below). A retainer located in the bottom is used to take up the disassembled block cycler cover.

3 Open the block cycler door in the right instrument panel:

- Lift the clip in the door on the right side (1), and turn it clockwise (2).

- While holding the door clip in the turned position, open the cycler door at the back.

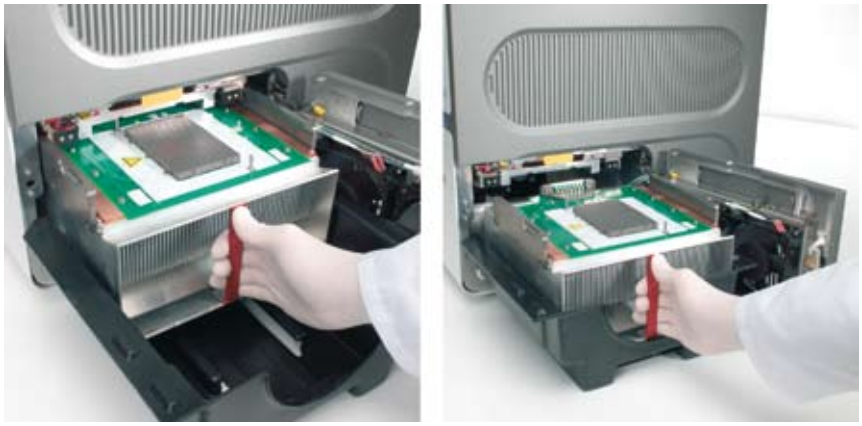
You can only open the door if the instrument is turned off.

► ► ►

4 Remove the upper half of the loading device and place it upside-down, with its open side pointing towards the instrument, in front of the opened block cycler compartment:

5 ▶ While pressing down the red-labeled lever located in the upper left corner of the block cycler compartment opening, grasp the block cycler at its handheld. Use your thumb to apply pressure on the instrument chassis to release the block cycler.

▶ Pull the block cycler out of its compartment and onto the provided loading device:

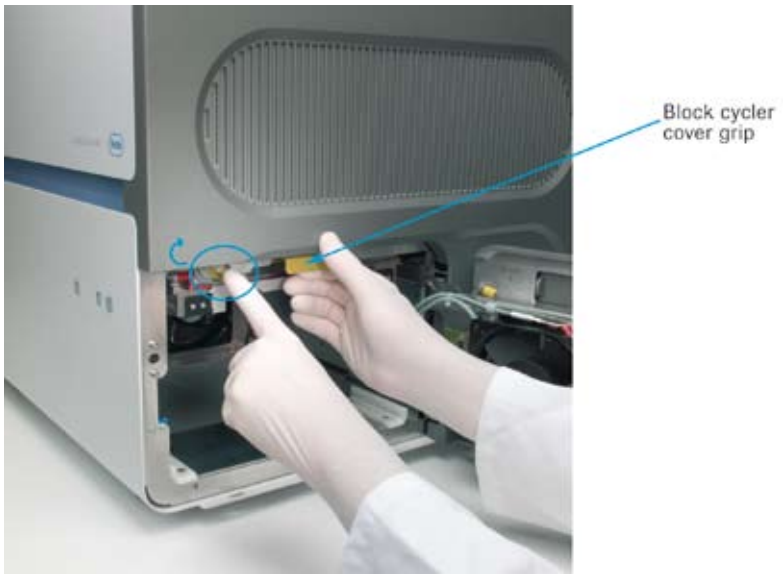


▶ Put aside the removed block cycler placed in the loading device.

▶ ▶ ▶

6 The block cycler cover must be removed after the block cycler has been removed:

- While pushing the small golden lever located between the block-release lever and the block cycler cover to the left, grasp the grip of the block cycler cover. The block cycler cover is released.



- Once released, you can easily pull the block cycler cover out of the compartment.

- Insert the block cycler cover into the retainer provided in the bottom of the loading device.

► ► ►

7 Load the new thermal block cycler into the empty compartment by following the steps described above in reversed order:

- Inserting the block cycler cover: While pushing the small golden lever located between the block-release lever and the block cycler cover to the right, push the block cycler cover into its carrier at the upper side of the block cycler compartment.

- Insert the new block cycler: Follow Steps 5 and 4 above exactly in reversed order.
- Finally, after pushing the block cycler back into its compartment, close the block cycler door and secure it by pressing down the door clip.

When you turn on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument again, the new thermal block cycler is automatically detected and identified by the LightCycler® 480 Software. No kind of re-calibration of instrument is required.

LightCycler® 480 Software Version 1.5

D

Chapter D • LightCycler® 480 Software

Instructions for programming LightCycler® 480 real-time PCR runs and performing data analyses

D LightCycler® 480 Software 90

Basic Software Functionalities 90

1 Overview of LightCycler® 480 Software 90
1.1 General LightCycler® 480 Software User Interface Conventions 91
1.2 Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software 92
1.3 Understanding the LightCycler® 480 Software Main Window 94
1.4 Selection and Navigation Features 100
1.4.1 The Navigator 100
1.4.2 The Query Tab 104
1.4.3 Sample Selector 108
1.4.4 Sample Table 111
1.5 Exporting and Importing 113
1.5.1 Exporting Individual LightCycler® 480 Software Objects and Experiment Raw Data 115
1.5.2 Exporting Multiple Files Simultaneously 116
1.5.3 Importing Individual Files 119
1.5.4 Importing Multiple Files Simultaneously 120

2 Programming and Running an Experiment 123
2.1 Programming an Experiment 123
2.1.1 Setting Detection Formats 126
2.1.2 Defining Programs and Temperature Targets 128
2.1.3 Customizing the Online Data Display 131
2.2 Running an Experiment 133
2.3 Entering Sample Information 135
2.3.1 Sample Editor Window 135
2.3.2 Sample Editor Action Bar 137
2.3.3 Configuring Sample Editor Properties 138
2.3.4 Entering Sample Information 139

3 Overview of Experimental Analysis 147
3.1 Overview of Analysis Steps 148
3.2 Using the Analysis Window 150
3.2.1 Selecting Filter Combination and Color Compensation 151
3.2.2 Working with Samples in the Analysis 152
3.2.3 Working with Charts in the Analysis Window 153
3.2.4 Adding Analysis Notes 154
3.2.5 Removing or Renaming an Analysis 154
3.3 Exporting Analysis Results 156

Software Applications 160

4 Quantification 160
4.1 Overview 160
4.2 Absolute Quantification Analysis 161
4.2.1 Understanding Sample Crossing Points 162
4.2.2 Understanding the Role of Standard Curves 162
4.2.3 Providing the Standard Curve 164
4.2.4 Performing Absolute Quantification Analyses Using the Second Derivative Maximum Method 167
4.2.5 Performing Absolute Quantification Analysis Using the Fit Points Method 170
4.2.6 Viewing Results 176

4.3 Relative Quantification Analysis 179
4.3.1 Overview 179
4.3.2 Mono-Color or Dual-Color Experiment 182
4.3.3 Principle of Relative Quantification Analysis 183
4.3.4 Performing a Basic Relative Quantification Experiment 185
4.3.5 Performing an Advanced Relative Quantification Experiment 187
4.3.6 Performing a Relative Quantification Analysis 193
4.3.7 Viewing the Results 198
4.3.8 Pairing Samples and Creating Result Sets 199
4.3.9 External Standard Curves 202
4.3.10 Supplementary Information 203

5 T_m Calling Analysis 206
5.1 Using Melting Curve Profiles to Identify DNA Products and Genotypes 206
5.1.1 Defining a Melt Program 206
5.1.2 Content of a Melting Temperature Analysis 207
5.2 Performing T_m Calling Analysis 208

6 Genotyping 216
6.1 Overview 216
6.2 Endpoint Genotyping Analysis 217
6.2.1 Overview 217
6.2.2 Principle of Endpoint Genotyping 219
6.2.3 Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Experiment 219
6.2.4 Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Analysis 225
6.2.5 Supplementary Functions 231
6.3 Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis 232
6.3.1 Overview 232
6.3.2 Principle of Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis 234
6.3.3 Performing a Melting Curve Genotyping Experiment 235
6.3.4 Supplementary Functions 245

Advanced Software Functionalities 249

7 Color Compensation Analysis 248
7.1 Performing a Color Compensation Experiment 250
7.2 To Apply Color Compensation 256

8 Working with Templates and Macros 257
8.1 Creating and Using Templates 257
8.2 Creating and Using Macros 262

9 Working with Subsets 266

10 Working with Charts 270
10.1 Printing, Exporting, and Copying Charts 270
10.2 Zooming and Panning to View Chart Details 274

11 Working with Tables 276

12 Generating Reports 278

13 Working with Preferences 282
13.1 Using Chart Preferences 282
13.1.1 Specifying Chart Heading and Label Styles 284
13.1.2 Specifying the Content of Fluorescence Charts 284
13.1.3 Specifying the Appearance of Standard Curve Charts 286
13.1.4 Specifying the Content and Appearance of the Temperature Chart 287
13.1.5 Overriding Default Chart Preferences 287
13.1.6 Creating a Separate Chart Preferences Item and Making it the Default 290
13.2 Using Sample Preferences 291
13.3 Specifying User Preferences 293

D

14 Administrative Tools 294

14.1 Managing User Access 295

14.1.1 Understanding User Accounts 295

14.1.2 Understanding Groups 296

14.1.3 Understanding Roles 296

14.1.4 Privileges of the Standard User Role 297

14.1.5 Privileges of the Expert User Role 298

14.1.6 Privileges of the Local Administrator Role 299

14.1.7 User Access to Objects 300

14.1.8 Managing Users, Groups, and Roles 306

14.1.9 Working with Roles 309

14.1.10 Changing Your Password 311

14.2 Report Settings 312

14.3 Error Log 313

14.4 Database Information 314

14.4.1 Traceable and Research Databases 314

14.4.2 To Clean up the Database 315

14.4.3 To Compress the Database 317

14.4.4 How to Handle Databases from Software Version 1.3 or Earlier 317

14.4.5 How to Handle Objects from Software Version 1.3 or Earlier 318

14.5 Instruments 319

14.6 Detection Formats 323

14.7 Setting the Plate Type 327

15 Diagnostic Tools 328

15.1 Instrument Problem Report 328

15.2 Error Log 329

15.3 Self Test 329

16 Installation and Maintenance of LightCycler® 480 Software 330

16.1 Installing LightCycler® 480 Software 331

16.2 Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software and Connecting an Instrument 336

16.3 Saving an Existing Database and Installing Additional Databases 339

16.4 Logging on to Different Databases 343

16.5 Replacing an Existing Database File with a Database File of the Same Name 345

16.6 Setting up a Client/Server Network 346

16.7 Removing LightCycler® 480 Software 350

Basic Software Functionalities

Introduction to general software features and instructions for programming and analysis of LightCycler® 480 experiments

Basic Software Functionalities

1 Overview of LightCycler® 480 Software

LightCycler® 480 Software controls the LightCycler® 480 Instrument using information you provide in an experiment protocol. Raw data gathered by the software during real-time online PCR monitoring can then be analyzed utilizing the various analysis software modules, *e.g.*,

- Crossing point (Cp) calculation for Absolute and Relative Quantification analysis using the Absolute Quantification or (optional) Relative Quantification software modules
- Melting Curve analysis for mutation studies using the T_m Calling or (optional) Genotyping software modules

LightCycler® 480 Software includes the LightCycler® 480 Software application, a database, and the database object server (called "Exor4"), which communicates with the database. The software needs to be installed in a local configuration.

In this configuration all software components are preinstalled on the LightCycler® 480 control unit connected to the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. Each configuration (instrument and connected control unit) functions as an independent system with its own databases and its own set of user accounts. The location and destination folder of the database engine and database files is usually predefined for the installation process.

Optionally, LightCycler® 480 Software 1.5 allows you to connect the application to a database on a remote computer. It is even possible to host several connections from different users to a single remote database. For details on how to set up such a client/server network read section Setting Up a Client/Server Network.

All data gathered by the LightCycler® 480 System are stored in the database to guarantee security for the data and data integrity. No manipulation of stored data and no access to raw data are possible. Analysis and editing of data can only be done within the LightCycler® 480 Software.

LightCycler® 480 Software uses a database with an audit trail (traceable database) or a database without an audit trail (for research applications).

In a traceable database all changes of database objects have to be confirmed together with submitting a reason for change. A traceable database does not allow that experiments and experiment related objects are renamed or deleted. Experiments might even not be copied. But it is possible to rename templates and folders as well as delete templates and empty folders.

In a research database changes are not traced and you can rename, copy or delete experiments and experiment related objects.

This section provides a general introduction to LightCycler® 480 Software. Further, it describes all user interface elements and software modules available on all software screens. This section includes the following topics:

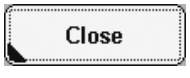
- Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software
- Understanding the main window
- User interface conventions
- Exporting and importing files and objects

1.1 General LightCycler® 480 Software User Interface Conventions

The user interface of the LightCycler® 480 Software displays some common elements (*i.e.*, buttons) with a defined functionality which you will find on nearly all software screens:

Button	Function
	Confirms an entry or action. Proceeds to the next screen, dialog, or step. Corresponds to pressing the <Enter> key.
	Aborts an entry or action. Closes the selected screen or dialog. Corresponds to pressing the <Esc> key.
	Adds an item or object.
	Removes an item or object.
	Edits an item or object.
	Exits LightCycler® 480 Software.

Furthermore, general button design conventions imply the function behind each button by using specific button indicators. The table below explains the conventions for button indicators:

Button	Marking	Behavior
	Black triangle in lower left corner	Completes the action and closes the window or dialog.
	Black triangle in upper right corner	Opens a secondary dialog.
	No black triangle	Performs a specified action in the current window.
	White background, dotted inside border	Button is selected.
	Button combined with arrow-down symbol	Signifies a multi-select button.

Placing the mouse pointer over an icon or button displays a short description of its function and its keyboard shortcut (if available).

1.2 Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software

Follow the steps below to start and log onto the LightCycler® 480 Software.

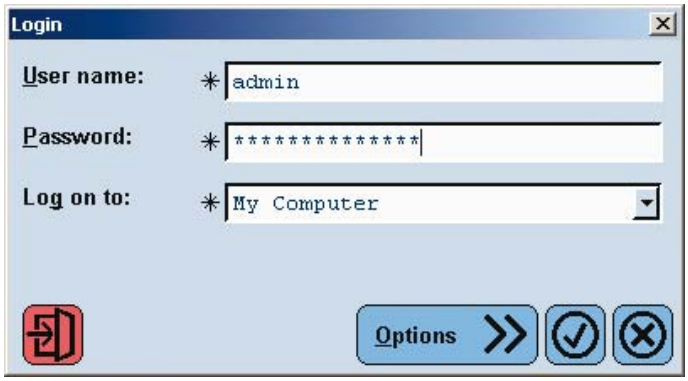
Run the LightCycler® 480 Software at a screen solution of 1280 × 1024 pixels or higher. Note that the software will run under a screen resolution as low as 1024 × 768. However, some software features will be restricted at this lower resolution (for example, some buttons will overlap).

To start the LightCycler® 480 Software:

1. Double-click the LightCycler® 480 Software icon on the desktop.

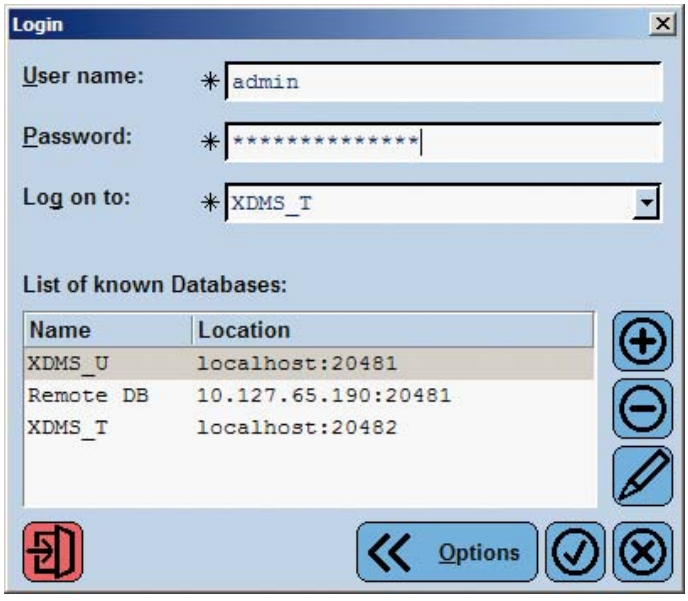
2. In the *Login* dialog box, type your user name and password.

   The initial password for the admin user is LightCycler480.



3. In the *Log on to* field, the last database selected on this computer is displayed by default.

   If several databases are available and you want to log on to a different database than the one displayed in the 'Log on to' field, select the Options button. The Login dialog box expands to show a selection list of all available databases. Select a database from the list..



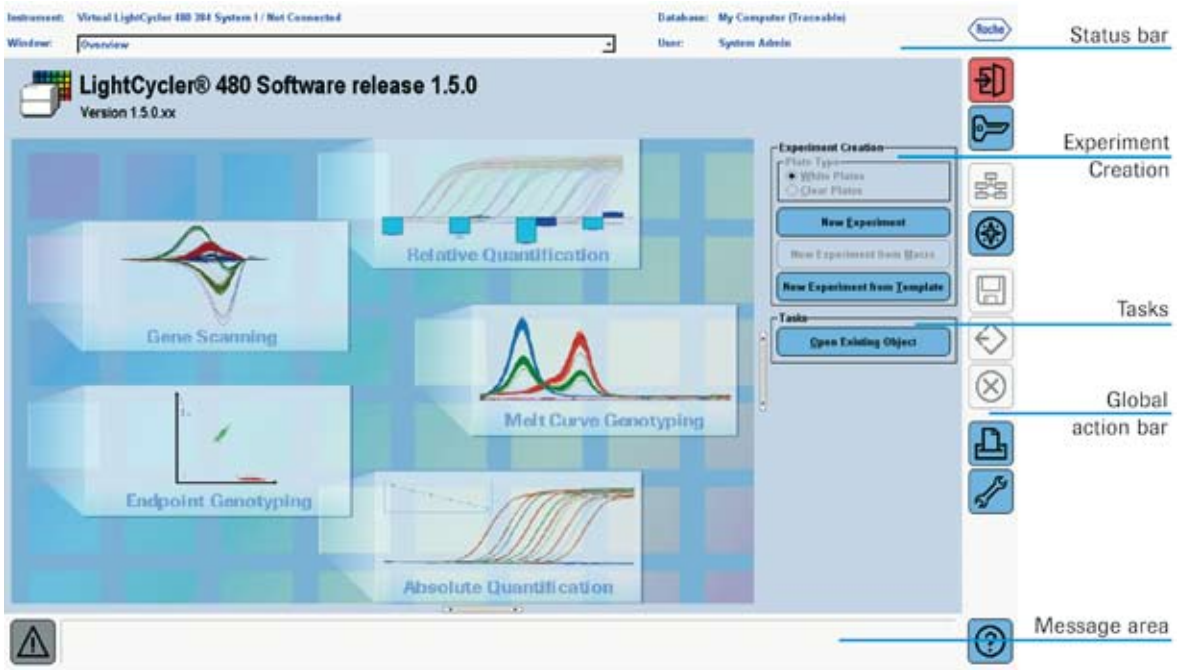
► ► ►

4 Click to proceed with the login.

The application now displays the LightCycler® 480 Software *Overview* window containing the *Status* bar at the top, the *Experiment Creation* and *Tasks* area on the right, and the *Global action* bar on the extreme right.

Starting from the *Overview* window, you can

- create a new experiment
- create a new experiment from a macro or a template
- open an existing object
- switch to other software modules such as the *Navigator* or the *Tools* section.



Area	Function
Status bar	Information about the currently active object. Switch between open objects by selecting them in the *Window* list. When you start the software, this list will only contain the *Overview* window. Names of active software windows are then added during operation.
Experiment Creation	Click *one of the buttons* to create a new experiment and launch the *Run* module. For more information on using the *Run* module, see section *Programming an Experiment*. Choose the plate type if you are using mixed plates (clear and white plates alternatively). For more information on choosing the plate type see section *Instruments*.
Tasks	Click *Open Existing Object* to open an object which already exists in the database.
Global action bar	Availability of the buttons in the *Global action* bar depends on the active window currently opened. For more information, see section *Understanding the LightCycler® 480 Software Main Window*.
Message Area	The *Message* area displays status messages, errors and warnings.

1.3 Understanding the LightCycler® 480 Software Main Window

The figure below illustrates the LightCycler® 480 Software main window (as an example, an *Absolute Quantification Analysis* window is shown, but the following description applies to all windows). The main window contains the following areas, which are described below:

- *Status* bar
- *Module* bar
- *Global action* bar
- Editor frame
- Message area

Status Bar

This area displays information about the currently active object and allows you to select an object to view from a list of currently open objects.

Field	Function
Instrument	Displays name and status of the connected instrument. The following instrument states are possible: Not Connected, Connected, Initializing, Standby (MWP loaded), Standby (no MWP), Running, and Error.
Window	Displays a pull-down menu listing all currently open windows. Use the menu to switch between windows.
Database	Displays the name and type of the database to which you are connected.
User	Displays the name of the user who is currently logged on to the database.

D

Global Action Bar

The *Global action* bar displayed on the right side of the screen contains buttons used for general software functions. Their availability depends on the active window currently opened. The following actions are connected to these buttons:

Button	Function
	*Exit*: Clicking this button exits the application.
	*Log Off*: Clicking this button automatically logs you off the current database and lets you log onto another database.
	Clicking this button switches the view to the *Overview window*.
	Clicking this button displays the *Navigator window*. The Navigator is described in detail in section *Selection and Navigation Features*.
	*Save*: Clicking this button saves changes applied to the currently opened object.
	*Export*: Clicking this button exports the currently opened object to a file. Export is described in detail in section *Exporting and Importing*.
	*Close*: Clicking this button closes the selected object.
	*Print*: Clicking this button prints the currently viewable screen.
	*Tools*: Clicking this button opens the *Tools* window, where you can change your password, create and edit users, groups and roles, edit the system settings, view the database status and the Error Log, manage instrument information, view the instrument self test, and define your filter combination selection. The *Tools* dialog is described in detail in section *Administrative Tools*.

Module Bar

The *Module* bar, displayed on the left side of the screen, has six permanent buttons. The following actions are connected to these buttons:

Button	Function
	Clicking this icon opens the *Run* module, which includes the details of the experiment protocol, charts of experiment data, and notes entered by the person running the experiment. How to program and run an experiment is explained in detail in section *Programming and Running an Experiment*.
	Clicking this icon opens the *Subset Editor*, which allows you to group samples into subsets for analysis and for reports. How to create and edit subsets is explained in detail in section *Working with Subsets*.
	Clicking this icon opens the *Sample Editor*, which is used to define sample information needed for the experiment. How to enter and edit sample information is explained in detail in section *Entering Sample Information*.
	Clicking this icon opens the *Analysis* module. If no analysis is yet opened, this will bring you to the *Analyses Overview* window. Here you can either create new analyses or open already existing ones. Each newly created analysis for an experiment is added to the list of analyses and can be selected in the corresponding drop-down list displayed in the *Analysis* module. If an analysis is already open, the corresponding window will be brought to the front.
	Clicking this icon opens the *Report* module which allows you to define the content of a report and to view and print the report. *You must first save an experiment before this button becomes active.*
	Clicking this button opens the *Summary* module of the experiment. This module contains information about the experiment (such as name, date, and owner as well as the filter combinations), displays the change log, and lets you save an experiment as a macro.

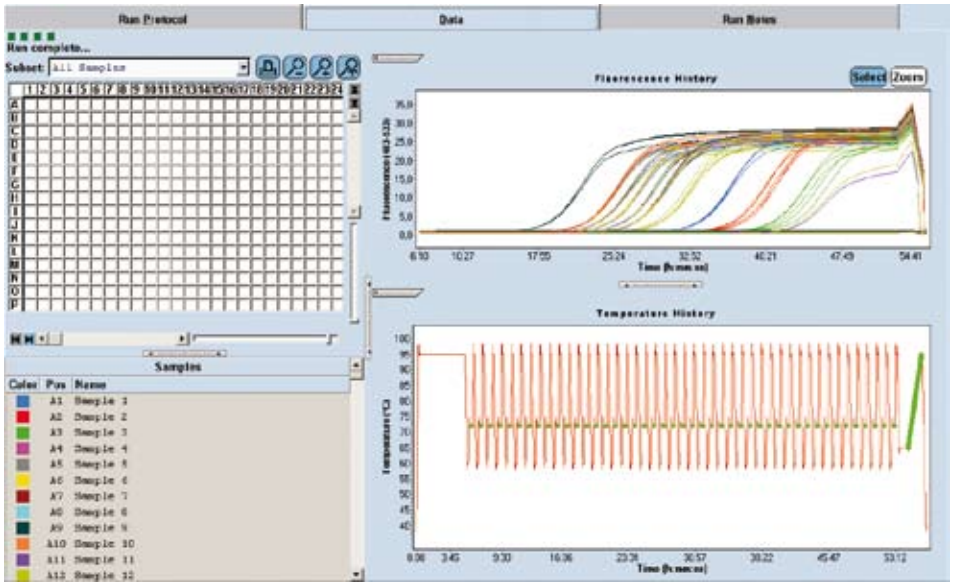
D

To use the Module bar:

Click an icon to open the related experiment module. Placing the mouse pointer over an icon displays a short description of the icon function.

Editor Frame

The frame is the central area where the modules are displayed. The *Editor* frame may contain several sections (see the figure below as an example) that can be resized individually. You can resize a section by dragging the splitter bar on the border between two sections to hide or show the section. The arrows on the splitter bar indicate which area of the *Editor* frame will be affected. Clicking a splitter bar will hide the corresponding area.



Resizing Window Sections

To hide or display a section:

- Click the splitter bar on the border.
- Click the splitter bar again to redisplay the section.

To resize an area:

- Place the cursor over the section border until the cursor changes to a double-pointed arrow.
- Click and drag the border to the location you want.

Action Button Area

The *Action button* area displays buttons unique to the currently active window which are used to perform actions on that window. Action buttons vary with the active window you currently have opened (*e.g.*, the *Action button* area displayed below is unique for the *Navigator* window.)

Message Area

The *Message* area displays status messages, errors and warnings.

The *Message* area consists of the following parts:

- *Alarm* icon on the left  . The color of this icon changes depending on the severity of the alert:
  - Grey = normal information
  - Yellow = warning
  - Red = alarm condition
- Text field in the middle. The text field displays messages, including the type, date and time of message and the message text.
  - Right-click a message entry to open the corresponding context menu.
  - Select *Show log* in the context menu to display the log file and open the *Error Log* tool. For detailed information on the *Error Log* tool see section *Error Log*.
  - Select *Clear selected Messages* to delete the selected messages from the *Message* area.
  - Select *Clear Messages* to delete all messages from the *Message* area.
  - Double-click a message entry or select *Details* in the context menu to display detailed information.
- O*pen About box* button  . Clicking this button opens the program's *About* box, which contains shortcuts to the LightCycler® 480 manuals in the installation folder and displays the software version and copyright information about the software.

1.4 Selection and Navigation Features

This section describes the object selection, navigation, and query elements of the LightCycler® 480 Software:

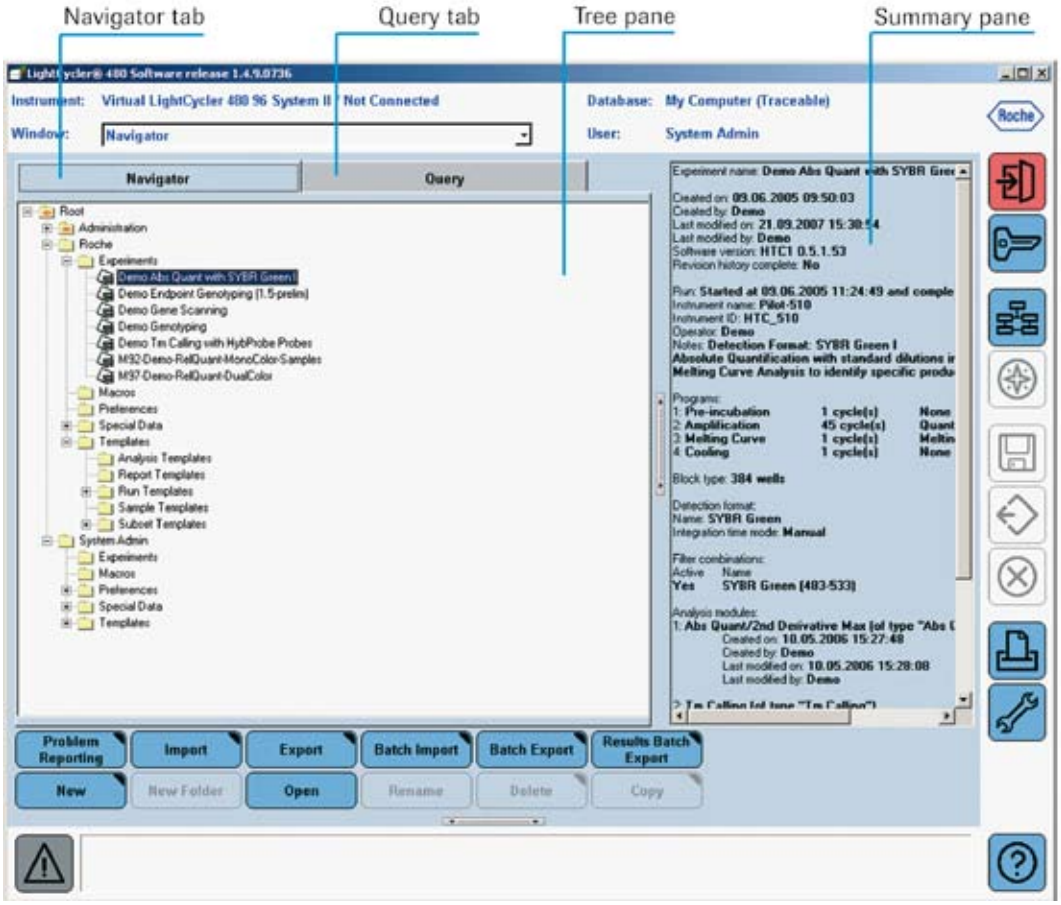
- Navigator
- Query
- Sample Selector and Sample Table

1.4.1 The Navigator

The *Navigator* window provides access to items stored in the LightCycler® 480 database. Items include experiments, user accounts, instrument, macros, etc. The Navigator allows you to open experiments and related items (such as preferences, macros, special data) as discrete objects. All items in the Navigator are organized in folders in a tree-like structure (similar to Windows Explorer) and are sorted alphabetically within their folders. You can expand and contract folder views and highlight the object you want to select. In addition, you can use the *Query* tab to search for specific LightCycler® 480 Software objects in the database by entering search parameters.

The *Navigator* window is structured into four areas:

- Tree pane
- Object summary pane
- Navigator controls
- Query tab



Tree Pane

The Navigator *Tree* pane displays a hierarchical tree view of the objects stored in the currently active database. The top object in the tree is always "Root". The tree is used in a similar manner as for Windows Explorer.

The Navigator *Tree* pane always includes the following default folders and objects:

- User folders (including the *System Admin* folder and folders for each user account). Each user folder contains default subfolders, such as a folder for experiments.
- *Roche* folder that contains experiments, templates, and macros from Roche that can be used by anyone with access to LightCycler® 480 Software.

The Roche folder contains some useful standard objects:

- *Demo experiments in the Experiments subfolder.*
- *Demo run templates in the Templates subfolder including predefined subsets in the Subsets subfolder. The run templates folder contains templates for use with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I or LightCycler® 480 Instrument II.*
- *Color Compensation objects including the universal Color Compensation objects, and a demo melt object for Endpoint Genotyping analysis in the Special Data folder.*

To modify a Roche object, you must first create a copy by exporting and importing it to your own user folder.

- Administration folder that contains objects for user groups, user roles, user accounts, and security policies.

To show or hide items under a folder, double-click the folder name or click the plus (+) or minus (–) sign next to the folder. Right-clicking an object in the *Tree* pane opens a context menu with the actions currently available for the object. For more information on the actions see section *Navigator Controls*.

The Navigator is similar, but not identical to the Windows Explorer of your computer. The Navigator displays data that are stored in a database not in the Windows file system.

Summary Pane

The Navigator *Object Summary* pane displays experiment summary data if the currently selected object is an experiment or a macro.

Navigator Controls

In combination with the *Tree* pane, the Navigator control buttons allow you to work with objects in the database and to import and export objects.

The availability of the Navigator control buttons depends on your user role and on the database you have logged onto. A research database allows experiments and experiment-related objects to be renamed, deleted or copied. With a traceable database this is not allowed. But it is possible to rename and delete templates and empty folders.

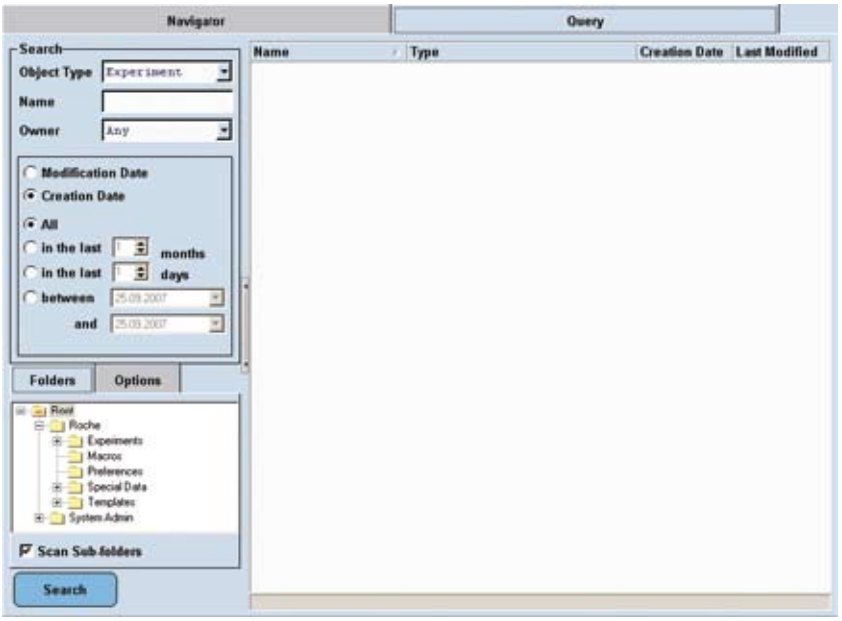
Button	Function
Problem Reporting	Clicking this button opens a dialog that allows you to save an experiment object together with an event log of the instrument and (optional) descriptive user notes in one Problem Report file (*.ipr). This file can then be sent to the Technical Services Department of Roche Applied Science for troubleshooting purposes. For more information, see section *Diagnostic Tools*.
Import	Clicking this button opens a standard Windows file browser that allows you to select the type of data files to be imported and the location from which they are to be imported. The following file types are supported: ▶ ATF files: "ATF" is an abbreviation for a set of files, including .abt (program and sample data), .tem (temperature data), and .flo (fluorescence data) files. All three types of the files are needed for each experiment. (ATF files originate from LightCycler® Software Version 3.5.3 or lower.) ▶ Object files: XML (Extensible Markup Language, *.ixo) object files
Export	Clicking this button opens a standard Windows file browser that allows you to select the location to which the object data is to be exported and to name the exported object. Object data can be exported as an .ixo file of the selected object (which exports both the experiment and recorded instrument-related information) or in XML format as a Summary XML file.
Batch Import	Clicking this button opens the *Batch Import* wizard, which lets you import all experiment files in a directory at one time. For more information about batch import, see section *Exporting and Importing*.
Batch Export	Clicking this button opens the *Batch Export* wizard, which lets you export all object files in a directory at one time. For more information about batch export, see section *Exporting and Importing*.
Results Batch Export	Clicking this button opens the *Result Batch Export* wizard, which lets you export all analysis results from experiments in a group of folders and all its subfolders. For more information about batch result export, see section *Exporting and Importing*.

Button	Function
New	Clicking this button opens the *Create New Object* dialog containing icons for each object type you can create. The icons displayed depend on the user's role.  You can either double-click an icon to create a new instance of the selected icon, or select the icon and click ✓. *The option Rich Text Formatted document allows you to make notes and save them in the LightCycler® 480 database.*
New Folder	Clicking this button creates a new folder object under the currently selected folder in the tree.
Open	Clicking this button opens the selected object in the *Editor frame*.
Rename	Clicking this button activates the object name in the tree so you can edit the name.
Delete	Clicking this button deletes the selected object (*i.e.,* removes the object from the database).
Copy	Clicking this button creates a copy of the selected object. You can copy an item from another user's folder into your own folder or subfolder. (However, your user role may limit which other users' folders are visible to you.) Once the item is in your own folder, it becomes your item and you can modify it as necessary (subject to the limitations of your user role). To copy items from another user's folder: ► Select the item you want to copy in the *Navigator*, and click *Copy*. The *Copy Object* dialog opens. ► Select a target folder, enter a new name for the item if you wish, and click ✓.

D

1.4.2 The Query Tab

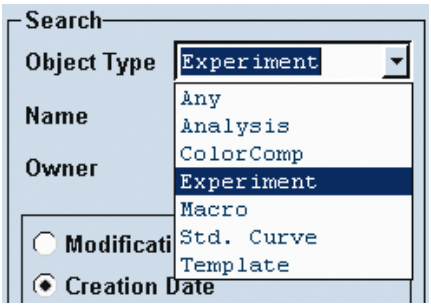
LightCycler® 480 Software includes a query tool you can use to retrieve experiments and other objects stored in the LightCycler® 480 Software database. The query tool is accessible via the Navigator in form of the *Query* tab.



To create and execute a query:

1. Select the *Query* tab in the *Navigator* window.

2. In the *Object Type* box, select the type of object to be retrieved:



3. (Optional) Enter the name of the item to be retrieved or the owner of the item, if known.

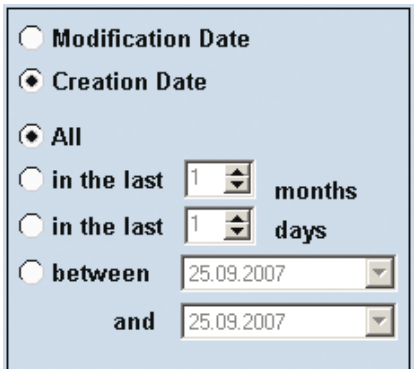
   You may use the wildcard "" to search for any character string.*

▶ ▶ ▶

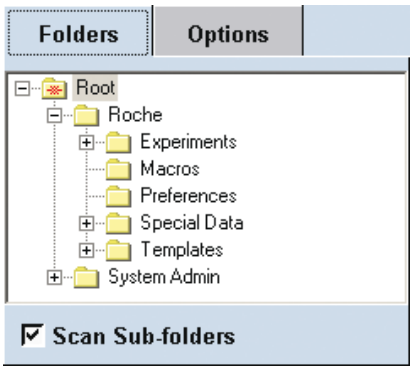
4 Select *Modification Date* or *Creation Date* to specify which date you want to use in the query.

The Modification Date and the Creation Date choices are mutually exclusive (i.e., you can search for one or the other, but not both).

Select a date range for the search. You can specify the number of months or days before the current date or you can select a beginning and ending date in the past.



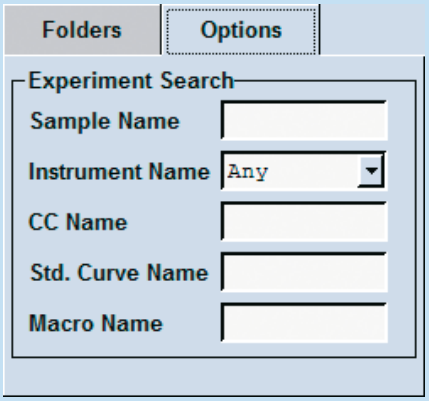
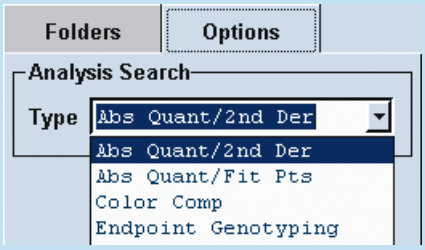
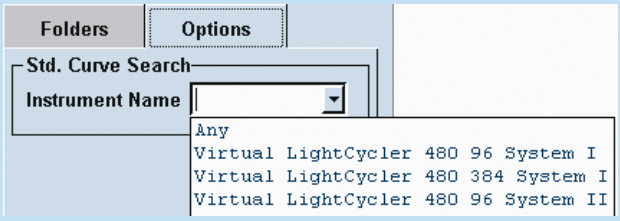
5 For any possible object type, you can also select a target folder from the *Folders* tab. Check the *Scan Sub-folders* box to include all subfolders within a directory in the search:



►►►

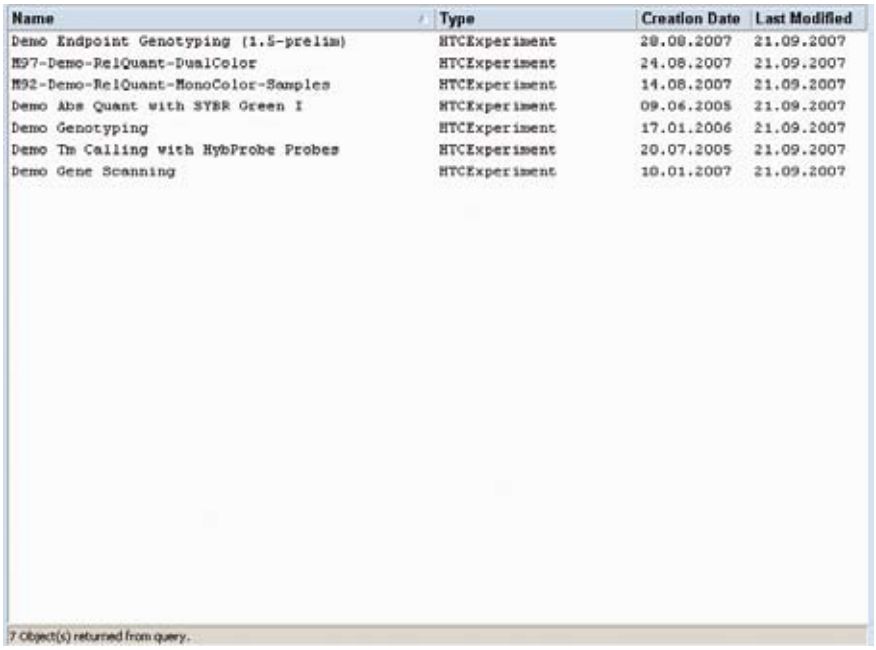
D

6 For some object types, additional search options can be selected from the *Options* tab:

Object Type	Search Options
Experiment	
Analysis	 The list of available analysis types depends on the installed LightCycler® 480 Software modules.
Color Comp/ Std. Curve	 You can search for a CC object according to the instrument that created it.

► ► ►

7 Click the *Search* button. Results are displayed in the pane to the right of the search criteria.



Name	Type	Creation Date	Last Modified
Demo Endpoint Genotyping (1.5-prelim)	HTCExperiment	20.08.2007	21.09.2007
M97-Demo-RelQuant-DualColor	HTCExperiment	24.08.2007	21.09.2007
M92-Demo-RelQuant-MonoColor-Samples	HTCExperiment	14.08.2007	21.09.2007
Demo Abs Quant with SYBR Green I	HTCExperiment	09.06.2005	21.09.2007
Demo Genotyping	HTCExperiment	17.01.2006	21.09.2007
Demo Tm Calling with HybProbe Probes	HTCExperiment	20.07.2005	21.09.2007
Demo Gene Scanning	HTCExperiment	10.01.2007	21.09.2007

7 Object(s) returned from query.

The results include the following:

- Object name
- Object type
- Date the object was created
- Date the object was last modified

You can sort the result list in ascending or descending order by clicking the corresponding column head. If you select an object in the list, the full path to the object is displayed in the *Status* bar at the bottom of the *Results* pane. If the selected object is an experiment or a macro, a summary of object information is displayed in the *Object Summary* pane.

If an error message is displayed stating that the query engine needs to be updated, you must update the database. If you have Local Administrator privileges, see "Updating the database" in section Administrative Tools for instructions. Otherwise, see your system administrator.

8 To open an object, double-click the object name.

■

1.4.3 Sample Selector

The *Sample Selector* and the *Sample Table* are displayed in many windows (*e.g.*, most windows connected to analyses) in the LightCycler® 480 Software. The *Sample Selector* includes a multiwell plate (MWP) image with selectable wells and a legend showing selectable sample groups where required. The MWP image can be used to select samples, or as a visual display. When used to select samples, it may appear with or without the legend and may also appear with or without a *Sample Table*. For more information on the *Sample Table* see the following section.

The interfaces that use these elements are:

Interface	Components of the Sample Selector
Data Display tab in the *Run* module	MWP image
Subset Editor	MWP image
Report module	MWP image
Sample Editor	MWP image with *Legend* and *Legend Property Selector*
Analysis screens	MWP image with *Legend*, *Legend Property Selector* and *Sample Table*

Selecting and Deselecting Samples

Samples in the MWP image can be enabled or disabled by choosing a subset in the *Subset* combo box. A disabled sample is colored dark gray, exhibits no response when clicked, and shows no information. Samples in the MWP that do not belong to the subset chosen for analysis are disabled by default and cannot be changed. Which sample groups are available in the legends depends on the analysis type.

When enabled, a sample may be either selected or deselected. A selected sample is displayed as a pressed button with a white background. A button for a deselected sample is displayed as not pressed with a light blue background. Only selected samples are displayed in the *Results* table and on the corresponding analysis chart.

You can set the selection status of enabled samples in the MWP image as follows:

- Click a sample to select it.

  Press the <Ctrl> key and click a selected sample to deselect it.

- If the MWP image and the *Subset* combo box are used together, selecting a subset enables only the samples in the subset and automatically selects them.
- Click and drag on a deselected well to select all wells in the drag region.

  Press the <Ctrl> key and click and drag on a selected well to deselect all wells in the drag region.

- Click row or column headers to select the corresponding rows or columns.

  Press the <Ctrl> key and click row or column headers to deselect the corresponding rows or columns.

  The display of the sample table corresponds to the selection of rows or columns in the sample selector.

- Click the square in the upper left corner of the MWP image to toggle the selection status of the entire plate.
- If a legend is included in the *Sample Selector* you can use the *Legend Property Selector* to select which legend options are displayed. The options provided in the *Legend Property Selector* combo box depend on the context.
- Click a colored icon in the legend to toggle the selection status of the corresponding wells.

Selection of the legend icons is synchronized with the selection in the MWP image. A legend icon appears selected if all members of the group are selected in the MWP image. It will not appear selected if any group member is not checked.

- Double-click a legend icon to select all items in the corresponding group and deselect all items not in the group.
- To add wells to or remove them from a selection, press the <Ctrl> key and click a well, row or column or click and drag a rectangle.

Scrolling the MWP Image

The MWP image contains horizontal and vertical scroll bars to allow you to scroll and see any part of the image. When you are scrolling, the column and row headers remain fixed.

Zooming in and out

You have several possibilities for zooming in on or out of the MWP image:

- With the zoom buttons
- With the slider bars
- Manually setting the zoom by dragging the margins of a column or row

The MWP image provides the following zoom buttons:

Button	Function
	Clicking this button displays the complete plate with each well as large as possible.
	Clicking this button displays the selected wells with each well as large as possible.
	Clicking this button displays the wells large enough so that all text in a well is visible.

The MWP image provides two slider bars for zooming in a horizontal or vertical direction:

- With the horizontal slider at the rightmost position (minimum zoom) the MWP image displays a single column.
- With the horizontal slider at the leftmost position (maximum zoom) the MWP image displays all columns.
- With the vertical slider at the topmost position (maximum zoom) the MWP image displays a single row.
- With the vertical slider at the bottommost position (minimum zoom) the MWP image displays all rows.

As well as zooming with the buttons or sliders, you can manually set the horizontal or vertical zoom by dragging the right margin of a column or the bottom margin of a row. The new size of all columns/rows is calculated from the selected column or row.

Printing the MWP Image

The MWP image provides a *Print* button that allows you to print the visible section of the image.

The print is scaled to a single page.

Information Provided in the MWP Image

Depending on the context the MWP image can display the following information:

- Each well contains a color icon for the legend property.
- The legend color icon of each well displays a tool tip containing the sample information fields that are visible in the MWP image. Whether or not these fields have labels depends on the context.
- If the MWP image is zoomed large enough so that all text in a well is visible,
  - the image displays the legend property to the right of the color icon as the first row of information.
  - subsequent rows may or may not contain a color icon. If they contain an icon there is no legend for the subsequent icons.
  - the information in subsequent rows of each cell is defined by the context.

The information displayed in the cells of the MWP image cannot be edited.

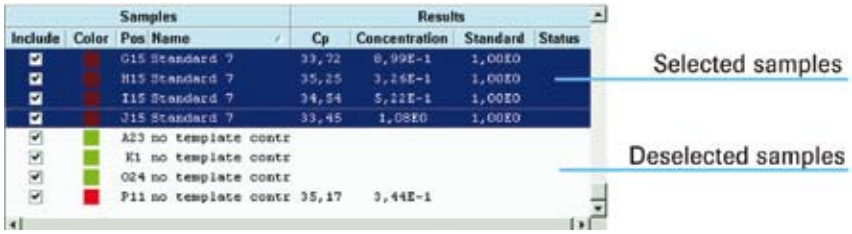
1.4.4 Sample Table

The *Sample Selector* and the *Sample Table* are displayed on many windows (*e.g.*, most windows connected to analyses) in the LightCycler® 480 Software and are used to select the samples to be displayed in the corresponding analysis charts or to include or exclude samples from analysis. For more information on the *Sample Selector* see the previous section.

The *Sample Table* displays the well coordinates of the samples in the MWP image and the color which represents a sample in the analysis charts (defined by the sample preferences). Use the *Sample Table* to select samples for display in an analysis chart or to include/exclude a sample from analysis.

The sample color in the Sample Table always refers to the color in a chart or data display, and to the color in the MWP image.

Only samples that are enabled and selected in the *Sample Selector* are displayed in the *Sample Table*. Other information (in additional columns) may be added to a *Sample Table* according to the context of the screen (*e.g.*, results such as Cp and concentration for quantification analyses). If there are more samples than can be displayed, a scroll bar is added.



Selecting or Deselecting Samples

You can select one or all of the samples in the *Sample Table* for display in an analysis chart, but you cannot change any of the information displayed. Selected samples are highlighted.

To add or remove samples from the selection in the *Sample Table*, use the standard windows shift-click and ctrl-click features.

Including or Excluding Samples

Further, samples can be included into or excluded from analysis. To include a sample, mark the *Include* box in the left table column. Status of the *Include* box is changed by double-clicking or by pressing the <Space> key. Using the *Include* option, you can, for instance, decide which standards are used to calculate the standard curve in Absolute Quantification analysis.

After you have changed the include status of a sample, you must always recalculate the analysis.

Sorting the Sample Table

You can sort the *Sample Table* by clicking the header of a column. Clicking the header several times toggles the sort order between descending and ascending.

To sort the table by well position – either MWP column-wise or row-wise – click the header of the *Pos* column.

Exporting Sample Information

You can export the *Sample Table* data as a tab-delimited text file for further use in common spreadsheet programs (*e.g.,* Microsoft Excel). To export the *Sample Table* data, right-click the table area and select *Export Table*. A file selection dialog opens. Enter a file name and click *Save*. The exported file contains a header line with experiment name and filter combination.

1.5 Exporting and Importing

To view experiment information in LightCycler® 480 Software, the experiment file must be stored in a LightCycler® 480 Software database or imported from a hard drive or other data carriers. Experiments and other files can be imported and viewed without saving. You can change settings and calculate analyses without saving the file in the database. When closing the files without saving, changes are discarded.

Importing a file does not remove it from the original location; it copies the file into the database so you can view the information in LightCycler® 480 Software. For example, you need to import files in these cases:

- If you want to move a LightCycler® 480 Software experiment file from one database to another; you must export the file from the first database to a new location, such as your hard drive, and import the file into the second database.
- If you want to view and analyze experiment files from LightCycler® Software 4.x.

Importing Files

Using the *Import* Navigator control button, you can import the following:

- **ATF**: Experiment file from LightCycler® Software 3.5.3 or previous versions; you can import all the FLO files from an entire directory at one time using the batch import tool, described below. (Importing FLO files automatically imports the corresponding ABT and TEM files.)

Raw data imported from ATF files will be associated with the "ATF" detection format. This format will be mapped to one excitation (470) and six emission filters (defined as 530, 555, 610, 640, 670, and 710). If the imported raw data was generated using the continuous mode setting, no conversion will be performed. The 'acquisition per °C' will be set to a fixed value of "5". Other mode settings will be ignored.

- **IXO**: Experiment file from LightCycler® 480 Software and LightCycler® Software 4.x; you can import all the IXO files from an entire directory at one time using the batch import tool, described below.

When importing IXO files from LightCycler® Software 4.x, only raw data are imported into the LightCycler® 480 database. Any other objects included in the IXO file (e.g., analyses) are not imported.

IXO files that do not have checksums will not be imported and an error message will be generated.

For imported experiments, an "Imported Samples" subset is generated automatically.

Exporting Objects and Experiment Raw Data

To store objects outside the LightCycler® 480 Software database or to transfer objects between databases, you must export the LightCycler® 480 Software files. Exporting a file does not remove the object from the database, but instead copies the file and stores it at the location you designate. The exported file has an .ixo file extension. You can also export any object in XML format as a Summary XML file.

IXO files exported from LightCycler® 480 Software cannot be imported into LightCycler® Software 4.x.

You can export the following objects:

- User default preferences and user preferences for charts and samples
- LightCycler® 480 experiments
- Standard melting curve
- Standard curve object
- Templates
- Macros
- Color Compensation objects
- LightCycler® 480 Instrument Error and Operation logs. For more information see section *Diagnostic Tools*.

For experiments you can also export the raw data in tab-delimited text format (Experiment Text File), see below.

The Experiment Text File

The Experiment Text file format is tab-delimited. It includes two header lines:

- The first header line contains the experiment name.
- The second header line contains column headers.

The data file contains the following information:

- Sample position
- Sample name
- Program number
- Segment number
- Cycle number
- Acquisition time
- Acquisition temperature
- Fluorescence data for each channel

All fluorescence data in the Experiment Text export files are the data that are currently displayed in the charts in the software, i.e., scaled by integration time and reference value.

Read the sections below to learn how to import and export

- LightCycler® 480 files individually, see sections *Exporting Individual LightCycler® 480 Software Objects and Experiment Raw Data* and *Importing Individual Files*.
- LightCycler® 480 files by directory (batch import or export), see sections *Exporting Multiple Files Simultaneously* and *Importing Multiple Files Simultaneously*.

Exporting Analysis Results

As well as exporting objects, you can export analysis results from experiments in a group of folders and all its subfolders by using the analysis batch result wizard. For more information see section *Exporting Analysis Results*.

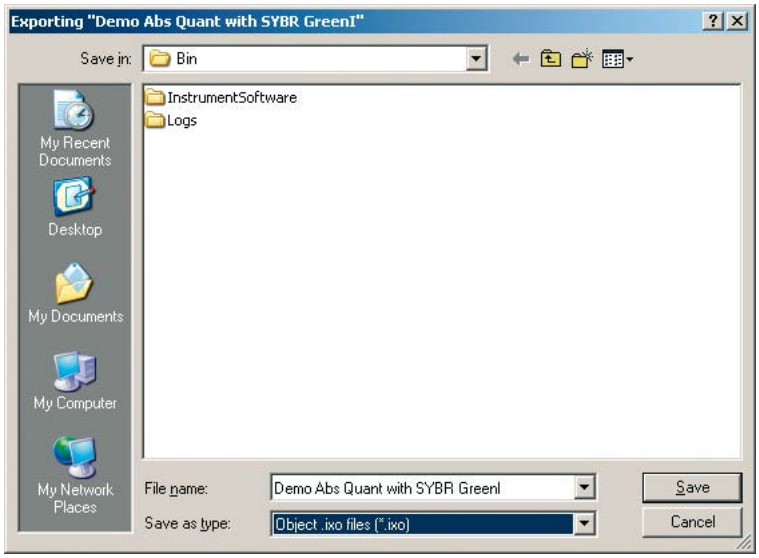
Exporting Charts and Tables

As well as exporting objects, you can export data from charts and tables. For more information see sections *Working with Charts* and *Working with Tables*.

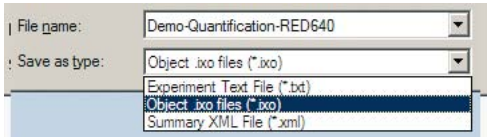
1.5.1 Exporting Individual LightCycler® 480 Software Objects and Experiment Raw Data

Individual LightCycler® 480 Software objects or experiment raw data can be exported both from the *Navigator* or when opened in the LightCycler® 480 Software main window.

1. Use one of the following options to export a LightCycler® 480 Software object:
   - Select it in the *Navigator*
   - Open it in the main window
2. - When working in the *Navigator*, click the Export button.
   - When working on the main window, click the button.
3. The Windows file selection dialog opens. Browse to select a file destination.



4. From the *Save as type* drop-down list, select your preferred export file format (*.ixo, *.txt, or *.xml):



*If you change the format from *.ixo to *.txt, or *.xml, the file cannot be re-imported into the LightCycler® 480 Software.*

5. Enter a file name, and click *Save*. By default, the name of the experiment is used as file name.

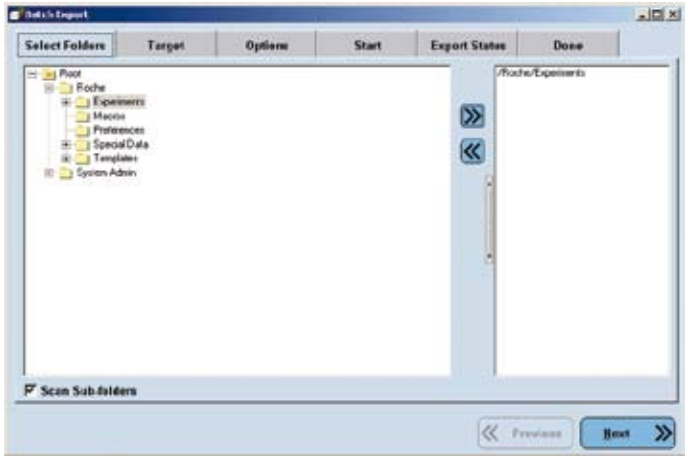
1.5.2 Exporting Multiple Files Simultaneously

LightCycler® 480 Software includes a batch export tool that lets you export all files in a directory at one time. Follow the instructions below to export a directory of files.

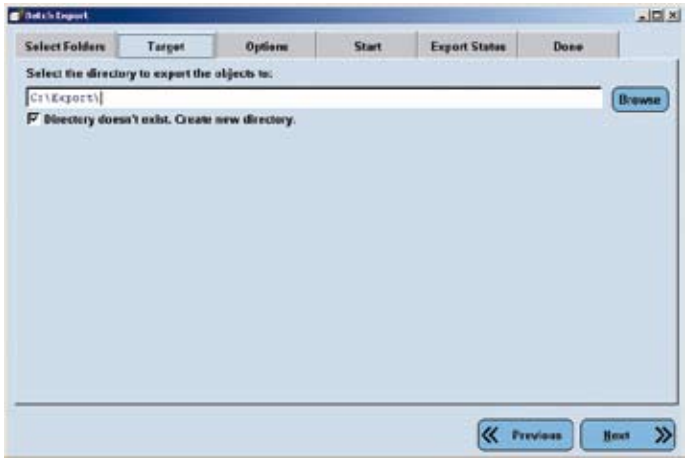
Batch export is only possible from the Navigator.

Batch export is performed using a wizard. You can move from a wizard step to the previous or next step by clicking the corresponding button. Note that the Next button will only be available when you have provided the settings required for the current tab.

1. Click the *Batch Export* Navigator control button. The *Batch Export* wizard opens.
   On the *Select Folders* tab of the wizard, select a source folder in the *Available Folders* list on the left. Click ≫ to add the source folder to the *Selected Folders* list on the right. To remove a selected Folder from the *Selected Folders* list click ≪. Check the *Scan Sub-folders* option to include all subfolders within the source directory.



2. On the *Target* tab, select a destination directory. Click the *Browse* button to browse for a destination folder. Alternatively, type the path of the destination directory directly into the input field. If the specified directory does not exist yet, check the box beneath the input field to create it.



▶ ▶ ▶

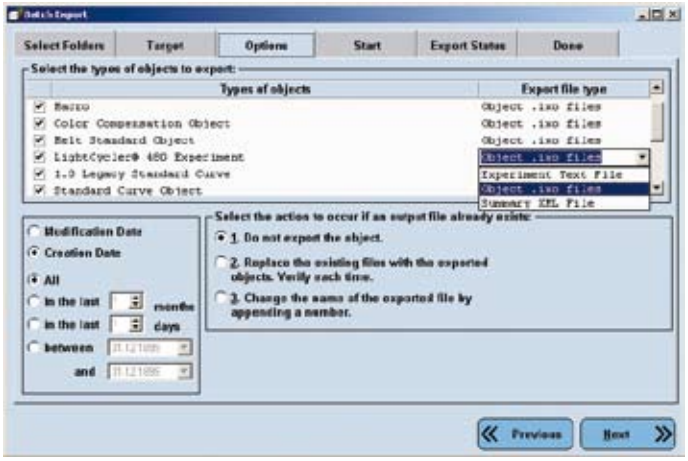
3 On the *Options* tab, you can set various export options.

- Select the types of objects to export from the folder:
  You can either export all object types at once (by default all object types are selected) or select specific object types (by activating/deactivating the corresponding checkbox in the *Types of objects* list).

  You can define the Export File type as appropriate for the respective object type. Each object type has its own selection menu from which you can choose the export file type. By default the objects are exported in .ixo file format.

- Limit the set of objects being exported to those with a certain creation date or modified date. The date range may be specified as one of the following
  - All
  - In the last n months
  - In the last n days
  - From a begin date to an end date specified by the user
- Specify the action to take if a file already exists with the same name as an object being exported. The possible actions are as follows:
  - Do not export
  - Replace an existing file after confirmation by the user
  - Save as a new file by appending a number to the file name
- Specify whether objects should be deleted after successful export.
- Specify whether empty folders should be deleted.

  The last two options are only available if you are working with a research database.



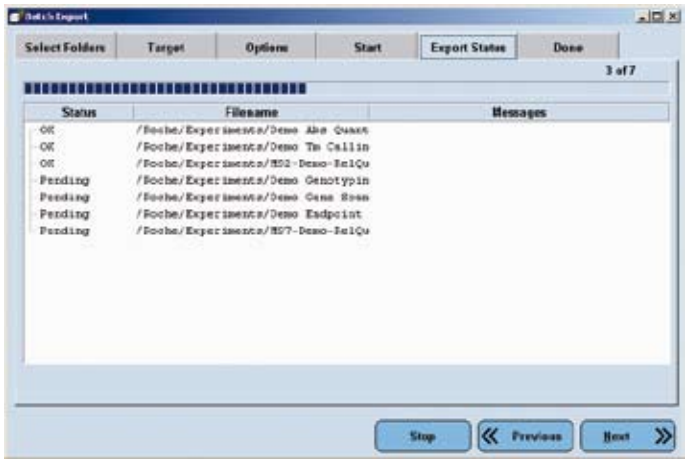
▶ ▶ ▶

D

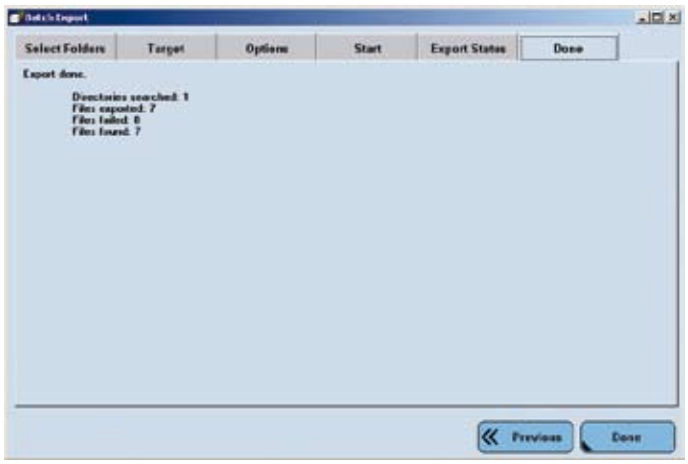
4 On the *Start* tab, you can review your settings and start the export process.

The Reset button on the Start tab is active only after an export is complete. Clicking the Reset button resets the results of the previous export so the export can be repeated.

5 On the *Status* tab, you can view the status of the export process. While the export is in progress, the *Stop* button is active. You can abort the export by clicking the *Stop* button.



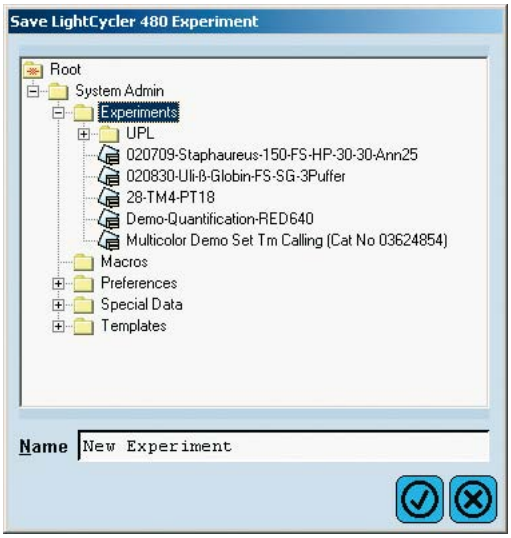
6 The *Done* tab displays a summary of the batch export. Click the *Done* button to close the wizard.



1.5.3 Importing Individual Files

1. From the Navigator controls select *Import*, and select the type of file you want to import:
   - For LightCycler® Software 3.5.3 files (FLO, ABT, TEM files), select *ATF Files*
   - For LightCycler® 480 or LightCycler® Software 4.x files, select *Object .ixo Files*
2. Find and select the file you want, and click *Open*. The file is imported and is opened in the main window.

   To select multiple files, press the <Ctrl> key while clicking the file names.
3. To save the imported file as an object in the current LightCycler® 480 database, click the *Save* button. Navigate to a location in the database to save the object and enter a new object name, and click .



If you import a LightCycler® Software 4.x experiment which uses color compensation you must import the respective Color Compensation experiment separately and create a new Color Compensation object.

1.5.4 Importing Multiple Files Simultaneously

LightCycler® 480 Software includes a batch import tool that lets you import all experiment files in a directory at one time.

For batch import of LightCycler® Software 3.5.3 (ATF) files, the directory must contain the corresponding ABT and TEM file for each FLO file or the FLO file cannot be imported.

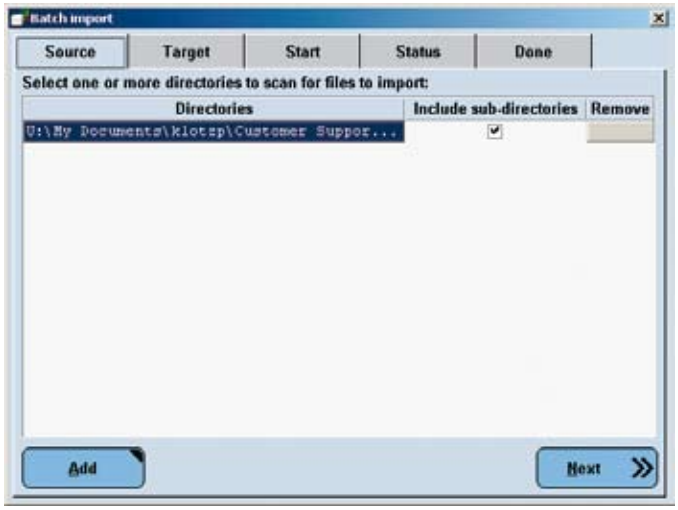
Batch import is only possible from the Navigator.

Batch import is performed using a wizard. You can move from a wizard step to the previous or next step by clicking the corresponding button. Note that the Next button will only be available when you have provided the settings required for tab.

Follow the instructions below to import a directory of experiment files and to repeat an import if necessary.

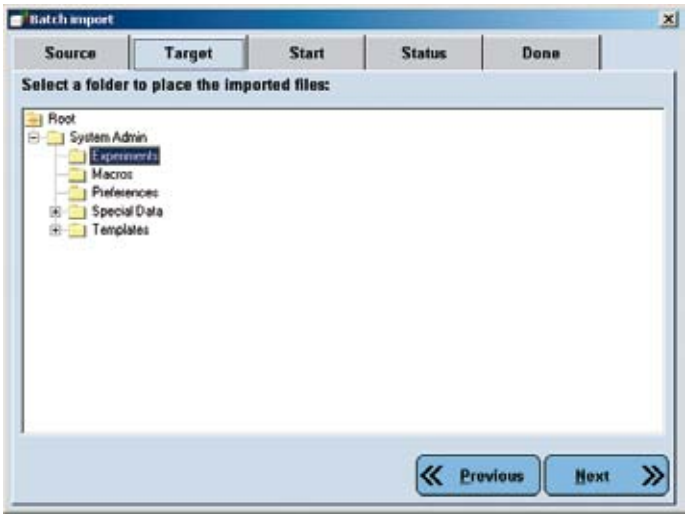
1 From the Navigator controls select *Batch Import*. The *Batch Import* wizard opens.

On the *Source* tab of the wizard, select a source folder on a data carrier. To add source directories to the list, click the *Add* button. Check the *Include sub-directories* box to include all subfolders within the source directory. Click *Remove* to delete the directory entry from the list.

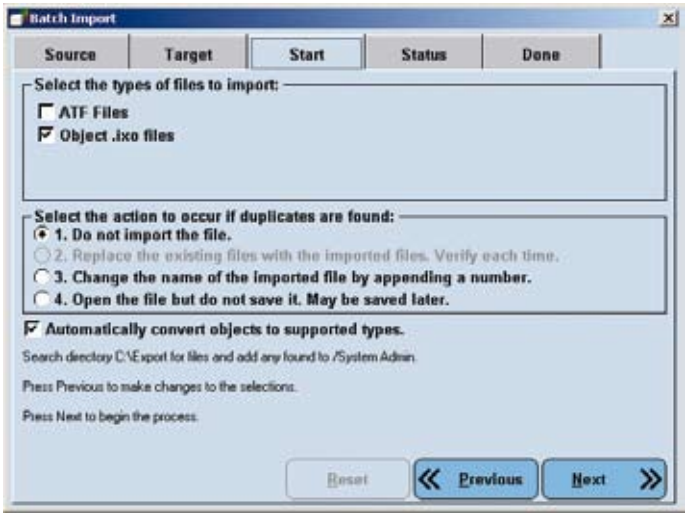


▶ ▶ ▶

2 On the *Target* tab, select a destination directory in the currently open database using the location selector.



3 On the *Start* tab, you can set various import options and start the import process.



The following options are available:

- Choose whether to import ATF or IXO files (or any combination) from the directories.
- Specify the action to take if a file already exists with the same name as an object being exported. The possible actions are:
  - Do not import
  - Replace an existing file after confirmation by the user
  - Change the name before import by appending a number to the file name
  - Open the file but do not save it. The file may be saved manually.

The action Replace an existing file after confirmation by the user is only active if you are working with a research database.

- Choose whether objects should be automatically converted to supported types.
- Click the *Next* button to start the import process.

The Reset button on the Start tab is active only after an import is complete. Clicking the Reset button resets the results of the previous import so the import can be repeated or is aborted.

▶ ▶ ▶

4 On the *Status* tab, you can view the status of the import process. While the import is in progress, the *Stop* button is active. You can abort the import by clicking the *Stop* button.

5 The *Done* tab displays a summary of the batch import. Click the *Done* button to close the wizard.

2 Programming and Running an Experiment

LightCycler® 480 Software controls the LightCycler® 480 Instrument using information provided in the experiment protocol. During an experiment run, the protocol defines the target temperatures and hold times of the thermal block cycler, the number of cycles being executed as well as other parameters. As the experiment progresses, the software gathers temperature and fluorescence data from the instrument and displays it on the **Data** tab. At the end of a run the experiment is saved automatically.

This section explains how to perform the following:

- Program an experiment
- Run an experiment
- Enter sample information

2.1 Programming an Experiment

Programming an experiment consists of defining the cycles of heating and cooling to be performed by the thermal block cycler of the instrument and providing general setup information. For you to be able to create an experiment protocol, your user account must have the Expert User or Local Administrator role. For more information about privileges associated with each user role, see section *Managing User Access*.

You can program an experiment only if an instrument is installed in the LightCycler® 480 Software. To allow programming in offline mode, LightCycler® 480 Software offers four virtual LightCycler® 480 Instruments (for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I or LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, in either 96 or 384 version). If you should need to program an experiment while not being connected to a real instrument, select one of the virtual instruments on the Instruments dialog and set it as the default. (For details on how to install an instrument into LightCycler® 480 Software, see section Administrative Tools. An instrument does not need to be connected for you to be able to program an experiment.)

PCR protocols that you have established on the LightCycler® Carousel-Based System (LightCycler® 1.5 and 2.0 Instruments) can be transferred directly to the LightCycler® 480 Instrument with the following restrictions:

- *Do not use hold times of 0 seconds!*
- *Hold times below 10 seconds should be tested parameter specifically.*

PCR parameters that you have established for other block cycler-based real-time PCR instruments or conventional block cycler PCR can usually be used without any modification.
Note: *There is optimization potential by reducing the hold times and increasing the temperature ramp rates.*

Follow the general steps below to program an experiment. Detailed information for each step follows the general procedure.

To program a new experiment:

1. Choose one of the following options for the first step:
   - Click *New Experiment* in the *Experiment Creation* area of the *Overview* window.
   - Click *New Experiment from Template* in the *Experiment Creation* area of the *Overview* window. In the *Create Experiment from Template* window select the appropriate *Run* templates. You can also use *Subset* and *Sample Editor* templates. After selecting the templates, click . For detailed information on using templates see section *Working with Templates and Macros*.
   - Click *New Experiment from Macro* in the *Experiment Creation* area of the *Overview* window. In the *Create Experiment from Macro* window select the appropriate macro and click . For detailed information on using macros see section *Working with Templates and Macros*.
   - Switch to the *Navigator* window and click *New*. Select the icon for a new LightCycler® 480 Instrument experiment and click .

2. In the *Setup* area of the *Run Protocol* tab, you specify the following setup parameters:

   Detection Format
   Block Size (determined by active instrument, display only)
   Plate ID (optional)
   Reaction Volume
   Color Comp ID (optional)
   Lot No (optional)
   Test ID (optional)

3. Choose a *Detection Format* from the pull-down list and modify the settings for the available detection formats using the *Customize* option, if needed. For more information, see section *Setting Detection Formats*.

4. Enter a PCR multiwell plate identifier into the *Plate ID* field, either manually or using a handheld bar-code scanner. If you have activated the Bar-Code Module the Plate ID is scanned automatically by the built-in bar-code scanner of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument during loading of the multiwell plate.

   If you have entered a Plate ID manually into the Plate ID field and the internal bar-code scanner reads a different bar code from the multiwell plate, the software prompts you to overwrite the Plate ID at the start of the run. If you answer with No, the experiment will not start.

   You can enable or disable the internal bar-code scanner in the Instrument window. For details see section Instruments.

▶ ▶ ▶

5 Select a *Reaction Volume* in µl. The possible range of reaction volume depends on the type of block cycler installed:

- 96-well thermal block cycler: 10 – 100 µl
- 384-well thermal block cycler: 5 – 20 µl

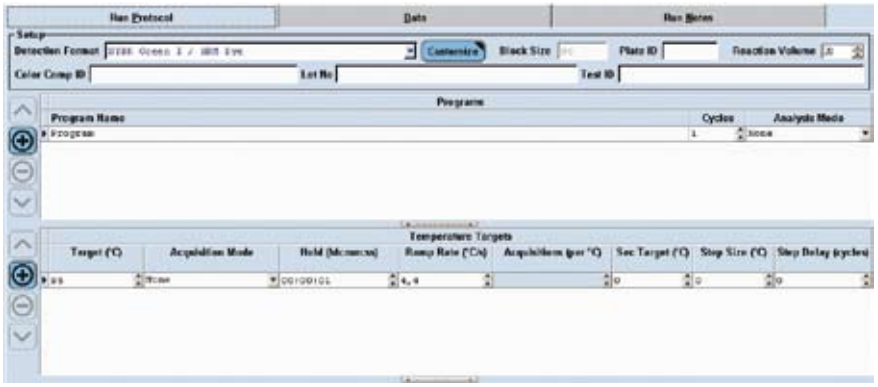
It is possible to use a sample volume as small as 3 µl. However, this volume is not recommended due to the risk of evaporation and subsequent failure of the experiment. If you want to use a sample volume <5 µl, take care to ensure that no evaporation of the reaction mix occurs (e.g., by overlaying it with mineral oil). For the 384-well plate the volume setting does not have any impact on the heating or cooling of the reaction, but on the area of optical read-out: the integration radius for the measurement is adapted according the reaction volume setting made on the Run Protocol tab. As a result, a wrong setting may cause a suboptimal signal-to-noise ratio, but never a complete failure. For the 96-well plate, a big difference between specified volume and actual volume will have a significant impact on the instrument-controlled temperature regulation and thus may impair the experimental results.

6 *The three following actions are optional. Be aware that entering a Color Comp ID restricts the subsequent application of Color Compensation objects to those objects with identical Color Comp ID.*

You can edit these three values at any time before, during, or after the run.

- In the *Color Comp ID* field enter a Color Compensation ID to identify the Color Compensation object you are using for this experiment.
- In the *Lot No* field enter a Lot ID number to identify the reagent batch used for the experiment.
- In the *Test ID* field enter the Test ID number to identify the reagents used for the experiment.

7 In the *Programs* and *Temperature Targets* section, click ⊕ to add as many additional programs or temperature targets as needed for the protocol (the first program is always provided by default). For each program row, specify the *Program Name*, *Cycles*, *Analysis Mode,* etc. (For more information, see section *Defining Programs and Temperature Targets*.)



8 Alternatively, you can apply an experiment template as follows:

- Click *Apply Template* to display the *Apply Template* dialog box.
- Select a *Template* from the list, and click ✓.
  The template settings are applied to the new experiment protocol. Modify setup parameters, experiment programs and temperature targets as needed.

9 (Optional) In the *Module* bar, click *Subset Editor* to define sample subsets. For details, see section *Working with Subsets*.

You are not required to define sample and subset information before the run. You can define this information during or after a run if you wish.

►►►

10 (Optional) In the *Module* bar, click *Sample Editor* to define sample information. For a detailed description, see section *Entering Sample Information*.

11 Prepare the plate and load it into the instrument as described in section *Operation*.

12 Click *Start Run*.

The Start Run button is only available if a multiwell plate has been loaded.

13 The *Save Experiment* dialog is displayed. Enter a name for the experiment and select a folder to save it.

If you are using a clear plate, a warning message indicates that the plate detection sensor is switched off. For details see section *Setting the Plate Type*.

2.1.1 Setting Detection Formats

By setting the detection formats, you choose the filter combinations suitable for your experiment.

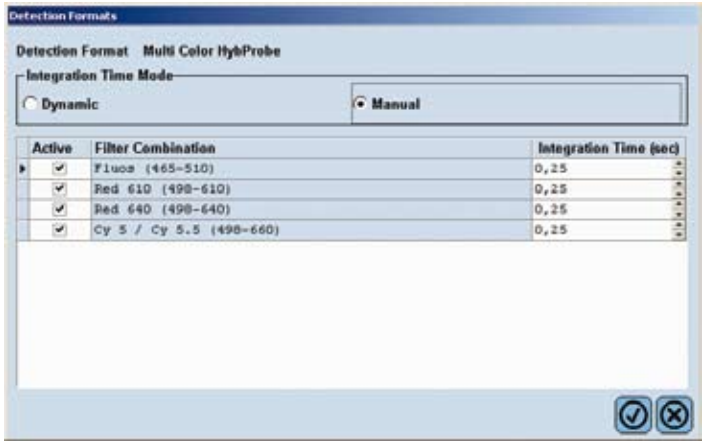
The *Detection Formats* dialog box is displayed when you click *Customize* in the *Setup* area of the *Run Protocol* tab. This dialog box allows you to modify the settings for the available detection formats. The modifications you enter here apply only to the current experiment.

You cannot change or customize the detection format definition after the run has started. If you start a run with a detection format that is not suitable for your experiment, the run is lost because no utilizable data will be generated.

To set the detection formats:

1 In the *Setup* area, select a detection format from the pull-down menu. For more information about pre-defining detection formats, see section *Administrative Tools*.

2 To modify the settings for the available detection formats, click *Customize*. The *Detection Formats* dialog box opens.



3 Select an integration time mode:

- Dynamic: No further input is required

  In this mode, LightCycler® 480 Software uses the Melt and Quant Factor defined for the filter combination to extrapolate the final fluorescence intensity based on the initial value at the beginning of the reaction. The calculated final fluorescence is used to set the optimum integration time. (For details, see section Administrative Tools.)

  The maximum integration time used for Dynamic Mode in the Roche detection formats is set to 1 sec (for hydrolysis probes) or 2 sec (for HybProbe and SimpleProbe probes). This setting provides sufficient signal and a reasonable measuring time. Hence, the total measurement time (for PCR and melting curve) depends on the number of filter combinations and the detection format used in an experiment (e.g., a 4-color hydrolysis probe assay requires maximally 4 sec per measurement). If you use the Dynamic Mode, the time needed for the first measurement is slightly extended (to 5 sec), because the software needs extra calculation time to determine the maximum integration time based on the initial signal.

- Manual: Specify an integration time for each filter combination. The manual integration time is specified in seconds, within the range of 0.01 to 10 seconds. Integration time is defined as the acquisition time of the CCD camera.

4 Select the filter combinations for the selected detection format. By default all filter combinations are selected; clear the checkbox to deselect a filter combination, if needed.

For example, if you select the Multicolor HybProbe detection format, which includes four filter combinations, but wish to run an experiment using Red 610- and Red 640-labeled probes only, deselect the Fluos and Cy5 filter combination. Although it would not be detrimental to your experiment to use the default settings, applying filter combinations that are not required will result in a longer measuring time.

The Fluos filter combination in the Multicolor HybProbe detection format is only required for a Color Compensation experiment.

5 Click to apply the selected filter combinations to your experiment.

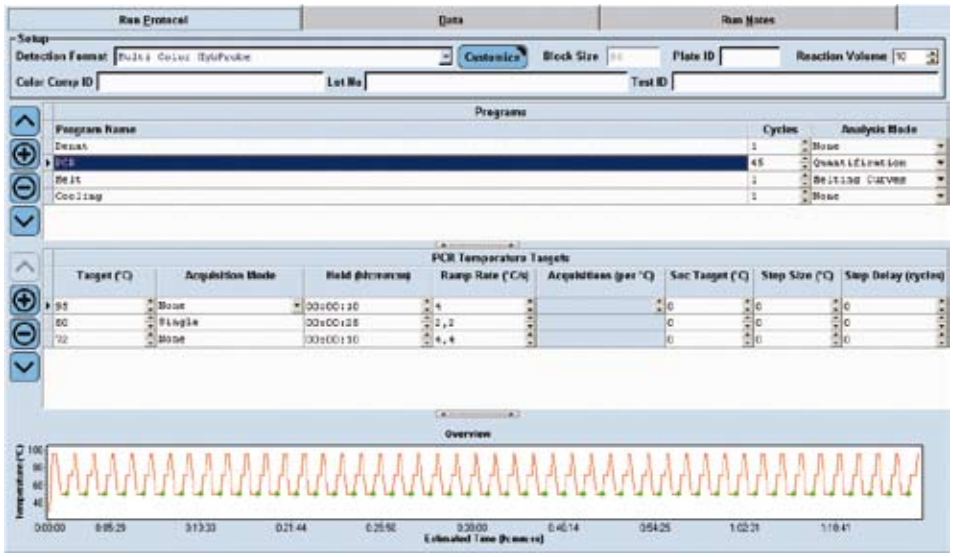
■

D

2.1.2 Defining Programs and Temperature Targets

Each experiment protocol has one or more programs. Each program can be executed for multiple cycles. A program consists of one or more temperature targets. A temperature target specifies the target temperature which is to be reached, the duration for which the temperature is applied, the speed with which the temperature is reached, and other parameters. You define programs and their temperature targets in the *Run Protocol* tab of the *Run* module.

The example below includes four programs: Denat, PCR, Melt and Cooling. When the PCR program (45 cycles) is selected in the *Programs* table, the temperatures appear automatically in the *PCR Temperature Targets* table below.



To define programs and temperature targets:

1. In the *Programs* section of the *Run Protocol* tab, click ⊕ to add a new program. A default program named “Program” is added, containing one default temperature target.

   You can add up to 99 programs.

▶ ▶ ▶

2 Edit the default values for the following program parameters, clicking the <Tab> key on your keyboard to move from one column to the next. (If you make a mistake, click to delete the program and start over.)

Parameter	Description/Instruction	Valid Values
Program Name	The name of the program. Click in the *Program Name* box, and enter a new name.	Any alphanumeric string.
Cycles	The number of times the pro gram should be repeated. Enter a value or select it by clicking the up and down arrows.	1 — 99 cycles
Analysis Mode	The type of analysis expected for this program (if any). Select an analysis mode from the pull-down list. *The Analysis Mode defines which parameters can be selected under Temperature Targets (e.g., if you select Quantification it is not possible to select the Continuous Acquisition Mode.)*	**None:** No analysis is expected **Quantification:** A quantification analysis is expected **Melting curves:** A Melting Curve analysis is expected **Color Compensation:** A Color Compensation analysis is expected

3 In the *Temperature Targets* section, edit the default values for the following temperature parameters for the first temperature target.

Parameter	Description/Instructions	Valid Values
Target	The target temperature. Enter a temperature.	37°C to 99°C, default is 95°C For Melting Curve analysis: 20°C to 99°C
Acquisition Mode	The frequency with which fluorescence data is acquired. Select an acquisition mode from the pull-down list.	**None:** No fluorescence data is acquired. **Single:** Acquires fluorescence data once at the end of this temperature segment in each cycle This is the typical setting for quantification. **Continuous:** Acquires fluorescence data continuously. This is the typical setting for a melting curve or a Color Compensation analysis.
Hold	The length of time to hold the target temperature in hours:minutes:seconds format. Enter a hold time.	00:00:01 — 12:00:00

▶ ▶ ▶

Parameter	Description/Instructions	Valid Values
Ramp Rate (°C/s)	The rate at which the instrument heats up or cools down to the target temperature. Enter a ramp rate. *The maximum ramp rate depends on the block cycler type installed.*	▶ Heating up: 96-well block: 1.0 – 4.4°C/s 384-well block: 1.0 – 4.8°C/s ▶ Cooling down: 96-well block: 1.0 – 2.2°C/s 384-well block: 1.0 – 2.5°C/s
Acquisitions (per °C)	The number of data measurements taken per °C. Only available in the *Continuous* acquisition mode. *To achieve a comparable number of data points per °C in melting curves regardless of the number of filters to be measured, the melting ramp rate is defined as "Acquisitions per °C" and not as ""C per sec".*	1 to 100, default is 5 *The optimal acquisition rate for Melting Curve analysis has to be determined empirically for each assay and can range from 1 to 10 acquisitions/°C.*
Sec Target (°C)	A second target temperature to be reached by the last cycle of the program. Use this feature to change the target temperature of a segment during the amplification reaction. Enter a temperature.	Default: 0°C (no second target temperature) Valid range: 37°C – 99°C
Step Size (°C)	The number of degrees to change the temperature with each cycle to reach the secondary target. Enter a step size.	Default: 0°C (no step) Valid range: 0.1°C – 20°C
Step Delay (cycles)	The number of cycles after the step size is applied for the first time.	Default: 0 (begins with the first cycle) Valid range: 0 – 99

▶ ▶ ▶

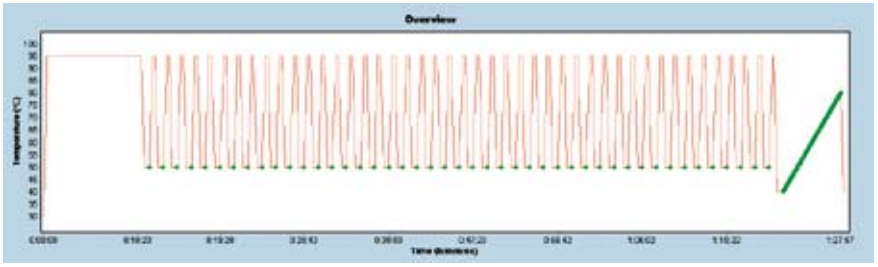
4 Click ⊕ to add another temperature target to the current program, and enter parameter values. Repeat to define as many temperature targets as you need for the current program.

You can add up to 99 temperature targets.

5 Repeat steps 1 – 4 to create additional programs and their temperature targets.

To reorder the programs or temperature targets, select the item you want to move, and click the up ∧ or down ∨ arrow to move the item up or down in the list. To delete an item, select the item, and click ⊖.

6 View the *Overview* section to see a graphical representation of the complete experimental protocol you have defined. Use this chart to see whether the experiment protocol reflects the time and temperature cycles you want and modify the programs and temperature targets as needed.



Declaration of time is estimated.

7 Click 💾 in the *Global action* bar to save the protocol. Navigate to a location to save the protocol, enter a protocol name, and click ✓.

■

D

2.1.3 Customizing the Online Data Display

When the experiment runs, the data being collected are displayed in charts on the *Data* tab of the *Run* module. Three chart types are available:

- Fluorescence History: Fluorescence for selected samples for a selected filter over time
- Temperature History: Temperature and data acquisition points during the experiment run
- Exposure History: Integration time displayed versus acquisition number

You can change any of the type of existing charts and modify the display options.

You can customize the online data display while the experiment is running.

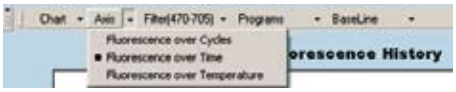
To customize the online data display:

1. In the *Run* module, select the *Data* tab, and click above the chart you want to change. The chart's options toolbar is displayed, containing a chart menu. Fluorescence charts contain additional options.

2. To change the chart type, select the new chart type from the *Chart* menu:
   - Fluorescence History: Displays fluorescence versus time, cycles or temperature
   - Temperature History: Displays temperature versus time
   - Exposure History: Displays integration time versus acquisition number

3. To modify display options for the *Fluorescence History* chart:

   Select the axis type (the type of data represented by the X axis), the filter combination, and the program containing the data you want see. Additionally select or deselect *BaseLine* subtraction.



2.2 Running an Experiment

After you have defined setup parameters (programs and temperature targets) and the online data charts, you are ready to run the LightCycler® 480 Instrument experiment.

To start an experiment run:

1. Prepare a LightCycler® 480 Instrument run as described in section *Operation*.
2. Load the plate into the LightCycler® 480 Instrument as described in section *Operation*.
3. Click *Start Run* on the *Run Protocol* or the *Data* tab.

   You can only start an experiment run when an instrument is connected. The Start Run button is only available if a multiwell plate has been loaded.
4. You are prompted to save the experiment. Enter an experiment name and browse to a folder where you want to save the experiment.

   If you close the dialog without saving the experiment, the run will not start.
5. A status bar on the *Data* tab indicates the progress of the running experiment.

6. As the experiment progresses, the *Messages* area displays messages indicating information, warnings and errors encountered during the run. Returned sample data is displayed in the charts on the *Data* tab.
7. To view data for specific samples, select one or more samples in the *Sample Editor* or *Sample Table*. If needed, you can modify chart settings during the experiment run. For more information, see section *Customizing the Online Data Display*.
8. (Optional) You can apply a Color Compensation object after an experiment run. Use the *Color Comp* multi-select button to turn Color Compensation on or off and to select a Color Compensation object.

Color Comp (Off)	No Color Compensation object has been selected. Select this if you do not want to use Color Compensation.
In Use	Allows you to select an object from the *Selected Color Compensations* list. This list displays all selected (*i.e.,* previously applied) Color Compensation objects. The compensated filter combinations are displayed in brackets after each name.
In Database	Allows you to select an object from the *Available Color Compensations* list. This list displays all available Color Compensation objects. For each object, the list includes the name, creation date, path and filter combinations that can be compensated.
9. (Optional) To adjust or stop the program during the run:

   ► Click *End Program* to stop the current program and skip to the next program in the experiment protocol.

   Performing this task ensures, that the data are complete and an analysis can be performed.

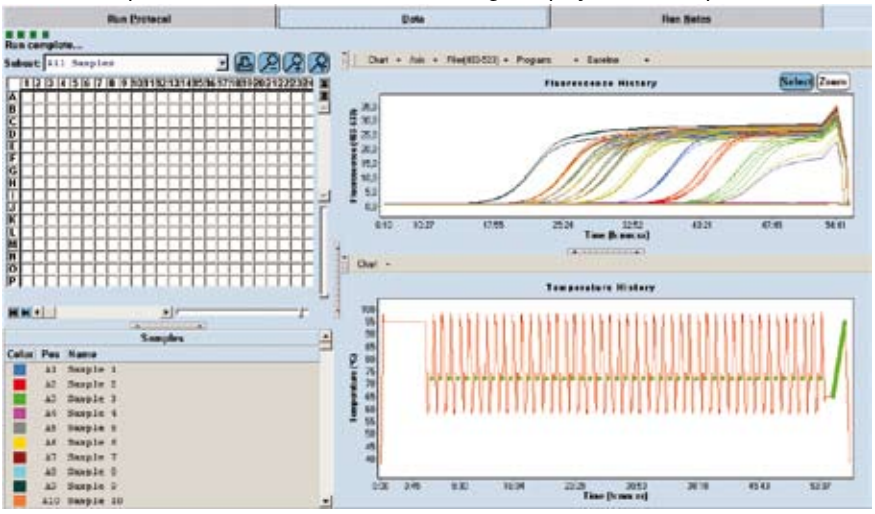
   ► Click + *10 Cycles* to add 10 cycles to the current program.

   Click *Abort Run* to stop the run. (The *Abort Run* button replaces the *Start Run* button during the run.)

   Performing this task results in incomplete data, no analysis can be performed.

► ► ►

10 When the experiment is finished, a status message displays “Run complete”.



11 Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar to open the *Sample Editor*, and complete sample information, if necessary. For more information, see section *Entering Sample Information*.

You can enter or modify the sample information at any time before, during or after the experiment is completed. We recommend that you enter the sample information before running the experiment.

During a run, temporary backup data for the current experiment is saved to the user’s file system. If the run finishes and has saved the data in the database without an error, these temporary backup data are deleted. If the connection between the application and the instrument is temporarily interrupted, the software will download data automatically from the instrument after the connection is reestablished. The maximum length of a timeout is 7 minutes. If the timeout is exceeded, the run is considered as prematurely terminated, and a warning is generated. If backup or instrument data exist, the data will be automatically recovered upon your next login or start of a new run if a corresponding experiment is found by the software. If no corresponding experiment is found, the software prompts you to confirm the deletion of the data.

2.3 Entering Sample Information

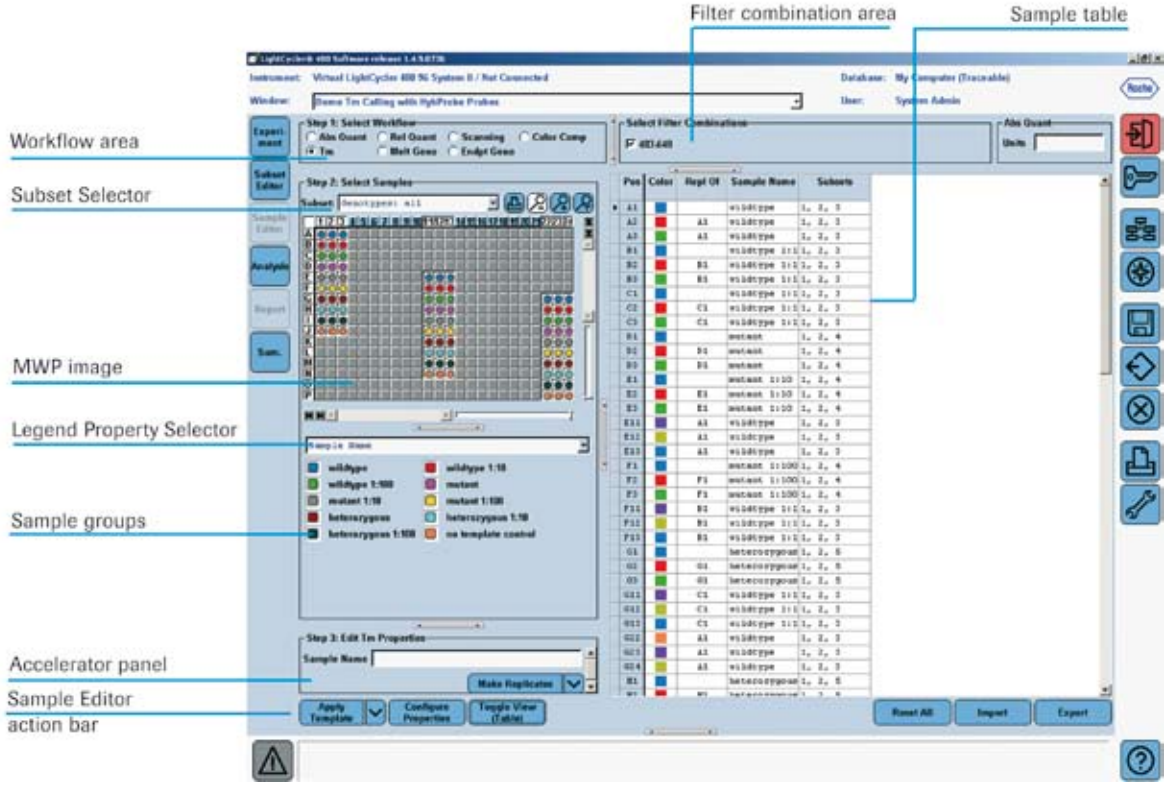
Use the LightCycler® 480 Software *Sample Editor* to record information about the samples in the experiment. You can enter sample information manually before, during or after an experiment is completed. When creating a new experiment, *Sample Editor* data can also be imported from tab-delimited text files.

Editable fields are displayed as white, and non-editable fields are displayed as pale blue. Only entries that are not replicates may be edited.

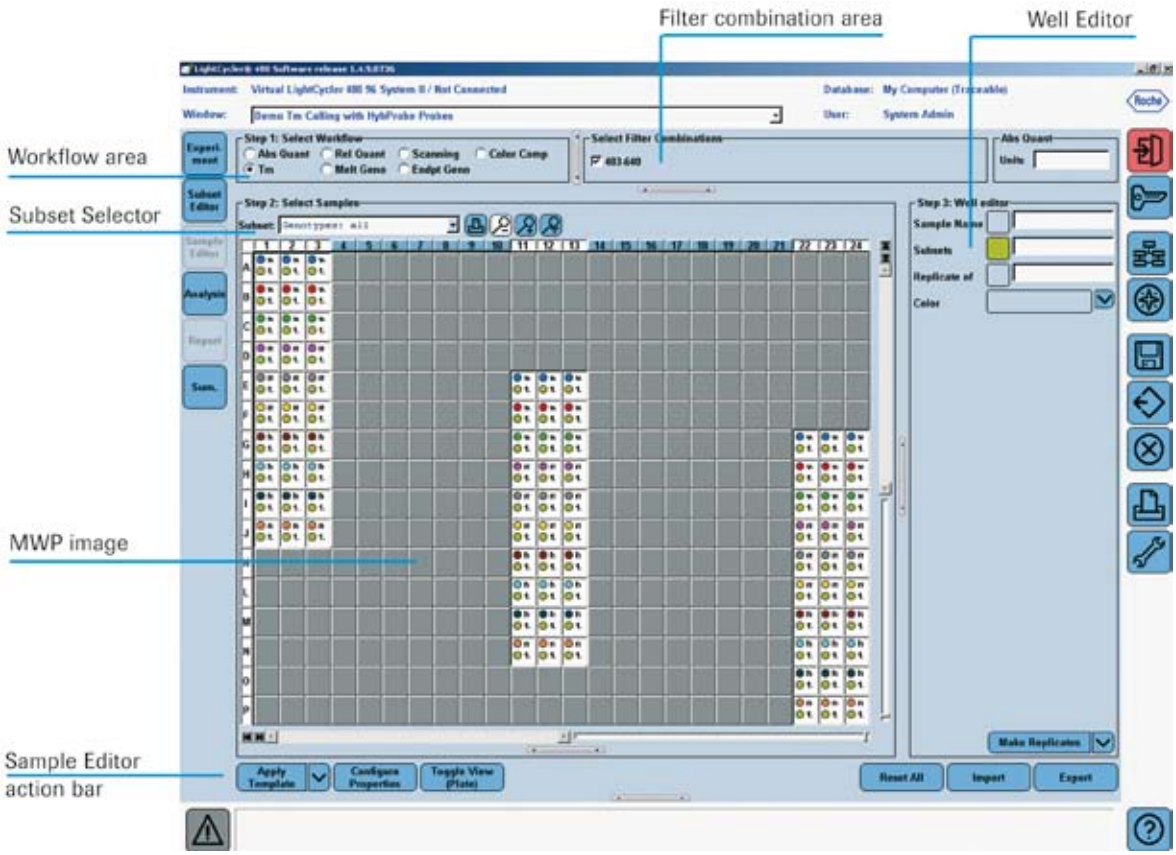
Any sample designated as a replicate is automatically renamed "Repl. of S," where "S" is the sample name of the source sample. All information on the analysis tabs for a replicate will duplicate that of the source sample.

2.3.1 Sample Editor Window

You open the *Sample Editor* window by clicking *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar. By default the *Table View* of the *Sample Editor* window is displayed.



Clicking the *Toggle View* button in the action button area changes the display to the *Plate View*.



2.3.2 Sample Editor Action Bar

The *Sample Editor* action bar contains the following buttons:

Button	Function
Apply Template / Save As Template	Clicking *Apply Template* displays the *Apply Template* dialog box. Select a *Template* from the list and click . The template settings are applied to the new experiment protocol. Clicking *Save As Template* displays the *Template* dialog box. Select a location to save the template and enter a name in the *Name* field. Click .
Configure Properties	Clicking *Configure Properties* opens the *Configure Sample Editor Properties* dialog. Add or remove properties to/from the *Table* or *Plate View* and click . For more information see section *Configuring Sample Editor Properties*.
Toggle View (Table) / Toggle View (Plate)	Clicking this button toggles between the *Table* and *Plate View* of the *Sample Editor*.
Reset All	Clicking *Reset All* resets all sample information to the default values and resets any analysis-specific *Sample Editor* fields to their default values.
Import	Clicking *Import* opens the *Sample information import* dialog to browse for an import data file. For detailed information see section *Importing and Exporting Sample Information*.
Export	Clicking *Export* opens a file selection dialog. Browse for a location and enter a name for the export file. The *Sample Editor* data are exported to a tab-delimited text file. For detailed information see section *Importing and Exporting Sample Information*.
Make Replicates / Auto Replicate / Clear Replicates	Each workflow contains a multi-select button *Replicates* with three options: ► Clicking *Make Replicates* creates a replicate group with the current selection, using the first sample as the master. ► Clicking *Auto Replicate* creates replicates of all samples in the selection that have all properties identical in all filter combinations. ► Clicking *Clear Replicates* clears the *Repl Of* column for the selection. When a sample is cleared, it retains the attributes it has as a replicate.

D

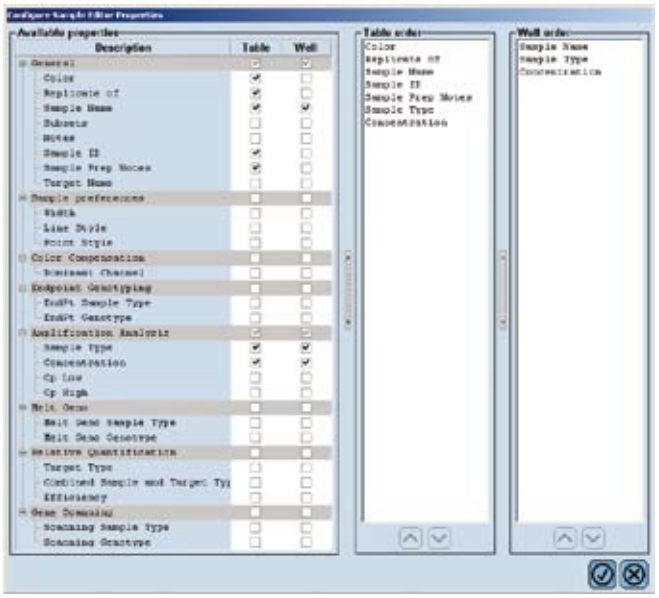
2.3.3 Configuring Sample Editor Properties

The *Configure Sample Editor Properties* dialog allows you to customize the *Sample Editor* window according to your needs.

- You select the properties to be displayed in the *Sample Table* in *Table View* or the *Well Editor* in *Plate View*.
- You choose the order of the properties in *Table* or *Plate View*.

To configure the *Sample Editor* properties:

1. In the *Sample Editor* action bar click *Configure Properties*. The *Configure Sample Editor Properties* dialog is displayed.



2. In the *Available Properties* list select or deselect the properties to be displayed in *Table View* and/or *Plate View*. Selected properties are displayed in the corresponding *Table order* or *Well order* list.
3. (Optional) Select a property in the *Table order* or *Well order* list and click the  or  button to change the order of the properties.
4. Click  to close the *Configure Sample Editor Properties* dialog. The properties are displayed in the *Table* or *Plate View* according to your selection.

   The property selection is saved with the experiment.

2.3.4 Entering Sample Information

To enter sample information:

1. In the *Module* bar, click *Sample Editor*. The *Sample Editor* opens.

2. In the *Workflow* area select the workflow corresponding to the experiment you want to create.

   When a workflow is selected, the LightCycler® 480 software automatically reconfigures the *Table* or *Plate View*. The corresponding properties are automatically added to the *Sample Table* and the *Well Editor*. When changing the selected workflow, the Accelerator is reconfigured. The *Table* and *Well Editor* add all default properties of the new workflow to the already displayed properties of the previous workflow, that means, no properties will be removed..

3. Customize the *Sample Editor* window according to your needs:
   - Select the filter combination to be used in the experiment in the *Select Filter Combination* area.
   - In the *Subset* box, select a predefined subset of samples to display, or select *All Samples* to display all samples on the MWP. For more information on defining subsets, see section *Working with Subsets*.
   - Click the toggle button in the *Sample Editor* action bar to toggle between *Table* and *Plate View*.
   - In the *Table View* and the *Plate View* use the *Legend Property Selector* to select which options are displayed in the *Legend* and in the *Table View Well Editor* or the *Plate View Well Editor*. The options provided in the *Legend Property Selector* depend on the workflow.
   - Click the *Configure Properties* button in the *Sample Editor* action bar to open the *Configure Sample Editor Properties* dialog. Add or remove properties to/from the *Table* or *Plate View* and click  . For more information see section *Configuring Sample Editor Properties*.

4. Select the samples to edit in the *Sample Selector*. For information on selecting samples see section *Selecting and Deselecting Samples*.

►►►

5 Enter the general information for each sample. You can enter the data
- in the *Table View*, see section *Entering Data in Table View*, or
- in the *Plate View*, see section *Entering Data in Plate View*.

Properties	Description	Valid Values
Sample Name	The name of the sample	Alphanumeric characters; spaces allowed (maximum 25 characters)
Repl Of	When the sample is a replicate, the position number of the original sample	The number of another sample that is not specified as a replicate (you cannot create a replicate of a replicate). Enter the position number, *e.g.,* „A5“.
Subsets	Number of the subset to which the sample belongs	Display only
Notes	Any additional information about the sample	Alphanumeric characters
Sample ID	ID for the sample type or sample material	Alphanumeric characters; spaces allowed (maximum 11 characters)
Sample Prep Notes	Flag information of a previous sample preparation can be added to this field.	Alphanumeric characters Batch ID + Flag Code e.g. E1004

6 Enter the specific sample properties according to the workflow you selected in the *Workflow* area. For detailed information on the properties, see the sections describing the specific analysis methods.

7 (Optional) Click the *Replicates* button to create replicates for all selected samples.
- *Make Replicates* creates a replicate group with the current selection, using the first sample as the master.
- *Auto Replicate* creates replicates of all samples in the selection that have all properties identical in all filter combinations.
- *Clear Replicates* clears the *Repl Of* column for the selection. When a sample is cleared, it retains the attributes it has as a replicate.

Samples can differ in an unselected filter combination. This can be confusing if you use Auto Replicate.

8 (Optional) If you need to start over, click *Reset Samples*. Resetting the samples resets all sample information to the default values and resets any analysis-specific *Sample Editor* tabs to their default values.

9 When finished, click in the *Global action* bar to save the sample information with the experiment.

10 To print out your sample loading, click in the MWP image area.

Entering Data in Table View

You have different options for entering data in the *Table View*.

- Entering data directly in the cells of the table:
  - Click in a single cell and edit the value.
  - Select a range of cells, copy and paste a selection from another part of the table.
  - Select a range of cells, copy and paste a selection from a spreadsheet program, *e.g.*, Microsoft Excel.
  - Select a range of cells, type a value and press the <Enter> key.

  For more information on using tables see section *Working with Tables*.

- Entering data using the *Accelerator* panel:

  The system displays the *Accelerator* panel according to the selected workflow. For information on the analysis-specific fields of the *Accelerator* panel, see the corresponding analysis descriptions.

1. Select the samples you want to edit in the MWP image. The data of the selected wells are displayed in the *Accelerator* panel:
   - If a value is the same for all selected wells, the value is displayed in the *Accelerator* panel fields.
   - If a value differs for the selected wells, no value is displayed.
2. Edit the values in the *Accelerator* panel fields.

   The values are applied to all selected wells.

   If you select a single well, the contents of this well are displayed in the Accelerator panel fields. You can now edit the values for the well.

■

Entering Data in Plate View

In *Plate View* you enter data in the *Well Editor*.

1. Click the *Toggle View (Table)* button to change to the *Plate View*.
2. Configure the properties to be displayed in the *Well Editor* as described in section *Configuring Sample Editor Properties*.
3. Select the samples you want to edit in the MWP image. The data of the selected wells are displayed in the *Well Editor*:
   - If a value is the same for all selected wells, the value is displayed in the *Well Editor* fields.
   - If a value differs for the selected wells, no value is displayed.
4. Edit the values in the *Well Editor* fields.

   The values are applied to all selected wells.

   If you select a single well, the contents of this well are displayed in the Well Editor fields. You can now edit the values for the well.

■

Importing and Exporting Sample Information

The *Sample Editor* offers an import function that can read data from tab-delimited files into the *Sample Editor* table, both into the *Table* or *Plate View*. Such import data files can be created using common spreadsheet programs (*e.g.*, Microsoft Excel).

To be valid for automated import, data files containing sample information must have certain properties:

- Each line in the import data file must be associated with a well position, while each column in the input must be associated with a data column in one of the *Sample Editor*'s tabs.
- Each row of the imported data file must contain the position of the sample. If there is no sample position column or if the sample position column has invalid entries, the file is not imported and the OK button will not be active.
- The columns of type "sample position" ('Pos' and 'Repl. Of' columns) must contain a row and column position value consisting of a single letter and an integer (in the form of A1, B2, etc.). The row and column must exist in the current MTP layout. If any position is invalid, the data in that line of the file will not be imported and an error is recorded in the status report.
- The columns of type "Filter Combination" ('Filt. Comb.' and 'Dominant Channel' columns) must contain a string in the format XXX-YYY, where XXX and YYY are wavelengths of the detection format in the experiment. If the values are invalid for any row, the data in that line of the file cannot be imported and the error will be recorded in the status report.
- The 'Sample Type' columns for Quantification and Genotyping analysis must match the values in the selection list for the corresponding column in the *Sample Editor* (*e.g.*, for Absolute Quantification this is "Unknown" and "Standard"). If the values are invalid for any row, the data for the field are not imported and the error is recorded in the status report.
- If any line in the file begins with a "#" character, it is considered to be a comment line and will be ignored. If the first field's first character contains a "#", then the field needs to be enclosed in quotes.
- If the text for any field contains the delimiter character (tab or comma) or a space, then the text must be enclosed in double quotes.
- The import file must contain the same number of columns for each row, even if columns are blank. If the number of columns present on any row is incorrect, the file will not be imported and the error will be recorded in the status report.

Import data files both with and without a header row are supported. You may specify whether the current file has a header row by using the header row checkbox. If checked, the first row in the file will be used for headers. If unchecked, the first row in the file will be used as data. If the program correctly identifies all the column headers in the first row when a file is scanned, the software will automatically check the header row checkbox. Otherwise, the header row checkbox will be unchecked.

Information in the header line has to be tab-delimited and must be consistent with the remainder of the file. Key words in the header line must be consistent with a key word set understood by the software. If the key words of one or more columns do not match the software's expectation, the software will prompt you to assign data to its target column. The table below gives an overview over supported key words in the column header and the correlation to the respective field in the *Sample Editor* table:

Category	Column Header	Field in Sample Editor
General	General:Color	Color
	General:Replicate of	Repl Of
	General:Sample name	Sample name
	General:Subsets	Subsets
	General:Notes	Notes
	General:Sample ID	Sample ID
	General:Sample Prep Notes	Sample Prep Notes
	General:Target Name	Target Name
Sample preferences	Sample pref:Width	Width
	Sample pref:Line Style	Line Style
	Sample pref:Point Style	Point Style
Color Compensation	Color Comp:Dominant Channel	Dominant Channel
Endpoint Genotyping	Endpt. Geno:EndPt Sample Type	EndPt Sample Type
	Endpt. Geno:EndPt Genotype	EndPt Genotype
Amplification Analysis	Abs Quant:Sample Type	Quantification Sample Type
	Abs Quant:Concentration	Concentration
	Abs Quant:Cp Low	Cp Low
	Abs Quant:Cp High	Cp High
Melt Geno	Melt Geno:Sample Type	Melt Geno Sample Type
	Melt Geno:Genotype	Melt Geno Genotype
Relative Quantification	Rel Quant:Target Type	Target Type
	Rel Quant:Combined Sample and Target type	Combined Sample and Target type
	Rel Quant:Efficiency	Efficiency
Gene Scanning	Gene Scanning:Scanning Sample Type	Scanning Sample Type
	Gene Scanning:Scanning Geno-type	Scanning Genotype

If an import data file contains empty cells this will not change data already present in the *Sample Editor*.

Replicates can only be imported by specifying multiple positions in a common sample position cell (spaces work as a separator). The first sample position listed in the cell shall be the master of the replicate group. If the 'Repl. Of' column is included and a value is set for a sample, all other data except the position column must be blank. The designated position will be set as a replicate of the position in the 'Repl. Of' column. If the data is not

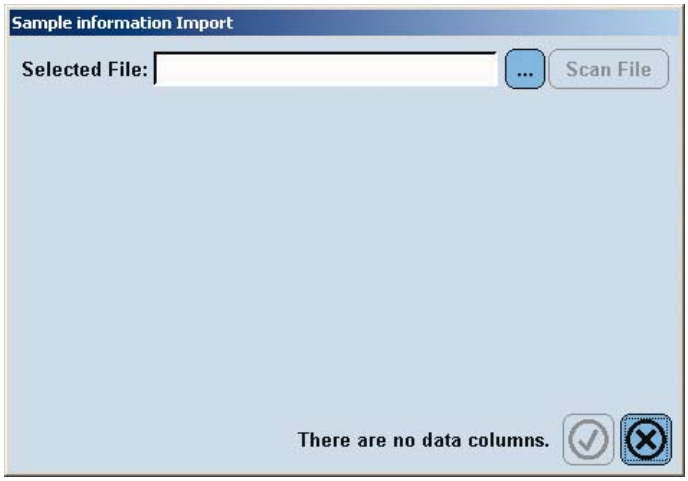
blank, the data will not be imported and a warning will be shown in the status report.

- If the *Create replicates from duplicate sample names?* checkbox is checked, samples that share the same sample name in the import file will be set up as replicates.
- If the *Create replicates from duplicate sample names?* checkbox is checked and data other than the sample name are not blank, the non-blank data will not be imported.

The easiest way to create a compatible import data file is to export the Sample Editor data of an existing experiment and to use this file as a template.

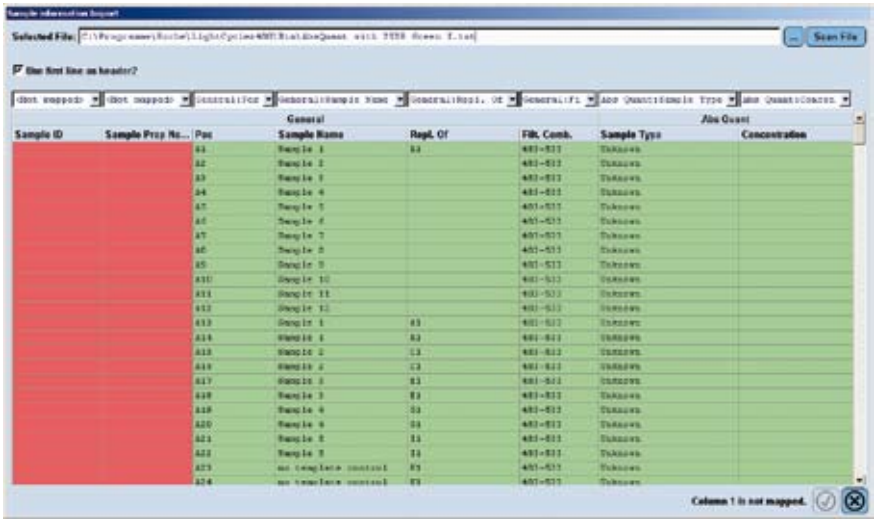
To import Sample Editor data:

1. Click the *Import* button to browse for the import data file. The software displays a file selection and preview dialog.



2 Click the ... button to navigate to the import data file.

When you have selected a file, click the *Scan File* button. The software updates the preview, displays the automatic column assignments and sets the default for the *Use first line as header?* checkbox.

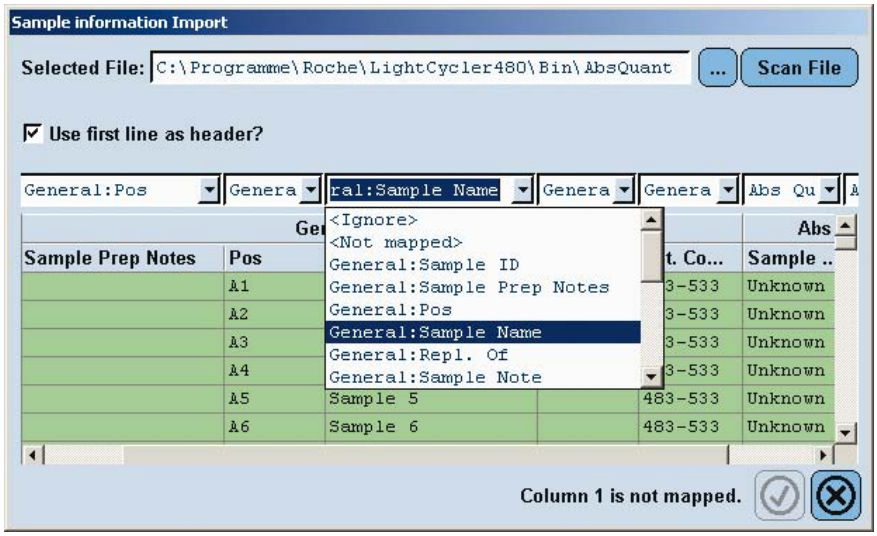


3 Check the *Use first line as header?* checkbox if the first line in the import file is to be used as the header. Select *Scan File* to rescan the file.

4 Check the *Create replicates from duplicate sample names?* checkbox if samples that share the same sample name in the import file are to be set up as replicates.

▶ ▶ ▶

5 In the mapping column headers, you may alter the assignment for a column by selecting a new category and field.



Only one import file column can be assigned to each column in the Sample Editor. If a Sample Editor column is re-assigned to a different import file column, the previous import file column will be unassigned and marked as not mapped.

You may choose the value "<Ignore>" in the column mapping field. When a column is mapped to ignored, that column will not be imported and will be marked in yellow in the preview table.

6 Click . to accept the column assignments. The data is imported into the *Sample Editor*.

D

To export Sample Editor data:

1 Select the *Export* button. The software displays a file selection dialog.

2 Enter a file name and click *Save*.

3 The *Sample Editor* data are exported as a tab-delimited text file.

3 Overview of Experimental Analysis

LightCycler® 480 Software includes analysis modules that can be used to analyze experiment results in various ways. To analyze an experiment, you must add one or more of the analysis modules to the experiment, after the run has finished.

The following analysis modules are available:

- Quantification
  - Absolute Quantification enables you to quantify a single target sequence and express the final result as an absolute value.
  - Relative Quantification compares the levels of two different target sequences in a single sample and expresses the final result as a ratio of these targets.
- Genotyping
  - Endpoint Genotyping derives the genotyping information from the amplification curve's endpoint signal intensity.
  - Melting Curve Genotyping derives the genotyping information from the shape of a melting curve established after the PCR.
- T_m Calling calculates the melting temperatures and melting peaks of target DNA.
- Color Compensation generates color-compensation data that can be applied to a multicolor experiment or to an analysis to compensate for overlap between fluorescence channels.
- The additional software module Gene Scanning determines the heteroduplex structures in samples by analyzing experimental data generated in the presence of the LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Dye.

Without the LightCycler® 480 Gene Scanning Software you are able to view any gene scanning experiment in the LightCycler® 480 Software. You however cannot perform a gene scanning analysis.

This section explains the general steps required to perform any analysis and presents tips on how to use an analysis window. Subsequent sections explain in detail how to perform each type of analysis.

3

3.1 Overview of Analysis Steps

The general steps required to add an analysis module and perform an analysis are described below. The steps are the same for any analysis type. For specific information about setting parameters for each type of analysis, see the section about the specific analysis.

To perform an analysis:

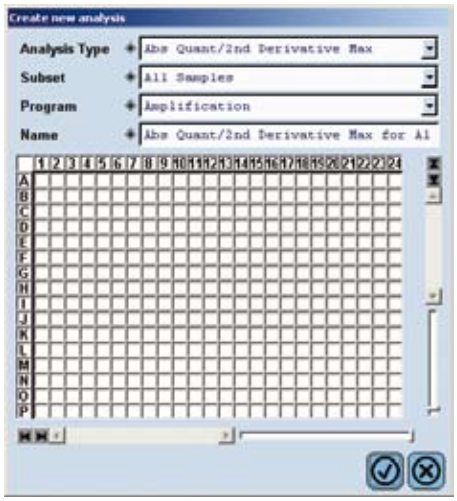
1. Open the experiment you want to analyze in the LightCycler® 480 Software main window.
2. In the *Module* bar, click *Sample Editor*. If you have not already entered sample information, enter information to identify the samples.
3. Enter the analysis-specific sample information. The kind of information you can enter depends on the type of analysis. For details, see section *Entering Sample Information*.
4. Click *Analysis* on the LightCycler® 480 Software *Module* bar. The *Analysis Overview* window opens.

   The *Analysis Overview* window displays the *Create New Analysis* list and *Open Existing Analysis* list (if an analysis was created before).

5. Select the analysis type from the *Create New Analysis* list.

   The *Create new analysis* dialog opens. Here you can again define the analysis type and select an analysis subset. If your experimental protocol should contain several programs that are suited for the selected analysis type, select one from the *Program* list. If you wish, you can change the analysis name (the default name is "*analysis type* for *subset name*"). Click .

   You cannot make changes to an analysis subset after an analysis is created using the subset.



► ► ►

6 In the *Analysis* window enter or adjust the parameters.

- Use the *Color Compensation* multi-select button to turn Color Compensation on or off and to select a Color Compensation object.
- Use the *Filter Comb button* to select the fluorescence channel you want to analyze. For more information see section *Selecting Filter Combination and Color Compensation.*
- Click *Apply Template* to display the *Apply Template* dialog box. Select a *Template* from the list and click . The template settings are applied to the new experiment protocol. For more information see section *Working with Templates and Macros*.
- Select the options specific to the analysis type. For the analysis-specific options see the corresponding sections.

If you change information in the Sample Editor (except sample name, sample note or target name) after performing the analysis, you must recalculate the analysis results using the updated values from the Sample Editor. In this case, the Calculate button becomes active again.

7 You can add more than one analysis to an experiment, including multiple instances of the same analysis type: Click in the *Analysis* toolbar.

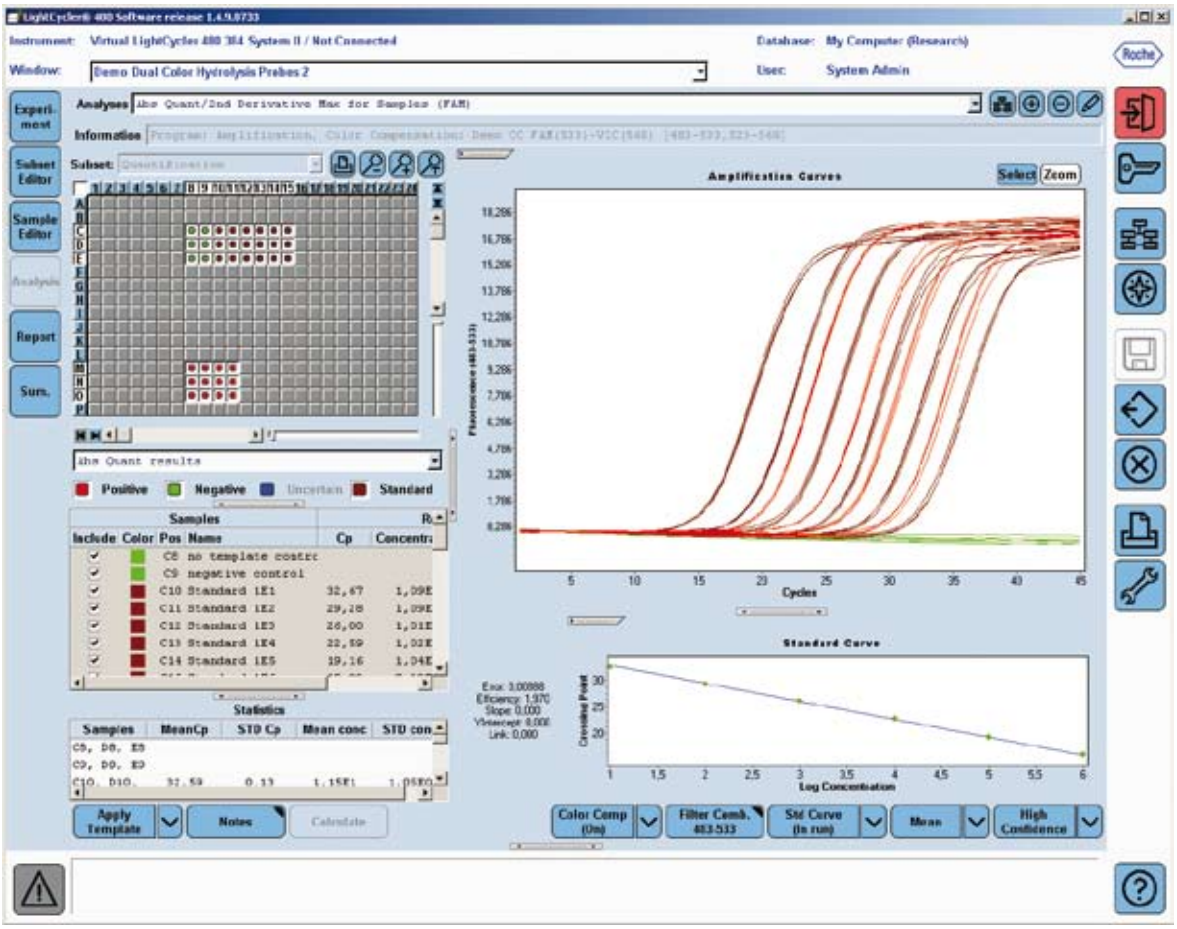
Repeat steps 3 – 6 to add additional analysis modules.

8 Click in the *Global action* bar to save the analysis results as part of the experiment. For general information about using the analysis window see section *Using the Analysis Window*.

3

3.2 Using the Analysis Window

The following figure illustrates a typical analysis window; in this case, for an Absolute Quantification analysis. The *Analysis* toolbar is at the top, the *Action button* area for the analysis is at the bottom, the list of experiment samples is on the left, and the areas of the window containing analysis charts are on the right.



D

3.2.1 Selecting Filter Combination and Color Compensation

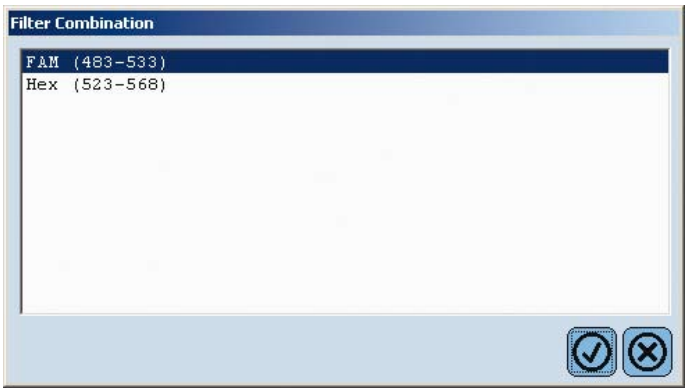
To perform an analysis, you must specify the filter combination you want to analyze and apply Color Compensation (if appropriate).

Use the buttons on the analysis' *Action button* area, to make the necessary selections. (The T_m *Calling* and *Color Compensation* modules have slightly different options. For more information, see the sections related to these modules.)

Use the buttons as follows:

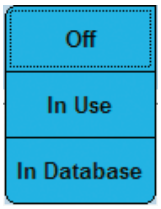
Filter Combination

Use the *Filter Comb* button to select the fluorescence channel you want to analyze. A list of all filter combinations for which data was gathered for the experiment is displayed:



After selecting a filter combination from the list, the button displays the selected filter combination.

Color Compensation



Use the *Color Compensation* multi-select button to turn Color Compensation on or off and to select a Color Compensation object:

Off	Select Off if you do not want to use Color Compensation.
In Use	Allows you to select an object from the *Selected Color Compensations* dialog. This dialog displays all selected (*i.e.*, previously applied) color compensation objects. The compensated filter combinations are displayed in brackets after each name.
In Database	Allows you to select an object from the *Available Color Compensations* dialog. This dialog displays all Color Compensation objects available in the database matching the instrument's serial number and selected filter combination. For each object, the list includes the name and path.

Color Compensation is always applied to the filter combination that is selected by the Filter Combination button.

For more information, see section *Performing a Color Compensation Experiment*.

Additional buttons may be displayed, depending on the analysis type.

3.2.2 Working with Samples in the Analysis

An analysis module always displays a list of samples on the left. After analysis calculations are complete, results for the samples are displayed in columns to the right of the sample names. The analysis module also displays charts of sample data. For detailed information, see sections *Sample Selector* and *Sample Table*.

Selecting Samples to Include in Result Calculations

Select the checkbox next to a sample name to generate analysis results for the sample. By default, all samples are checked at the beginning of an analysis. Double-click a sample checkbox to deselect or reselect it. To check or uncheck a group of samples simultaneously, highlight the range of samples, and press the <Space> bar. This toggles the check marks on or off in all the selected sample boxes.

Selecting Samples to View in Charts

Samples are color-coded. To find a sample in a chart, note the color of the sample in the sample list, and look for the color on the chart. Alternatively, place the mouse pointer over a line on a chart to display a small box containing the name of the sample represented by the line:

When you highlight a sample name in the sample list, data from the selected sample is displayed in the analysis charts. By default, all samples are selected when you first open the analysis window.

To select samples:

- To select one sample, highlight the sample name in the sample list.
- To select multiple samples, press the <Ctrl> key while clicking the sample names.
- To select a contiguous set of samples, click the first sample name, and press the <Shift> key while clicking the last sample name in the set.
- To select all samples, press <Ctrl-A>.

The analysis graphs are redrawn using the selected samples.

Copying Sample Information

After an analysis is complete, you can copy sample names and results from the analysis window and paste the text into other software programs.

To copy sample names and results:

- Select one or more sample rows to copy, and press <Ctrl-C>.
- Open the program into which you want to paste the copied text (*e.g.*, Microsoft Excel), and press <Ctrl-V>.

Sorting the Sample Table

You can sort the *Sample Table* by clicking the header of a column. Clicking the header several times toggles the sort order between descending and ascending.

To sort the table by well position – either MWP column-wise or row-wise – click the header of the *Pos* column.

Exporting Sample Information

You can export the *Sample Table* data as a tab-delimited text file for further use in common spreadsheet programs (*e.g.*, Microsoft Excel). To export the *Sample Table* data, right-click the table area and select *Export Table*. A file selection dialog opens. Enter a file name and click *Save*.

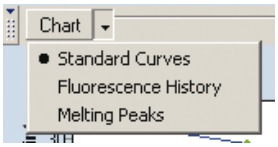
3.2.3 Working with Charts in the Analysis Window

The analysis charts are always displayed on the right side of the *Analysis* window. The following section gives a summary of working with charts in the *Analysis* window. For detailed information see section *Working with Charts*.

Choosing the Chart to be Displayed

To choose a chart to be displayed in the *Analysis* window:

1. Click  above the chart you want to change. The chart's options toolbar is displayed, containing a chart menu. The different charts contain specific additional options.
2. To change the chart type, select the new chart type from the *Chart* menu.



3. To modify display options for the chart, select the corresponding option from the chart's options toolbar.

Zooming in and out

To zoom a view of an analysis chart, click the *Zoom* button and place the cursor above and to the left of the area you want to enlarge. Click and drag the mouse pointer down and to the right. The mouse pointer draws a rectangle. The area within the rectangle is enlarged to fill the window. To restore the chart to its original size, click and drag the mouse pointer up and to the left. (Do this only once to restore the chart.)

Selecting Samples

To select samples directly from a chart, click the *Select* button and select curves or points on the chart by drawing a rectangle. The corresponding samples are selected in the *Sample Selector*.

Printing, Exporting and Copying a Chart

For exporting, printing or copying a chart displayed in the *Analysis* window, right-click within the chart boundaries and select the corresponding action from the context menu. For details see section *Working with Charts*.

3.2.4 Adding Analysis Notes

You can add analysis notes to the analysis.

1. To open the *Analysis Notes* window, click the *Notes* button in the *Action* bar.
2. Enter your analysis notes and click to add your notes to the analysis.
3. Click on the *Global action* bar to save the notes with the experiment.

3.2.5 Removing or Renaming an Analysis

You can remove or rename analyses saved with your experiment if your user account has the Expert User or Local Administrator role. You may also be able to remove or rename analyses stored with experiments of other users, depending on the access privileges associated with your user account. For more information about access privileges, see section *Managing User Access*.

To remove an analysis from an experiment:

1. Select an analysis from the *Analyses* bar.
2. Click the *Remove Item* button in the *Analysis* toolbar.
3. You are prompted to confirm your choice.
4. Click to remove the analysis.
   Click to save the experiment without the analysis.

To rename an analysis:

You can rename the analysis associated with an experiment. Renaming is helpful if you have more than one analysis of the same type associated with the experiment.

1. Select an analysis from the *Analyses* bar.
2. Click the *Rename Item* button in the Analysis toolbar. The *Edit Name* dialog opens:

3. Enter a new name and click .

   Names must be unique in each database folder.

3

3.3 Exporting Analysis Results

LightCycler® 480 Software includes a batch export tool that lets you export all analysis results from experiments in a group of folders and all its subfolders by using the analysis batch result wizard. Follow the instructions below to export an experiment analysis.

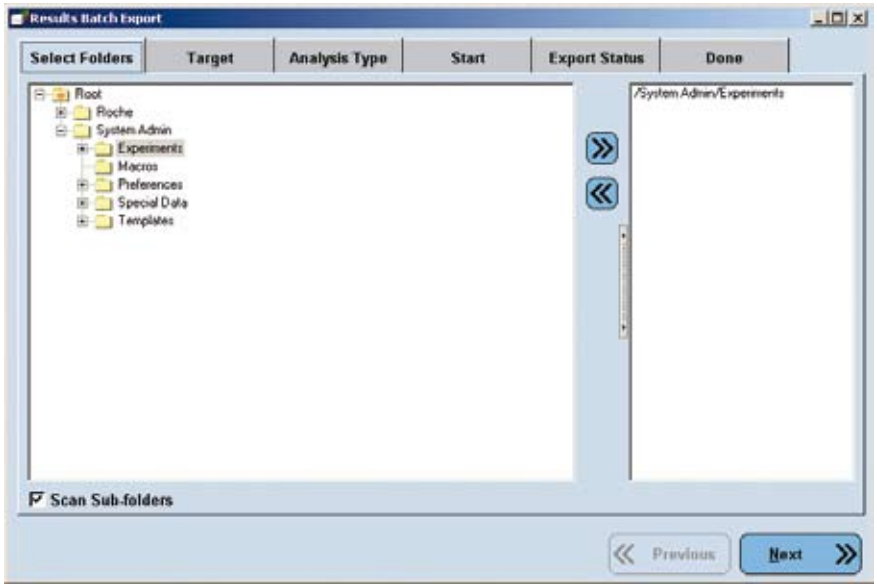
A result batch export exports all results of a selected analysis type from all experiments in a group of selected folders or experiments and all of the subfolders at the same time. The results are exported to a single tab-delimited file.

Analysis result batch export is only possible from the Navigator.

Analysis result batch export is performed using a wizard. You can move from a wizard step to the previous or next step by clicking the corresponding button. Note that the Next button will only be available when you have provided the settings required for the current tab.

1 Click the *Result Batch Export* Navigator control button. The *Batch Export* wizard opens.

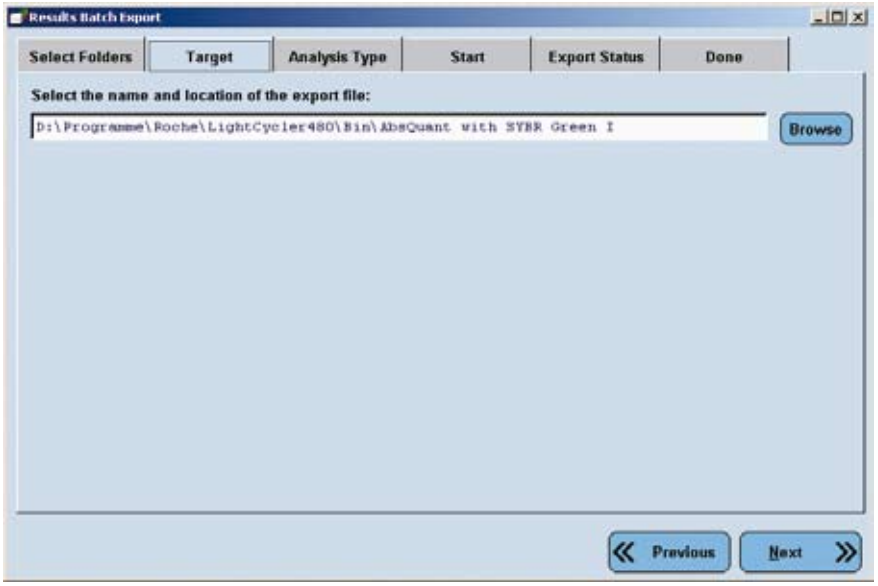
On the *Select Folders* tab of the wizard, select a source folder in the *Available Folders* list and add it to the *Selected Folders* list. Check the *Scan Sub-folders* option to include all subfolders within the source directory.



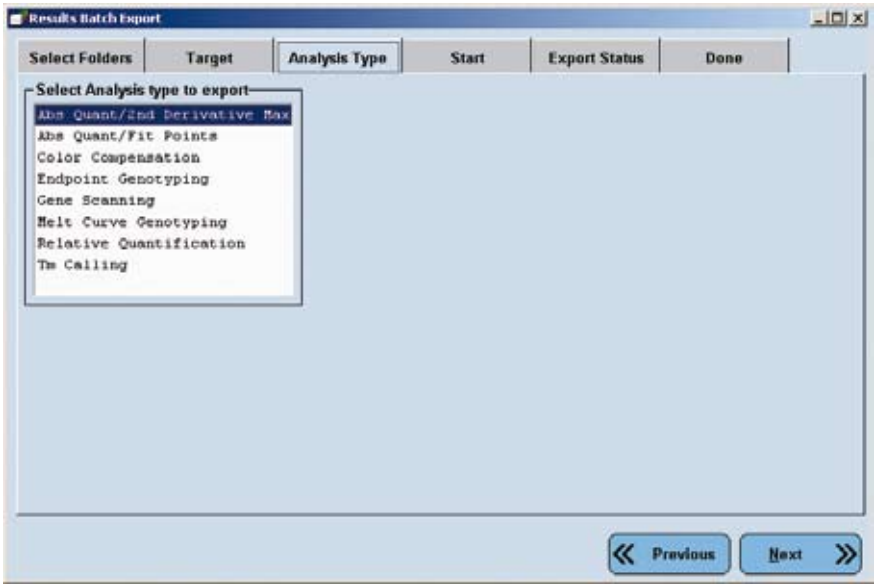
▶ ▶ ▶

D

2 On the *Target* tab, select the destination directory and the name of the output file. Click the *Browse* button to browse for a destination. Alternatively, type the path of the destination directly into the input field. If the specified output file already exists, the wizard will ask you to confirm before overwriting the existing file.



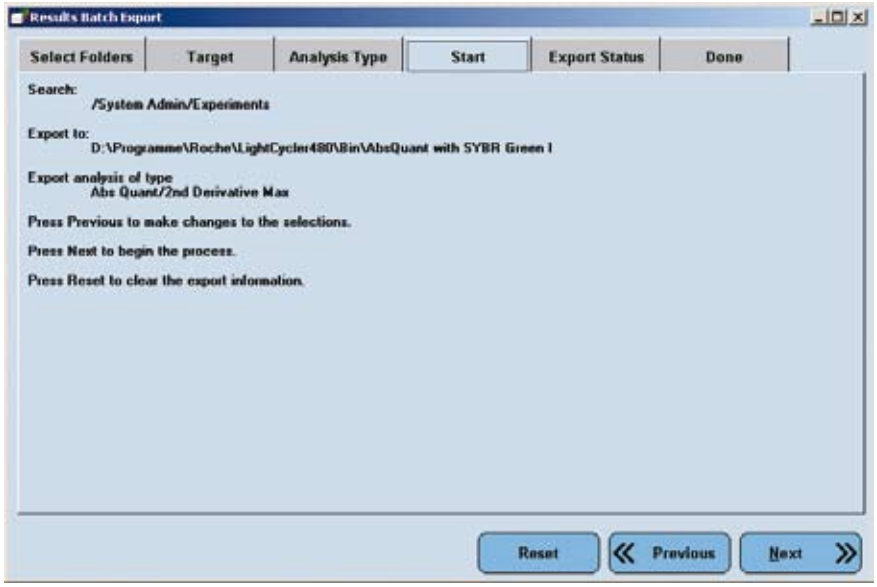
3 On the *Analysis Type* tab, select the type of analysis to be exported.



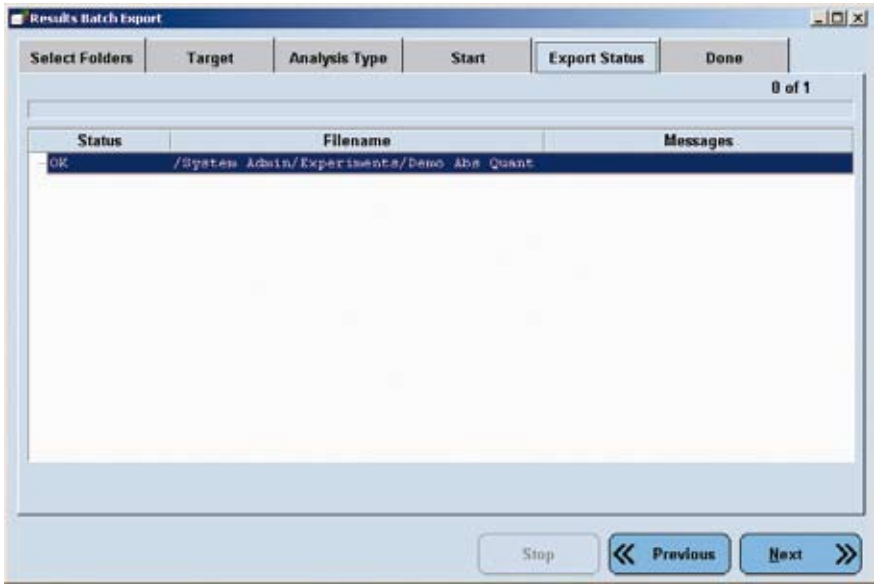
▶ ▶ ▶

4 On the *Start* tab, you can review your settings and start the export process.

The Reset button on the Start tab is active only after an export is complete. Clicking the Reset button resets the results of the previous export so the export can be repeated.



5 On the *Status* tab, you can view the status of the export process. While the export is in progress, the *Stop* button is active. You can abort the export by clicking the *Stop* button.



6 The *Done* tab displays a summary of the batch export. Click the *Done* button to close the wizard.

Software Applications

Description of the different quantification and genotyping methods

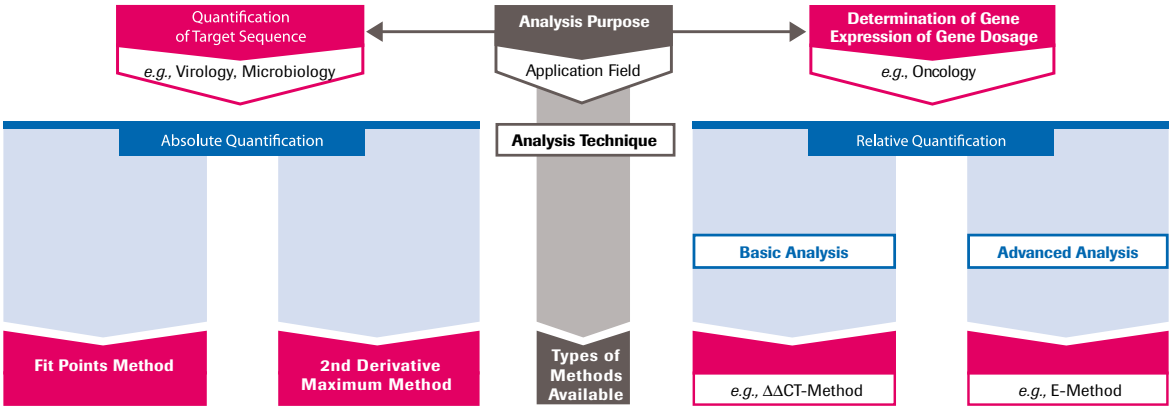
Software Applications

4 Quantification

4.1 Overview

There are many types and subtypes of methods to quantify gene expression by real-time PCR. Each of these methods is characterized by its requirements, its complexity, and its reliability. However, it is possible to group all these methods under two main analysis techniques: Absolute and Relative Quantification (see figure below). The technique you have to choose depends on the complexity of your analysis and the desired format of the final result:

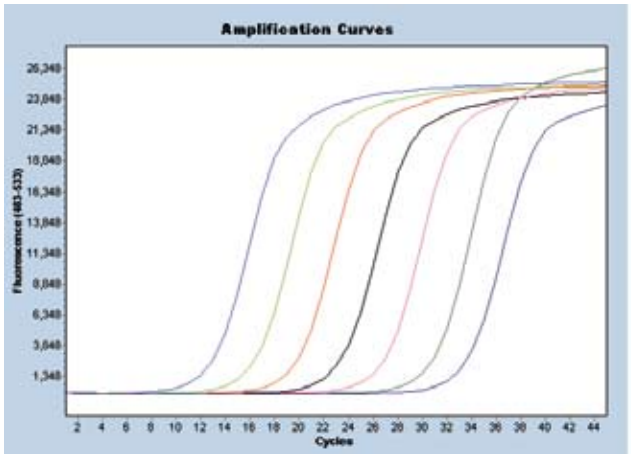
- **Absolute Quantification** enables you to quantify a single target sequence and express the final result as an absolute value (*e.g.*, viral load - copies/ml). Such analyses routinely occur in research areas like virology and microbiology.
- **Relative Quantification** compares the levels of two different target sequences in a single sample (*e.g.*, target gene of interest (GOI) and another gene) and expresses the final result as a ratio of these targets.



4.2 Absolute Quantification Analysis

An Absolute Quantification analysis can be performed on any experiment that contains an amplification program. Taking advantage of real-time, online monitoring of PCR, the Absolute Quantification module considers only fluorescence values measured in the exponentially growing log-linear phase of the PCR amplification process for analysis of the quantification data.

A typical quantification experiment performed on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument is shown in the figure below. The reaction profile contains three phases: the initial lag phase, an exponential (log-linear) phase and a final plateau phase. The initial lag phase (or background phase) lasts until the fluorescence signal from the PCR product is greater than the background fluorescence of the probe system. The exponential log phase begins when sufficient product has accumulated to be detected above background and ends when the reaction efficiency falls as the reaction enters the plateau.



F9 Standard 1	12,64	1,02E6	1,00E6
F10 Standard 2	16,06	1,06E5	1,00E5
F11 Standard 3	19,60	1,03E4	1,00E4
F12 Standard 4	23,00	1,08E3	1,00E3
F13 Standard 5	26,61	9,91E1	1,00E2
F14 Standard 6	30,69	6,68E0	1,00E1
F15 Standard 7	33,25	1,23E0	1,00E0

A perfect amplification reaction with the efficiency of 2 (*i.e.*, every PCR product is replicated once in every cycle) can be described during the log-linear phase by the following equation:

(1) $T_n = T_0 \times 2^n$

Real PCR experiments however, are influenced by many factors and therefore efficiency diverges from being perfect. Thus PCR amplification is more accurately described as:

(2) $T_n = T_0 \times E^n$

Where T_n is the amount of target molecules at cycle n, T_0 is the initial number of target molecules, n is the number of amplification cycles, and E is the efficiency of amplification.

As you can see in the figure above the cycle where each reaction first rises above background is dependent on the amount of target that is present at the beginning of the reaction. The point at which the fluorescence of a sample rises above the background fluorescence is called the "crossing point (Cp)" of the sample.

For Absolute Quantification analyses, serial dilutions of an external standard with predefined known concentration are used to create a standard curve. The standard dilutions are amplified in separate wells but within the same LightCycler® 480 Instrument run. The crossing points of standards and unknown samples are then used to determine the concentration of target DNA.

LightCycler® 480 Software provides two methods for performing Absolute Quantification analysis:

- the Second Derivative Maximum method
- the Fit Points method

Both methods use standard curves to calculate unknown sample concentrations, but each method determines a sample's crossing point in a different way.

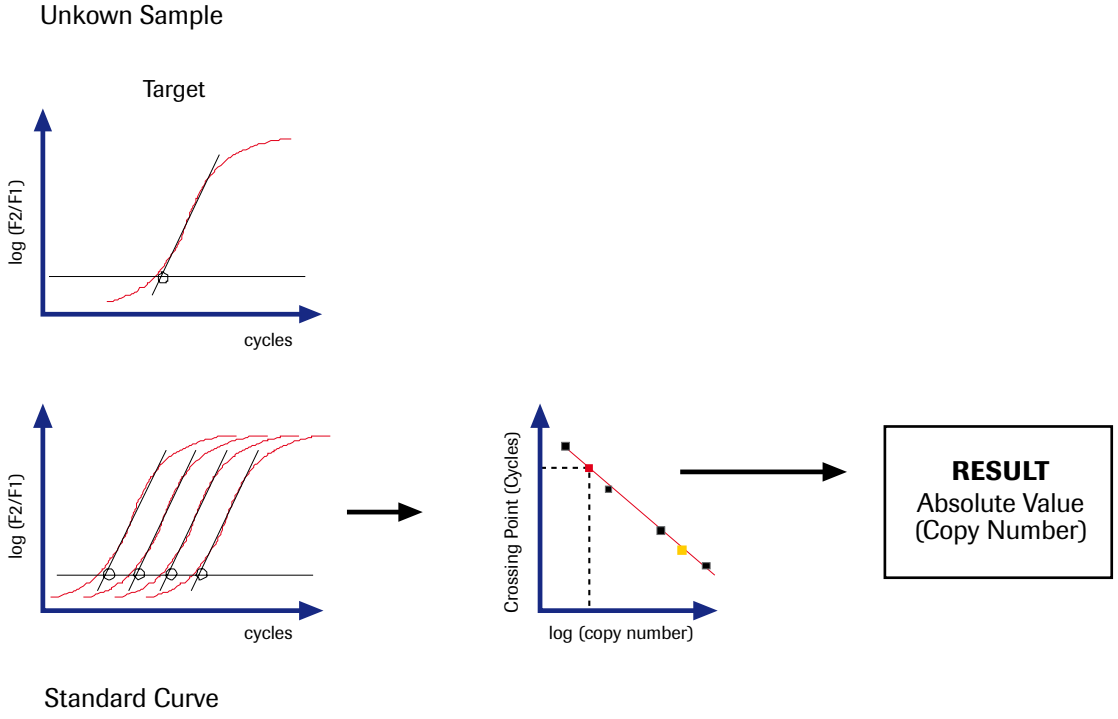
4.2.1 Understanding Sample Crossing Points

In an amplification reaction, the cycle at which the fluorescence of a sample rises above the background fluorescence is called the "crossing point (Cp)" of the sample. The Cp is the point at which amplified product is first visible in the data. For visualization of PCR products, the number of product molecules must exceed the detection limit of the reaction (at Cp, approximately 10^{11} to 10^{12} product molecules are present in the reaction).

A sample's Cp depends on the initial concentration of DNA in the sample. A sample with a lower initial concentration of target DNA requires more amplification cycles to reach the Cp. A sample with higher concentration requires fewer cycles. How Cp values are used in a quantification analysis depends on the type of analysis.

4.2.2 Understanding the Role of Standard Curves

In an Absolute Quantification analysis, a standard curve is used to determine the concentration of unknown samples. In a standard curve, the concentrations of standard samples are plotted against the Cps of the samples. The X axis represents the log of the initial target concentration, and the Y axis represents Cp in cycles. In the case of the Fit Points analysis method the standard curve is a linear regression line through these plotted data points, while for the Second Derivative Maximum analysis method it is a non-linear (polynomial) regression line.



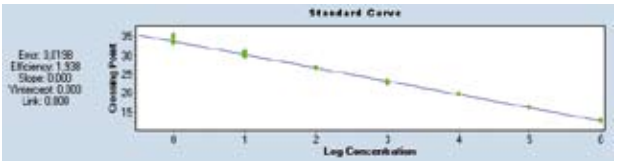
A typical standard curve is set up with at least five samples, which are prepared by serial dilution. The concentrations chosen for the standard curve should fall between the expected concentration range of the target.

In LightCycler® 480 Software you must define at least 3 standard samples with different concentrations. Otherwise, no standard curve is calculated.

The *Slope* of the standard curve describes the kinetics of the PCR amplification. It indicates how quickly the amount of target Nucleic Acid (NA) can be expected to increase with the amplification cycles. The slope of the standard curve is also referred to as the *Efficiency* of the amplification reaction. A perfect amplification reaction would produce a standard curve with an efficiency of "2", because the amount of target NA would double with each amplification cycle (according to the equation 1: $T_n = T_0 \times 2^n$ described above).

The PCR efficiency can easily be calculated using the formula: $E = 10^{-1/slope}$
(*e.g.*, slope = -3.3 → E = 2).

LightCycler® 480 Software automatically calculates the efficiency and displays it on the analysis window. In reality, reactions often exhibit an efficiency lower than two. The reaction in the example below has an efficiency of 1.975.



The *Error* value (mean squared error of the single data points fit to the regression line), given on the left side of the standard curve, is a measure of the accuracy of the quantification result based on the standard curve (an acceptable value should be < 0.2).

By determining where an unknown sample's crossing point falls on the standard curve, the software can determine the initial concentration of target DNA in the sample.

Cp data from the standards will be used to convert Cp data from the unknowns into concentrations. For these conversions to be valid, the amplification efficiencies of the standards and the samples must be identical. If you use homologous standards, you can usually achieve identical amplification efficiencies easily.

4

4.2.3 Providing the Standard Curve

To provide the standard curve for an Absolute Quantification analysis, you can choose one of the following:

- Include external standards in the experiment: The standard dilutions are amplified in separate wells but within the same LightCycler® 480 Instrument run. The external standards are used to calculate an "in-run" standard curve.
- Use a previously saved standard curve (called an external standard curve). An external standard curve can be loaded into experiments that do not have a standard curve, thus allowing quantitative analysis of those runs. This is especially suitable for applications where the same parameter is analyzed in multiple runs.

At least one sample (or replicates of this sample) of known concentration must be included in every experiment. This sample should be designated as a standard and should fall within the range of the imported standard curve. The detection format, the analysis mode, and the Color Compensation data (if any) used for the run must be the same as those used for the imported standard curve.

For the valid use of the external standard curve, PCR amplification must be highly reproducible and reaction conditions must be constant for all experiments. We recommend running tests to ensure stable PCR efficiency and using replicate samples (especially for low concentrations) to create the standard curve. Also, include a previously quantified sample in each analyzed run, to verify that the calculated values are reproducible.

To save a standard curve:

1. Perform an amplification experiment containing the standards you want to use. Alternatively, use an existing experiment that includes standards you want to use.

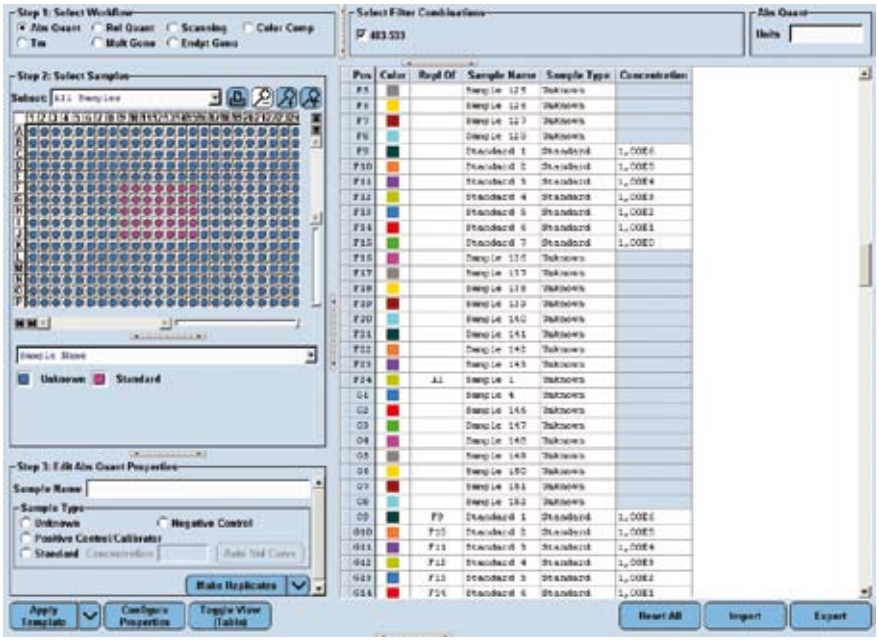
   The experiment containing the standards must use the same parameters and conditions as the experiment to which the curve will be applied, including the same detection format, concentration units, analysis mode, and Color Compensation data (for multicolor experiments).

   You can generate several standard curve files from one experiment by choosing different signal channels or analysis modes each time you save the standard curve.

2. Add an Absolute Quantification analysis to the experiment.

▶ ▶ ▶

3. Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow *Abs Quant*.



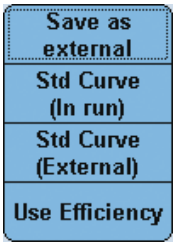
4. Select *Standard* as the sample type for each standard sample and specify the standard concentration.

   For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.

5. In the analysis module, perform either an *Abs Quant/2nd Derivative Max* or an *Abs Quant/Fit Points analysis*. Check the checkboxes of the standard samples you want to use in the standard curve. See the next section for detailed information about performing an Absolute Quantification analysis.

6. Click *Calculate*.

7. On the *Standards* multi-select button, select *Save as external*.



8. Navigate to a location to save the curve, enter a file name, and click .

You can use the saved external standard curve in other quantification analyses for experiments that have the same experiment parameters as those used to create the standard curve.

4

D

To use an external standard curve:

1. Perform an amplification experiment containing one standard or use an existing experiment that includes one standard.

   The standard sample should fall within the range of the imported standard curve.

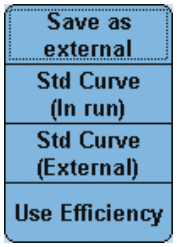
2. Add an *Absolute Quantification* analysis object to the experiment.

3. In the *Sample Editor* select the workflow *Abs Quant*.

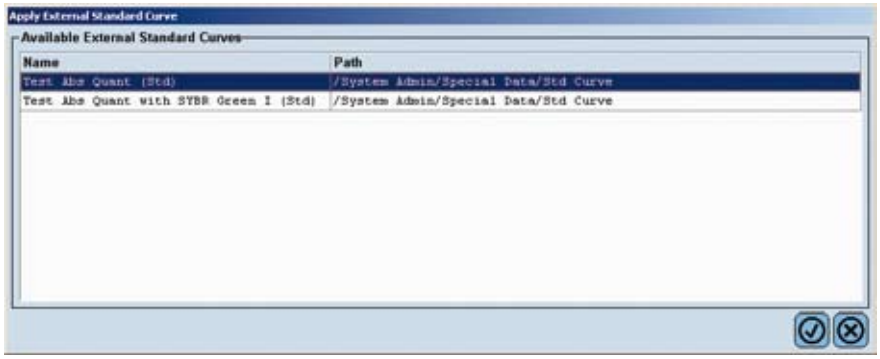
4. Select *Standard* as the sample type for the standard sample and specify the standard concentration.

   For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.

5. On the *Standards* multi-select button, select *Std Curve (External)*.

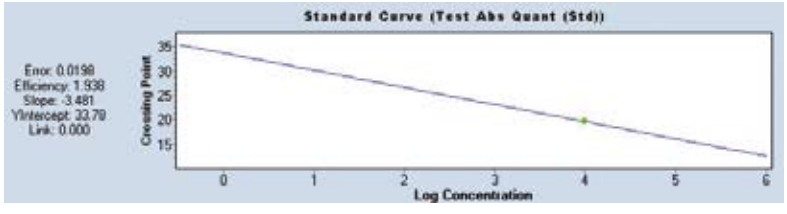


6. The *Apply External Standard Curve* dialog opens. Select an appropriate external standard curve object from the list:



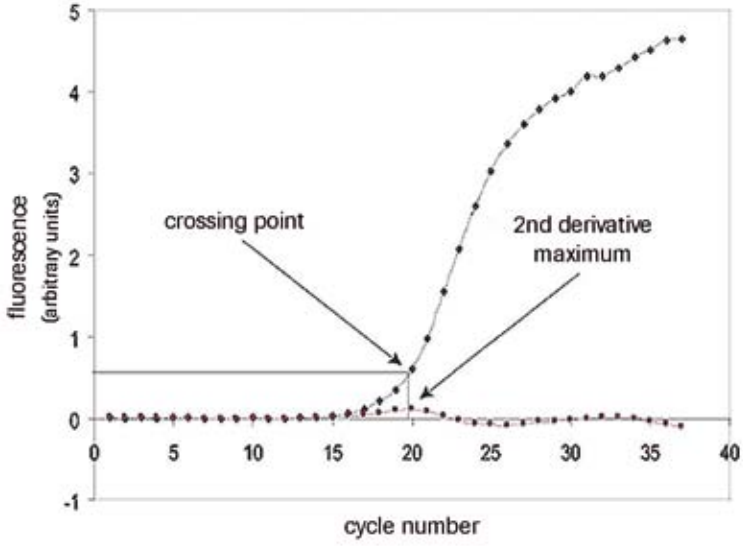
7. In the analysis module select the checkbox of the standard sample in the *Sample* list and perform the analysis. Click *Calculate*.

8. In the *Standard Curve* chart, only the single standard sample included in your experiment is displayed. The name of the external standard curve in use is shown above the chart.



4.2.4 Performing Absolute Quantification Analyses Using the Second Derivative Maximum Method

The Second Derivative Maximum method identifies the Cp of a sample as the point where the sample's fluorescence curve turns sharply upward. This turning point corresponds to the maximum of the second derivative of the amplification curve. Thus, this method is called "Second Derivative Maximum method". The big advantage of this method is that it requires little user input. You just have to specify the type of standard curve (in run or external) for the experiment, and the software performs the calculation automatically.



The Second Derivative Maximum method is based on the fact that the fluorescence signal is increasing at an ever-increasing rate in the exponential part of the reaction. This acceleration of the fluorescence signal slows as the reaction begins to enter the plateau. Therefore, the cycle where the second derivative is at its maximum should always be in the middle of the log-linear portion of the reaction.

With the Second Derivative Maximum method, the fluorescence at the Cp is usually different from one sample to the next. Unlike calculation methods based on thresholds (where samples are compared at identical fluorescence values), this method rejects the idea that samples with the same fluorescence have the same DNA concentration. Instead, this method posits that the shape of the amplification curve is a better guide to the concentration of the PCR product, and the Cp should be at the maximum acceleration, even if the fluorescence levels between curves are different.

The Second Derivative Maximum method automatically corrects for background fluorescence by calculating the arithmetic mean of cycles 2 to 6 and subtracting this mean from the fluorescence values.

To handle complex fluorescence data curves, the software copes with effects and artifacts such as spikes in the log-linear phase of the curve, noisy plateaus, or curves where the plateau phase has not yet been reached. Additionally, no crossing point values are displayed for curves which exhibit backgrounds that slowly increase or decrease or are noisy, unless the curves reach considerable values of fluorescence.

The Absolute Quantification – Second Derivative Maximum method analysis module offers two different algorithms that differ in the way how data curves and especially background signals are handled:

- High Confidence

  The High Confidence algorithm is optimized to find highly reliable Cps, *i.e.*, in general Cps are called for samples with a prominent rise and a high signal-to-noise ratio. The risk of false positive Cp calling is therefore drastically reduced. The High Confidence algorithm should be used for all experiments that require Color Compensation.

- High Sensitivity

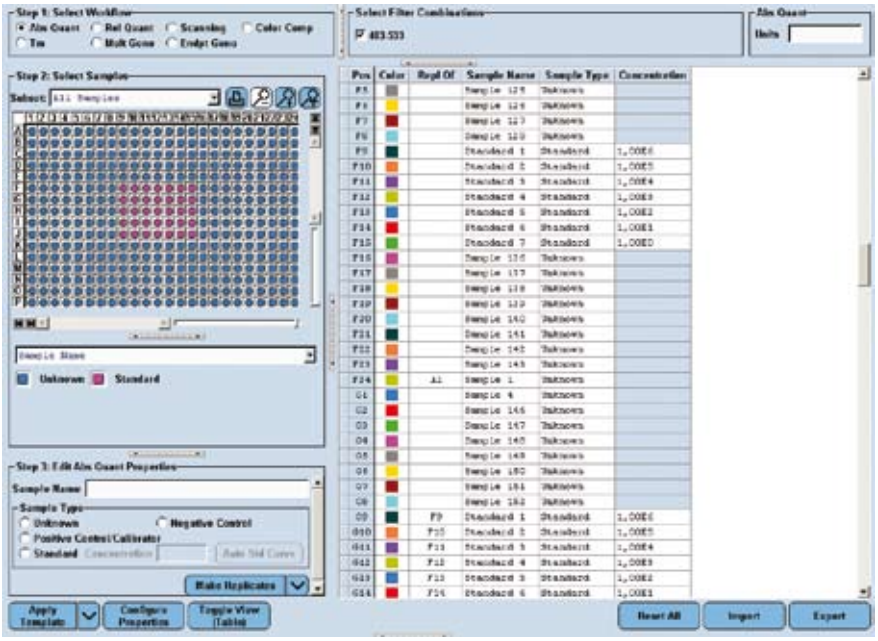
  The High Sensitivity algorithm detects crossing points even for data curves with a weak rise in fluorescence and thus a low signal-to-noise ratio. It is therefore suitable for all assays requiring very high sensitivity like detection of low to single copy targets. The drawback of this algorithm is a certain risk of false positive Cp calling. The result of a High Sensitivity analysis should thus always be examined in detail.

The High Sensitivity algorithm corresponds to the default Absolute Quantification method in LightCycler® 480 Software versions prior to 1.2.

To perform an Absolute Quantification analysis using the Second Derivative Maximum method:

1. Create and run a quantification experiment or open an existing experiment.

2. Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow *Abs Quant*.



► ► ►

3 Define the properties of the samples.
For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.
The software uses the following parameters for calculation:

Parameter	Description
Sample Type	Select a sample type from the list: ▶ Unknown ▶ Standard
Concentration	Enter the concentration for samples of type “Standard“. *The unit of the concentration value is defined by the entry in the Unit field above the Sample Table (e.g., “copies“).* *If you do not enter a concentration value, a standard curve cannot be calculated.*

4 Click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar.

5 From the *Create New Analysis* list, select *Abs Quant/2nd Derivative Max*. In the *Create new analysis dialog*, select an analysis subset and a quantification program in the experiment (typically there is only one quantification program which is selected by default). Click .

6 ▶ If this is a multicolor experiment, click the *Filter Comb* Button to open the *Filter Combination* dialog. Select the filter combination for the targets you want to analyze.
▶ Use the *Color Comp* multi-select button to turn Color Compensation on or off and to select a Color Compensation object.

7 ▶ If you included standards in the experiment, select the checkbox next to each standard you want to include in the standard curve. (Double-click the box to select or clear it.) Select *Std Curve (In Run)* in the *Action* button area.
▶ If you did not include standards in the experiment, select *Std Curve (External)* in the *Action* button area. Find and select the standard curve you want to use, and click .

The external standard curve must be from an experiment that has the same detection format, filter combination, and Color Compensation settings as the current experiment. The external curve and current experiments can be generated on different block types (96, 384). If you want to use an external standard, you must include one of the standard concentrations in the new experiment as a reference. The software calculates the concentration for each sample in the sample list, based on where each sample's crossing point correlates with the standard curve.

8 By default all samples are included in result calculations; to remove a sample from result calculations, double-click the checkbox next to the sample name to clear the checkbox or press the <Space> key. Click *Calculate*.

9 To view amplification curves for one or more samples, highlight the sample names in the result table.

10 To view analysis results, click and drag the left border of the chart section to the right to display all the result data. Results include the *Sample Selector* with *Legend Property Selector* and *Selector Filter*, the *Sample Table*, and the *Statistics* table (only if the experiment has sample replicates).

■

4

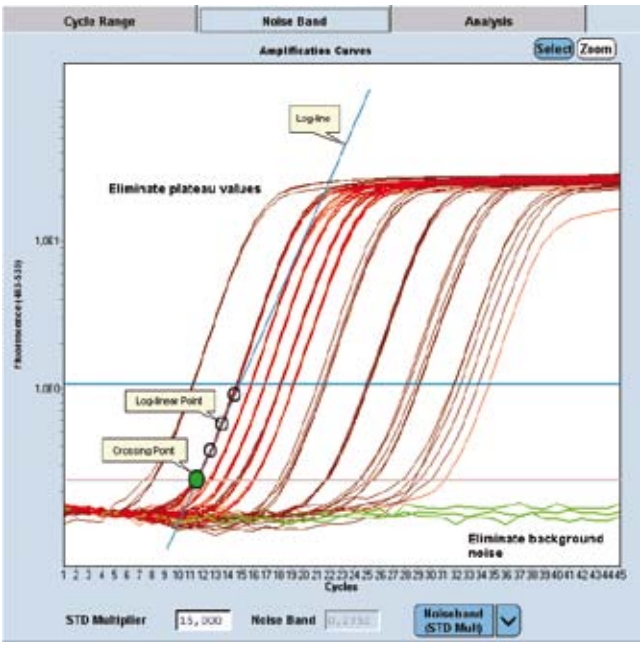
4.2.5 Performing Absolute Quantification Analysis Using the Fit Points Method

The Fit Points method requires the user to discard uninformative background noise with a horizontal noise band, exclude plateau values by entering the number of log-linear points, and then fit a log-line to the exponential portion of the amplification curve. The intersection of the log-line with a horizontal threshold line determines the crossing points. LightCycler® 480 Software uses the calculated crossing points of the standard samples to generate the standard curve of crossing point versus sample concentration.

The Absolute Quantification — Fit Points method analysis module allows you to set noiseband and threshold line by automated calculation methods. It is therefore possible to perform Absolute Quantification analysis based on the Fit Points method in a fully automated fashion not requiring any user input as it is possible using the Second Derivative Maximum method. Because all Fit Points specific parameters (cycle range setting, background cycle range setting, noise band setting, standard deviation multiplier, threshold setting, and number of Fit Points) can be saved in a template, automated Fit Points analysis by using a macro is also possible.

Setting the Noiseband

The optimal position of the noiseband is as low as possible, without including any background noise, and as high as necessary, where it clearly crosses all sample curves in the lower part of the log-linear phase. The graph below shows the range of acceptable levels for the noise band as well as the log-lines fit to the exponential portion of the amplification curves, the log-linear point and crossing point exemplary for one amplification curve.



D

The Absolute Quantification — Fit Points method analysis module enables you to set the noiseband using three different options:

- Noiseband (Auto): with this option the standard deviation of the background signals (noise) of all samples is calculated. The noiseband is then set to 12-fold this standard deviation.
- Noiseband (Std Mult): with this option the standard deviation of the background signals of all samples is calculated. The user can then define the multiplier for the background standard deviation.
- Noiseband (Fluor): lets you set the noiseband manually.

Determining the Fit Points

The number of data lying on the log-line fitted to the exponential portion of an amplification curve varies from sample to sample. Within a data set the number of log-linear cycles may range from 2 in the low concentration range to 4 in the higher concentration range. If that is the case we recommend selecting the lowest value of 2 Fit Points. Including data points ranging in the plateau has worse effect on your results than excluding a log-linear point. For this reason the default setting for the number of Fit Points is 2.

Adjusting the Threshold

Once the background noise is removed, a log-line is calculated for each amplification curve and then extrapolated back to the threshold line. The Absolute Quantification – Fit Points method analysis module allows you to set the threshold line automatically:

- If the experiment contains standards, the threshold line is determined using minimize error calculations.
- If the experiment does not contain standards, the noiseband is used as threshold line.

In most cases, the auto threshold line function yields satisfying results. In some cases, you can slightly improve the standard curve error value by manually moving the threshold line up or down.

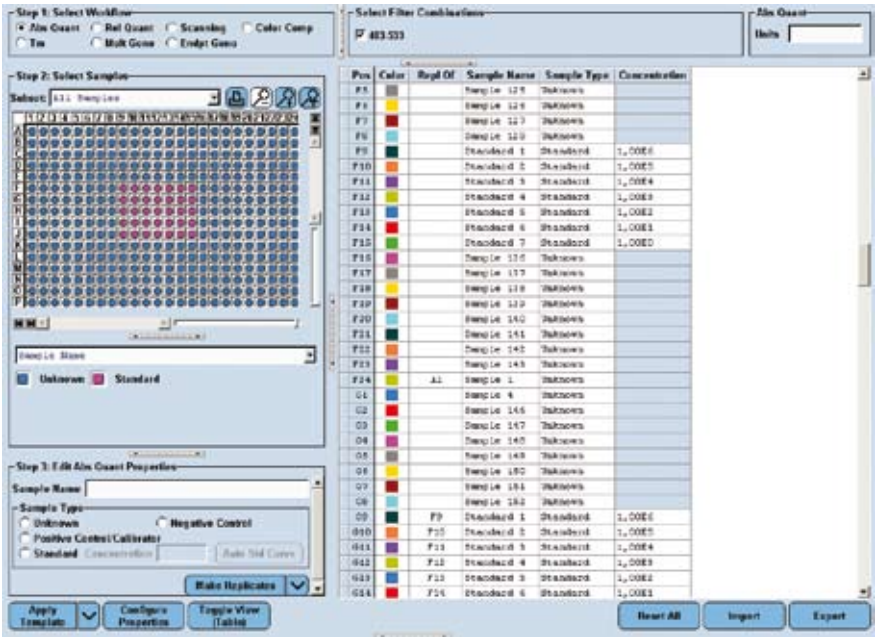
Once the log-lines have been calculated, any threshold position will yield a suitable standard curve. Solely the extrapolation error may have a bad impact as the threshold gets further away from the data points. If the fluorescent signal is proportional to the amount of specific PCR product present, the only thing that counts is that all samples have the same threshold.

4

To perform an Absolute Quantification experiment using the Fit Points method:

1. Create and run a quantification experiment or open an existing experiment.

2. Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow *Abs Quant*.



3. Define the properties of the samples.
For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.
The software uses the following parameters for calculation:

Parameter	Description
Sample Type	Select a sample type from the list: ► Unknown ► Standard
Concentration	Enter the concentration for samples of type “Standard”. *The unit of the concentration value is defined by the entry in the Unit field above the Sample Table (e.g., “copies“).* *If you do not enter a concentration value, a standard curve cannot be calculated.*

4. Click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar.

5. From the *Create New Analysis* list select *Abs Quant/Fit Points*. In the *Create New Analysis* dialog select an analysis subset and a quantification program in the experiment (typically there is only one quantification experiment which is selected by default). Click .

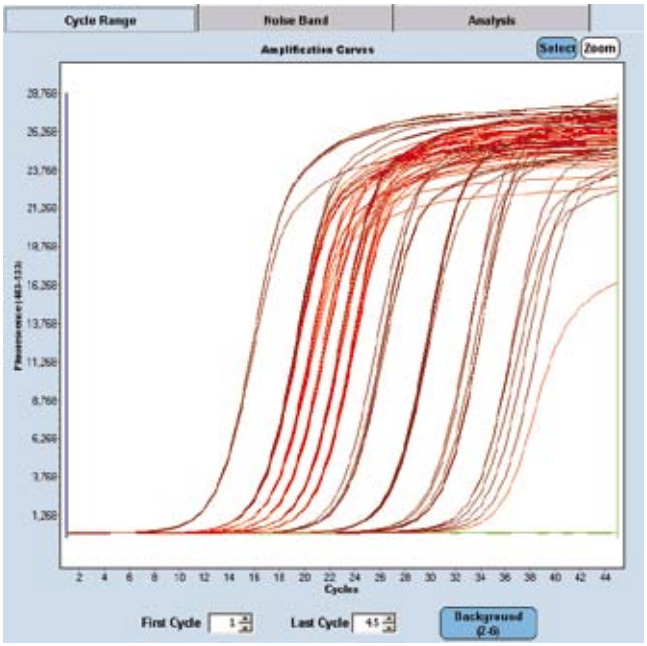
   Upon creation of the analysis module, the software will automatically calculate default noiseband and threshold settings. All analysis steps up to step 12 are therefore optional.

6. ► If this is a multicolor experiment, click the *Filter Comb* Button to open the Filter *Combination* dialog. Select the filter combination for the targets you want to analyze.
   ► Use the *Color Comp* multi-select button to turn Color Compensation on or off and to select a Color Compensation object.

► ► ►

7 On the *Cycle Range* tab you can view the baseline corrected fluorescence of the amplification curves over the entire range of cycles in the amplification program. By default the cycle range is defined by the first and last cycle of the experiment.

You can change the range of cycles to be used in the calculation by either mouse dragging the vertical sliders (blue slider = first cycle; green slider = last cycle) or entering the first and the last cycle in the corresponding input boxes. Use this option to exclude *e.g.*, cycles from the beginning of the reaction showing irregular fluorescence.



The values you enter in the input boxes are synchronized with the vertical sliders in the chart.

8 Click the *Background* button to input the background correction range manually. The range is specified as offset to the First Cycle value defined under Cycle Range. *Background* correction is calculated for each curve as the average (arithmetic mean) fluorescence of the curve between the *Min Position* and *Max Position* defined on the *Background* button (*i.e.,* if the First Cycle is 1 and Min/Max Offset are set to 1/5, then the mean background will be calculated from cycles 2 to 6. If the First Cycle is 4, then the mean background will be calculated from cycles 5 to 9.) The mean background is subtracted from the uncorrected fluorescence value of each curve.

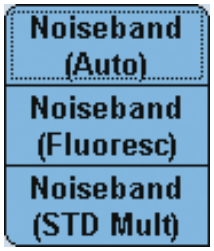
If you move the vertical sliders to change the range of cycles to be used for calculation, the curves in the chart are immediately adjusted to their new background corrected values and redisplayed in the chart.

►►►

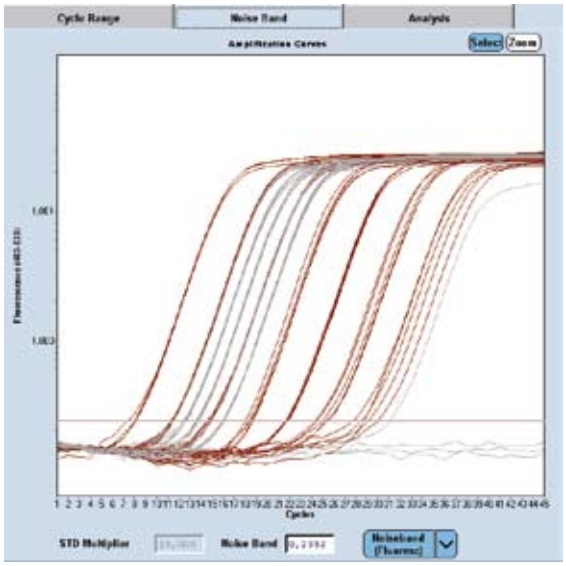
4

D

9 On the *Noise Band* tab you can eliminate the noise from the samples. Click the Noiseband multi-select button to set the noiseband any of these ways:



- Noiseband (Auto): Sets the noiseband automatically 12-fold the standard deviation of the noise (*Std Dev Multiplier* and *Noise Band* box contain read-only values). This is the default setting.
- Noiseband (Fluor): You can drag the horizontal noiseband bar to exclude the noise or enter a value for the noiseband in the input box (the *Std Dev Multiplier* value is calculated accordingly and displayed as read-only value).
- Noiseband (STD Mult): Sets the noiseband to a multiple of the standard deviation of the noise (the *Noise Band* value is calculated accordingly and displayed as read-only value).



10 On the *Analysis* tab determine the number of data points (*Fit Points*) used to generate the log-linear curves for the samples.

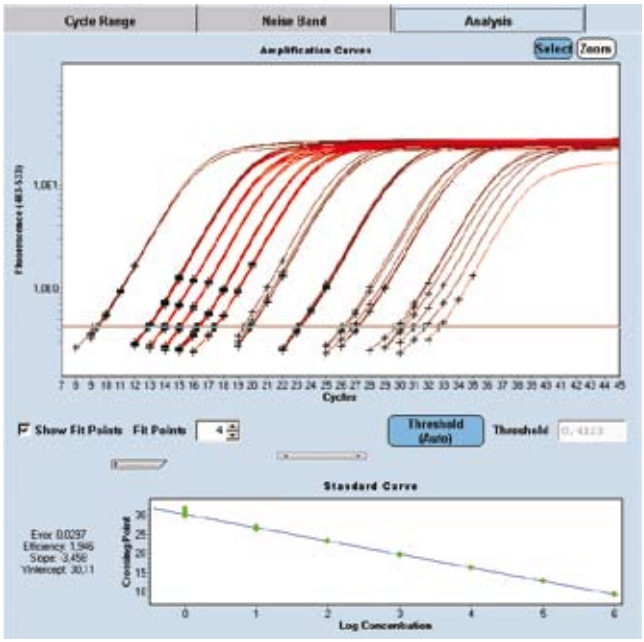
11 Determine the threshold for the samples any of these ways:

- Select the Threshold (Auto) to let LightCycler® 480 Software automatically adjust the threshold. This is the default setting.
- Select Threshold (Manual) to either drag the threshold line up or down with the mouse pointer or enter a value for the threshold line in the Threshold input box.

You can toggle between the Auto and Manual method by clicking the Threshold button.

If you drag the threshold line the software automatically sets the threshold mode to Manual.

▶ ▶ ▶



12 ▶ If you included standards in the experiment, select the checkbox next to each standard you want to include in the standard curve (double-click the box to select or clear it). Select *Std Curve (In run)* in the *Action* button area.

▶ If you did not include standards in the experiment, select *Std Curve (External)* in the *Action* button area. Find and select the standard curve you want to use, and click .

The external standard curve must be from an experiment that has the same detection format, filter combination, and Color Compensation settings as the current experiment. Further, you cannot use a standard curve that was created from an Absolute Quantification analysis using the Second Derivative Maximum method or a Relative Quantification analysis. The external standard curve and current experiments can be generated on different block types (96, 384). If you want to use an external standard, you must include one of the standard concentrations in the new experiment as a reference. The software calculates the concentration for each sample in the sample list, based on where each sample's crossing point correlates with the standard curve.

13 Click the *Calculate* button to compute and display the Cp values, and, if there are standard data, to compute the concentrations.

14 By default all samples are included in result calculations; to remove a sample from result calculations, double-click the checkbox next to the sample name to clear the checkbox or press the <Space> key. Click *Calculate*.

15 To view amplification curves for one or more samples, highlight the sample names in the sample list. To view the Fit Points check the *Show Fit Points* box.

■

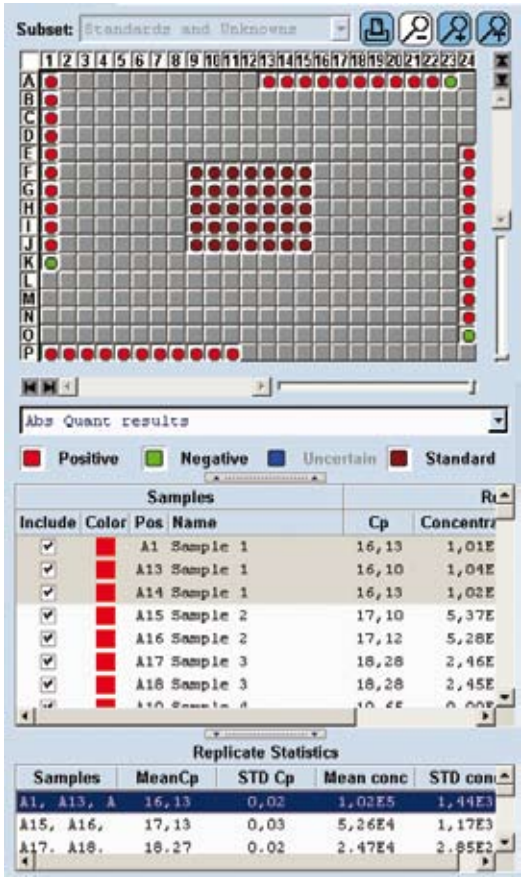
4

4.2.6 Viewing Results

1 Results of an Absolute Quantification analysis include the *Sample Selector* with *Legend Property Selector* and *Legend Property* buttons, the *Results* table, and the *Statistics* table (only if the experiment has sample replicates).

Use the *Legend Property Selector* to display colors by results, by sample types, by sample preferences or by replicate groups. Use the colored *Legend Property* buttons to select display of samples with certain properties in the MWP image, the *Results* table and in the charts.

If you choose *Abs Quant results* in the *Legend Property Selector*, the *Results table* of an Absolute Quantification analysis displays the following results. The *Legend Property* buttons enable you to select samples depending on the result call: Positive, Negative, Uncertain, and Standard.



Select the *Positive*, *Negative*, *Uncertain*, and *Standard* checkboxes to select the wells with the matching result type in the *Sample Selector* and to highlight them in the color shown in the legend.

▶ ▶ ▶

Result	Description
Cp	The crossing point of the sample. *Concentration values which are displayed in brackets indicate uncertain values. The reliable range of the standard curve is defined by the concentration of the highest and lowest standard. If the calculated concentration value of a sample is higher than the highest standard or lower than the lowest standard, this value is considered to be outside the standard curve range and is indicated in the status column.*
Concentration	The calculated concentration of the sample, based on where the crossing point falls on the standard curve of crossing points versus concentration. *Unit* is defined by the input (*e.g.,* "copies") in the *Unit* field of the *Abs Quant* section on the *Sample Editor*.
Standard	This value is specified in the *Abs Quant* section of the *Sample Editor*.
Status	Character code and description of the status. The column contains a corresponding tool tip. The following codes are possible: ? Detector code uncertain < Early Cp call (first five cycles) has higher uncertainty > Late Cp call (last five cycles) has higher uncertainty E Extrapolated concentration in standard curve If a sample has multiple codes (*e.g.,* a sample is both uncertain and extrapolated), the status field displays all codes and all text descriptions (comma-separated).

2 The following group results and statistics are appended to the *Results* table when the experiment has replicates:

Statistic	Description
Samples	The sample numbers in the replicate group.
Mean/Median Cp	The mean/median value of the crossing points for the samples in the group.
STD Cp	Standard deviation of the crossing points.
Mean/Median conc	The mean/median value of the concentrations for the samples in the group.
STD conc	Standard deviation of the concentrations.

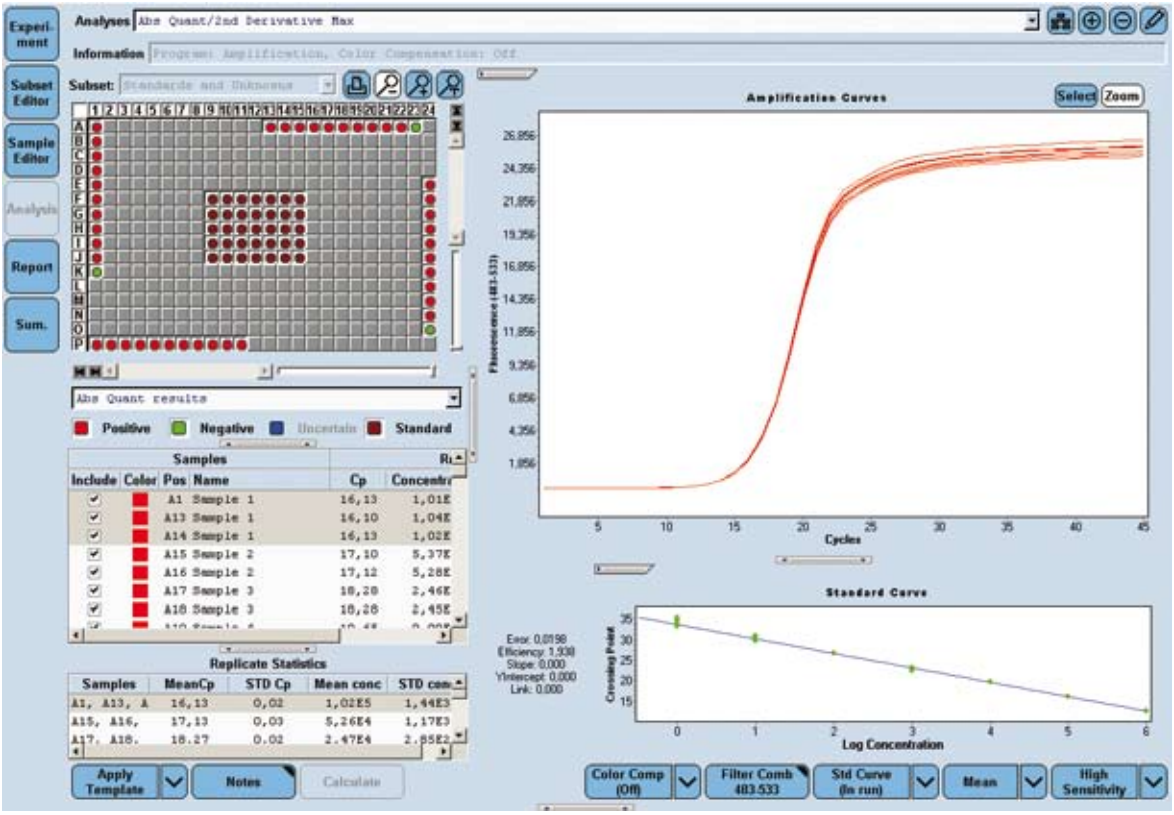
Negative samples are excluded from the statistics calculation.

If you select a replicate set in the Statistics table, the curves for all the samples in the replicate set are displayed in the associated chart.

4

As an example an Absolute Quantification analysis performed with the Second Derivative Maximum method is shown below. Results are calculated for all samples in the experiment. Amplification curves are displayed for the highlighted samples. The standard curve is generated from the samples that are checked and that are labeled as standards in the *Sample Editor*.

The analysis contains two charts. By default the upper chart displays the *Amplification Curves*, the lower chart the *Standard Curve*. For a detailed description of the *Analysis* window see section *Using the Analysis Window*.



D

4.3 Relative Quantification Analysis

4.3.1 Overview

Relative Quantification compares the levels of two different target sequences in a single sample (*e.g.*, target gene of interest (GOI) and another gene) and expresses the final result as a ratio of these targets. For comparison purposes the second gene is a reference gene that is found in constant copy numbers under all test conditions. This reference gene, which is also known as endogenous control, provides a basis for normalizing sample-to-sample differences. Such analyses are useful, for instance, in oncology research.

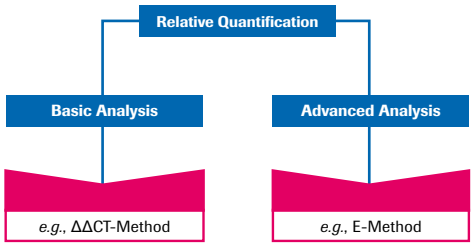
Gene expression studies usually try to determine the way a target gene changes its expression profile over time (*e.g.*, how much the expression changes in the course of a disease or treatment) relative to a defined starting point (*e.g.*, disease-free or untreated state). Since Relative Quantification allows users to easily compare the expression behavior of a target gene under at least two conditions (*e.g.*, disease-free / diseased or untreated / treated), Relative Quantification is the best technique for determining gene expression and gene dosage.

By dividing the concentration of the target in each sample by the concentration of a reference in the same sample, this method corrects the sample for differences in quality and quantity caused by:

- Variations in initial sample amount
- Variations in nucleic acid recovery
- Possible RNA degradation of sample material
- Differences in sample and/or nucleic acid quality
- Variations in sample loading/pipetting errors
- Variations in cDNA synthesis efficiency

Analysis Modes in Relative Quantification Analysis

The new LightCycler 480® Software provides two different analysis modes for Relative Quantification approaches: Basic and Advanced Analysis.



- The **Basic Analysis** mode offers an automated easy-to-use mode by generating results with only one click. This method is based on the well-accepted $\Delta\Delta C_T$-Method. For detailed information see section *Performing a Basic Relative Quantification Experiment*.
- The **Advanced Analysis** mode represents a manual flexible mode providing sophisticated software algorithms and excellent tools for your most demanding research projects. For detailed information see section *Performing an Advanced Relative Quantification Experiment*.

Roche Applied Science provides the E-Method (Efficiency Method), which demonstrates one of many possible high-value solutions which can be used with the Advanced Analysis for generating reliable results. This method is characterized by its superior, scientifically sound properties.

	Basic Method (*e.g.*, $\Delta\Delta C_T$-Method)	**Advanced Analysis (*e.g.*, E-Method)**
Sample types	Target (one / many) Reference (one / many)	Target (one / many) Reference (one / many)
Calibrator	Assay Calibrator and/or Study Calibrator[1]	Assay Calibrator, and/or Study Calibrator
Standards (target/reference)	-	Standards
Efficiency	2 / ≠ 2 (linear)	2 / ≠ 2 (linear / non-linear)
Cp analysis	Fit Points method	▶ Second Derivative Maximum method ▶ Fit Points method

[1] The LightCycler 480® Multiple Plate Analysis Software will provide an option to define a reference experiment (Study Calibrator), which can be used for normalization of other experiments.

PCR Efficiency Correction

The reliability of all quantitative real-time PCR applications and, consequently, of all Relative Quantification calculations depends on the quality of the PCR.

PCR amplification is driven by enzymatic catalysis. Like every enzymatic process a given PCR may vary in quality. For calculation purposes the overall quality of a PCR may be expressed as a single number, the "efficiency" (E) of the PCR. The highest quality PCRs run at an efficiency of two (E = 2). This means that the number of target molecules doubles with every PCR cycle.

A PCR depends on numerous factors. For a PCR to achieve maximum efficiency, every single factor affecting the process (*e.g.*, sample preparation, nucleic acid (NA) purification, pre-PCR steps) must occur optimally. Therefore most PCRs run at an efficiency less than two (E < 2).

Remember that Relative Quantification assays involve a comparison of two PCRs (*e.g.*, amplification of a target gene and a reference gene in the same sample). However, two different PCRs may not have identical efficiencies. In such cases, an analysis based on comparison of these PCRs may not be entirely accurate. In addition, not all amplification reactions have the same efficiency throughout the entire process. They may not follow a linear regression as described by the formula $N_n = N_0 \times E^{2n}$ (where N means the generated copy number, N_0 the initial copy number, n the cycle number and E the Efficiency).

Since these efficiency considerations affect the accuracy of an assay, you must take them into account when choosing the best Relative Quantification method for a given experimental system.

It is recommended that you apply PCR efficiency correction for Relative Quantification, when

- *your PCR assay is not running with the optimal PCR efficiency of two and*
- *your PCR assay is not running with a constant PCR efficiency.*

Only by applying PCR efficiency correction, calculation errors due to differences in amplification of target and reference genes are significantly reduced.

The efficiency-corrected quantification performed automatically by the LightCycler® 480 Relative Quantification software is based on relative standard curves describing the PCR efficiencies of the target and the reference gene. These standard curves can either be determined once and stored as an external standard curve which can be used for each analysis, or can be determined within the analysis run itself together with the Cps of target and reference gene.

Due to the principle of calibrator-normalized Relative Quantification it is not necessary to know the exact copy number of the relative standards. Only the relative dilution steps (1:10, 1:100, ...) of the used standards have to be entered; one dilution series for the target gene and one for the reference gene is required. We recommend that you perform a LightCycler® 480 System run with *e.g.*, 15 samples of target standards and another 15 samples of reference standards covering a dynamic range of 4 orders of magnitude. The dilution series should be done with a typical nucleic acid, *e.g.*, total RNA or genomic DNA from the calibrator. In principle, any nucleic acid dilution with identical PCR efficiency to a typical sample can be used for creation of a relative standard curve.

4

D

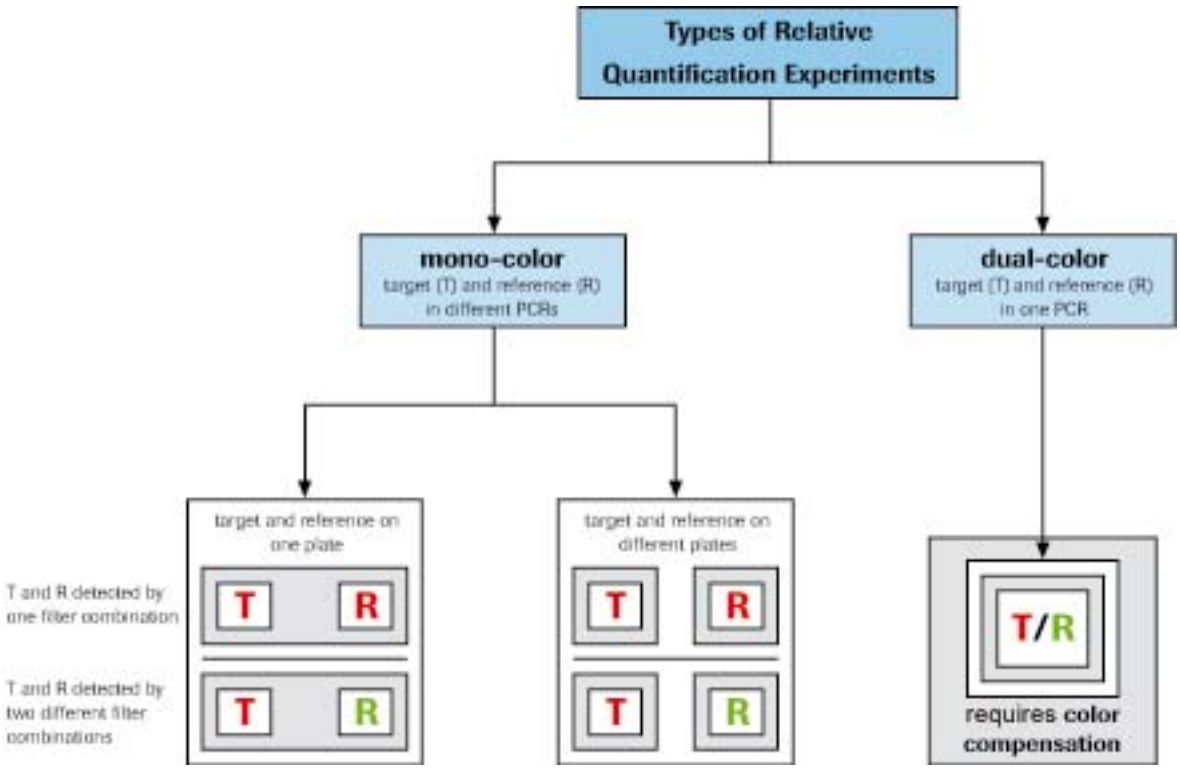
4.3.2 Mono-Color or Dual-Color Experiment

Before you perform a Relative Quantification analysis, you must decide whether you want to run a mono-color or a dual-color experiment:

- In a mono-color experiment, target and reference samples are amplified in separate reactions. For a mono-color experiment you have two different options how to handle the reference samples:
  - Target and reference samples are amplified in the same multiwell plate. In this case use the "In-Run" *Reference Sample Location* option (see below).
  - Target and reference samples are amplified in separate multiwell plates. In this case, use the "External" *Reference Sample Location* option (see below).

It is not required that target and reference are detected by the same filter combination.

- In a dual-color experiment, target and reference samples are amplified in the same reaction, which requires the detection by two different filter combinations. This setup requires to apply Color Compensation (with the exception of some specific filter combinations; see section *Color Compensation Analysis* for details).



4.3.3 Principle of Relative Quantification Analysis

A Relative Quantification analysis compares two ratios:

- the ratio of a target DNA sequence to a reference DNA sequence in an unknown sample, and
- the ratio of the same two sequences in a standard sample called a "calibrator".

The "Target" is the nucleic acid of interest (specific RNA or DNA sequence), while the "Reference" is a nucleic acid that is found at constant copy number in all samples and serves as endogenous control. The reference is used for normalization of sample-to-sample differences. The "Calibrator" is typically a positive sample with a stable ratio of target-to-reference and is used to normalize all samples within one run, but in addition provides a constant calibration point between several LightCycler® 480 System runs.

While a calibrator corrects for differences in detection sensitivity between target and reference caused by differences in probe annealing, FRET efficiency, or dye extinction coefficients, it does not correct for differences in PCR efficiency between the target and reference gene!

The result is expressed as a normalized ratio, *i.e.*, ratio (1) divided by ratio (2).

$$\text{Normalized Ratio} = \left(\frac{\text{conc. target}}{\text{conc.reference}}\right)_{sample} : \left(\frac{\text{conc. target}}{\text{conc.reference}}\right)_{calibrator}$$

A Relative Quantification analysis can be performed on an experiment that has an amplification program and that has the appropriate sample types. You can perform a Relative Quantification analysis on a single-color or on a dual-color experiment.

A Relative Quantification analysis is based on the assumption that the concentration of DNA at a sample's crossing point is the same for every sample containing the same target DNA. This is the DNA concentration necessary for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument to detect a signal above background noise.

Each sample may require a different number of cycles to reach the crossing point, depending on the initial concentration of DNA in the sample. At the end of the experiment, each sample's DNA concentration may vary, depending on how many cycles were completed by that sample after the crossing point was reached.

The analysis uses the sample's crossing point (expressed as a cycle number), the efficiency of the reaction, the number of cycles completed, and other values to determine how much the DNA concentration must have increased for each sample by the end of the amplification. The analysis uses these calculations to compare the samples and generate the ratios. The final ratio resulting from the calibrator normalized Relative Quantification is only a function of PCR efficiency and of the determined crossing points. It does not require the knowledge of absolute copy numbers at the detection threshold and thus the analysis does not determine the actual concentration of DNA in the samples. The calculation of the calibrator-normalized ratio does not require a standard curve in each LightCycler® 480 run.

The basic prerequisites for accurate Relative Quantification are:

- *If standards are used, the efficiencies of the relative standards and the unknown samples are identical*
- *the efficiencies of both target and reference PCR do not vary from sample to sample*
- *the reference gene is not regulated in the system under investigation*

To define the above mentioned parameters, the software uses the entries described in the following section.

4

D

Identifiers Used by Relative Quantification Analysis

Relative Quantification analysis uses the following identifiers:

Property	Description	Valid Values
Sample Name	Name of material of interest. If multiple targets/references are used, the sample name is used to identify groups for pairing.	Alphanumeric value (≤ 25 characters) Default value is "Sample ###", where ### is a serial number
Target Name	Name of the gene target *The term "target" in this field is different to the sample type "Target".* *e.g.,* "Gene1" for all samples, standards, calibrators, and negatives probing gene1	Alphanumeric value (≤ 25 characters) Default value is blank
Sample Type (mandatory)	Type of sample	▶ Unknown ▶ Positive Control/Calibrator ▶ Negative Control ▶ Standard
Target Type (mandatory)	Type of target	▶ Target ▶ Reference ▶ Unassigned *Unassigned is excluded from all Relative Quantification calculations*

If you perform an experiment using different filter combinations, make sure you select the appropriate filter combination for entering the sample information.

Auto Pairing

LightCycler 480® Software allocates targets and references according to the following rules:

Identical Sample Names for Target and References	Target Name	Auto Pairing
- (default)	- (default)	According to shape rules corresponding to pipetting schemes (*e.g.,* rows, columns, blocks)
+	+	According to the definitions in the *Sample Editor*
+	-	No Auto Pairing possible
-	+	No Auto Pairing possible

4.3.4 Performing a Basic Relative Quantification Experiment

The Basic Relative Quantification method is based on the ΔΔCT-Method. Therefore it always uses the following settings:

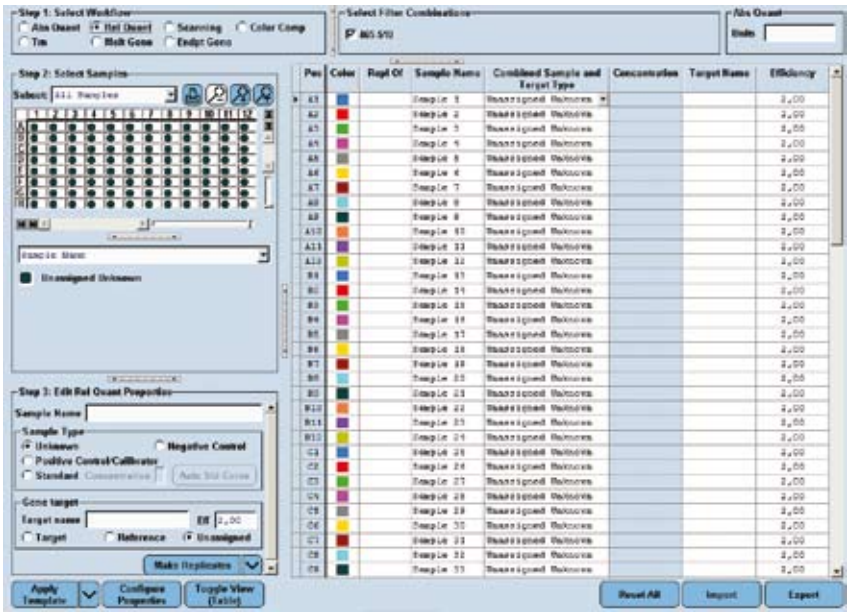
- Fit Points for Cp calculation
- Predefined efficiency (no standards required)
- *In-Run* references for calculation
- *All to Mean* as pairing rule if multiple target/reference names are defined (for more information see section *Pairing Rules for multiple target/reference genes*)
- Full plate (subsets are not considered in the analysis)

A Basic Relative Quantification experiment is an amplification experiment containing

- target unknowns
- reference unknowns
- calibrators (optional)
- negatives (optional)

To perform a Basic Relative Quantification experiment:

1. Perform an amplification experiment.
2. Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow *Rel Quant*.



3. Define the properties for the samples.
   For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.

   The software uses the parameters defined in section *Identifiers Used by Relative Quantification Analysis* for calculation.
4. As Basic Relative Quantification always uses the full plate for analysis, you must ensure that the target type for unused positions remains *Unassigned*.

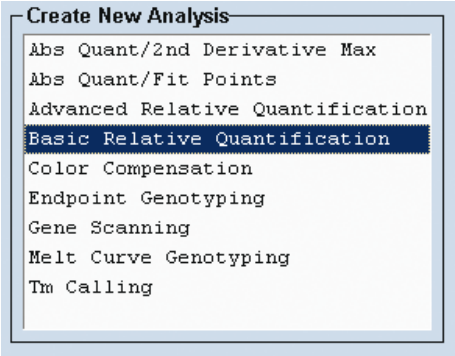
►►►

4

D

5 Click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar.

In the *Create New Analysis* dialog box, select *Basic Relative Quantification*.



6 The *Relative Quantification analysis* screen opens.
The results are calculated automatically.

To check the noise band settings proceed with section *Viewing the Results*.

If you want to change the predefined settings, you can perform an Advanced Relative Quantification analysis (see section Performing an Advanced Relative Quantification Experiment).

4.3.5 Performing an Advanced Relative Quantification Experiment

The Advanced Relative Quantification method not only allows you to determine the relative ratio - it extends and improves this concept by enabling

- Cp calling via either Fit Points or Second Derivative Maximum methods
- reference analysis via either *In-Run* references or *External Reference* experiments
- pairing rules for multiple target/reference genes
- the use of standards
- the use of subsets

This type of quantitative analysis is not only suited for gene expression analysis, but can also be applied for studies on the DNA level, e.g., determination of gene dosage values. In this case, use a single copy gene as reference in the same sample material. Preferentially, select a single copy gene located on the identical chromosome as the target sequence of interest.

The Advanced Relative Quantification experiment contains

- target and reference unknowns
- target and reference standards (optional)
- target and reference calibrators (optional)
- target and reference negatives (optional)

The references can be measured in a separate experiment.

To perform an Advanced Relative Quantification experiment:

Before you perform an Advanced Relative Quantification analysis, you must decide how to provide the efficiency value for the targets and for the references. If you do not want to use Efficiency E=2 or predefined efficiency values, you have the following two options:

- Including relative standards in the current experiment to generate a relative standard curve
- Importing external relative standard curves

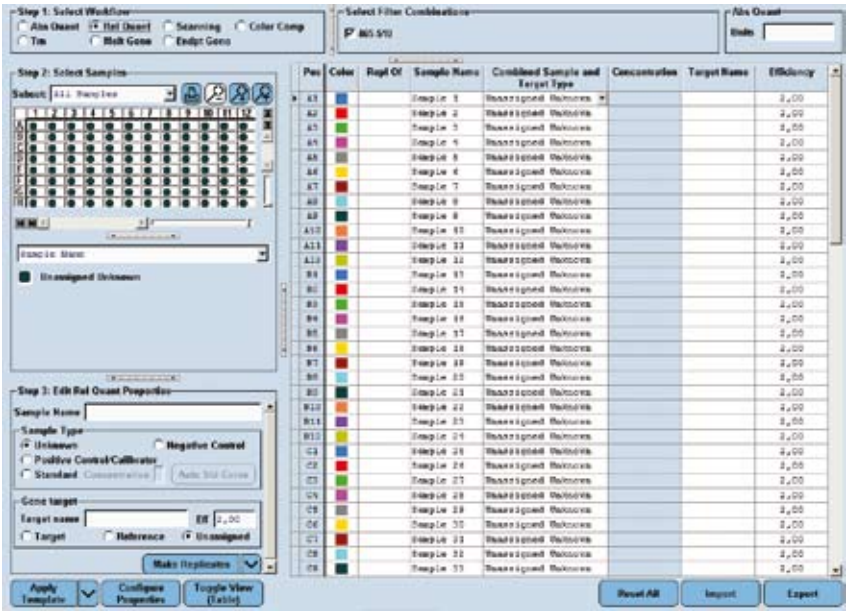
If in-run standards are defined, these standards overrule all efficiency values defined in the Sample Editor.

1	Perform an amplification experiment. Include an external reference experiment if necessary.
2	(Optional) Define the subset that will be analyzed: Refer to section *Working with Subsets* for details. If no subset is defined, the software will analyze the whole plate and automatically identify empty sample locations as negative.

▶ ▶ ▶

4

3 Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow *Rel Quant*.



4 Define the properties for the samples.

For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.

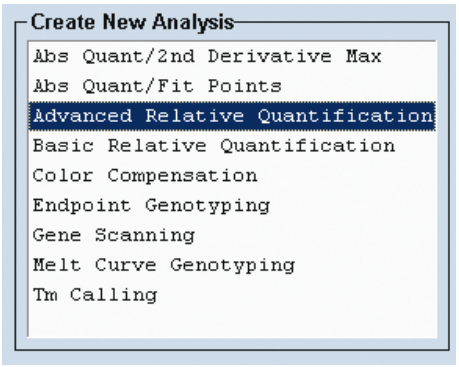
The software uses the parameters defined in section *Identifiers Used by Relative Quantification Analysis* for calculation.

In an Advanced Relative Quantification analysis the software additionally uses the following parameters:

Property	Description	Valid Values
Concentration (optional)	Concentration of a standard sample. *This field is active only when the Sample Type is Standard.*	Concentration value
Efficiency	PCR efficiency of a target If serial dilutions of a gene target are available, the software will calculate the exact PCR efficiency by default and using the value entered here.	Numeric value: $1 < Efficiency < 3$ Default value is 2.00

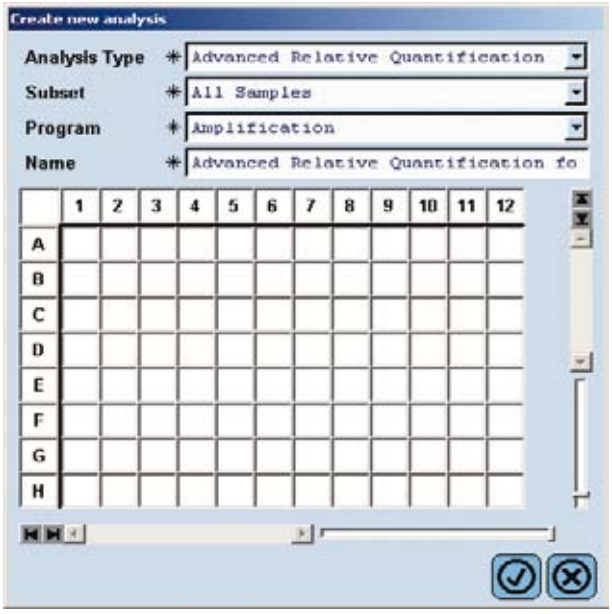
5 Click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar.

In the *Create New Analysis* dialog box, select *Advanced Relative Quantification*.



▶ ▶ ▶

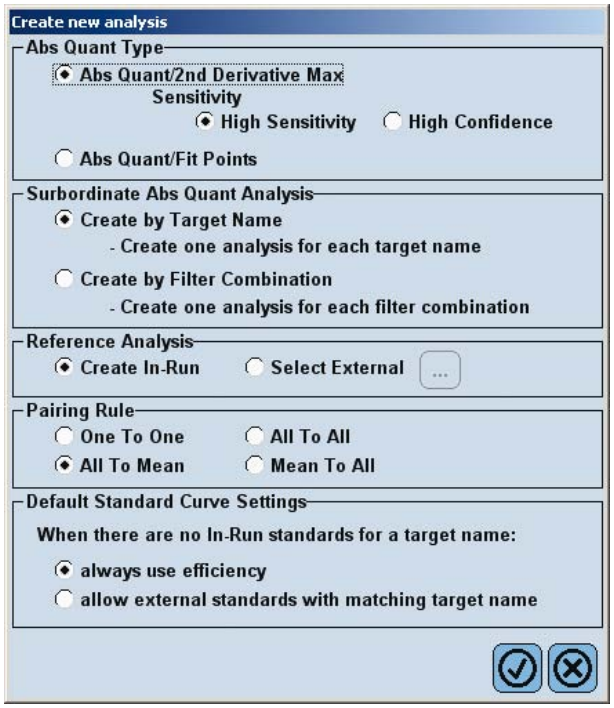
6 The *Create New Analysis* dialog opens. Select an analysis subset and an experimental program from the *Program* list (this is usually the *Amplification* program). If you wish, you can change the analysis name (the default name is "*analysis type* for *subset name*"). Click .



►►►

4

7 A further dialog opens which lets you select the following options.



Abs Quant Type

Select the type of subordinate Absolute Quantification analysis to be performed for each gene target. For more information please refer to section *Absolute Quantification Analysis*.

Subordinate Abs Quant Analysis

Each Relative Quantification analysis bases on two or more subordinate Absolute Quantification analyses.

Select how the software identifies different gene-targets:

- *Create by Target Name:* The software identifies gene targets by the target name that was entered in step 4.
- *Create by Filter Combination:* The software identifies gene targets by the filter combination that was used in step 4.

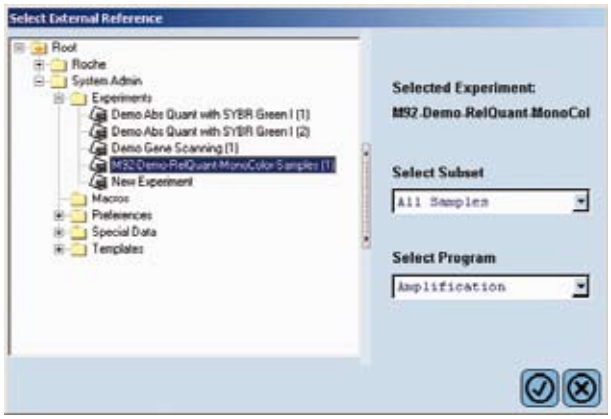
▶ ▶ ▶

Reference Analysis

Select the location of the reference samples:

- *Create In-Run:* The reference samples are included in the experiment.
- *Select External:* The reference samples are stored in a separate experiment.

- Click the *Select reference experiment* button to select the separate experiment.
- The software displays a file selection dialog. Select the external experiment and click .



The reference samples for the selected subset are then imported into the current experiment. The reference data cannot be changed after importing. If you change the external reference experiment after importing it into the Relative Quantification analysis, the software will not recognize this. You must create a new Relative Quantification analysis to use the changed reference data.

Pairing Rules for Multiple Target/Reference Genes

Select the result sets that are automatically created from target|reference pairs, *e.g.,* Targets: T1, T2; References: R1, R2

- *One to One*:
  One target is paired with one reference according to the pipetting scheme,
  e.g., T1|R1, T2|R2
- *All to All*:
  Each target is paired with each reference,
  e.g., T1|R1, T1|R2, T2|R1, T2|R2
- *All to Mean*:
  Pairs each target with all references. The geometric mean of the resulting ratios is calculated,
  e.g., $T1/R(all) = (T1/R1 \times T1/R2)^{1/2}$ and $T2/R(all) = (T2/R1 \times T2/R2)^{1/2}$
- *Mean to All*:
  Pairs all targets with each reference. The geometric mean of the resulting ratios is calculated,
  e.g., $T(all)/R1 = (T1/R1 \times T2/R1)^{1/2}$ and $T(all)/R2 = (T1/R2 \times T2/R2)^{1/2}$

For more information refer to section *Pairing Samples and Creating Result Sets*.

▶ ▶ ▶

4

Default Standard Curve Settings

This option is irrelevant if internal standards are available for every gene target.

If no internal standards for a gene target are available, you may select

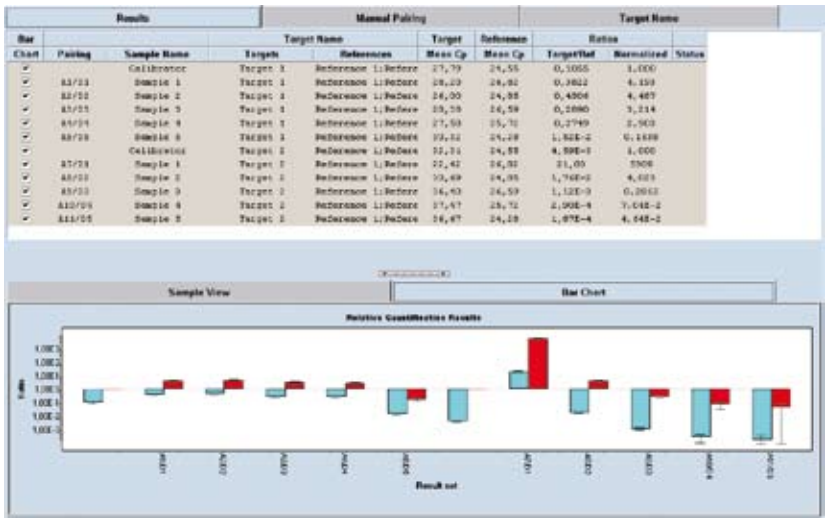
- *Always use Efficiency:* The PCR efficiency entered in the *Sample Editor* will be used.
- *Allow External Standards with Matching Target Name:* The software searches the database for a standard curve with the same target names and calculates the exact PCR efficiency.

For more information refer to section *External Standard Curves*.

The settings you make in the Create new analysis dialog cannot be changed after the analysis has been created. If you want to apply different settings you must create a new analysis.

8 Click .

9 The *Relative Quantification Analysis* screen opens.



D

4.3.6 Performing a Relative Quantification Analysis

All options are automatically pre-set by the software. If you do not want to change any settings you can just click the *Calculate* button and continue with section *Viewing the Results*.

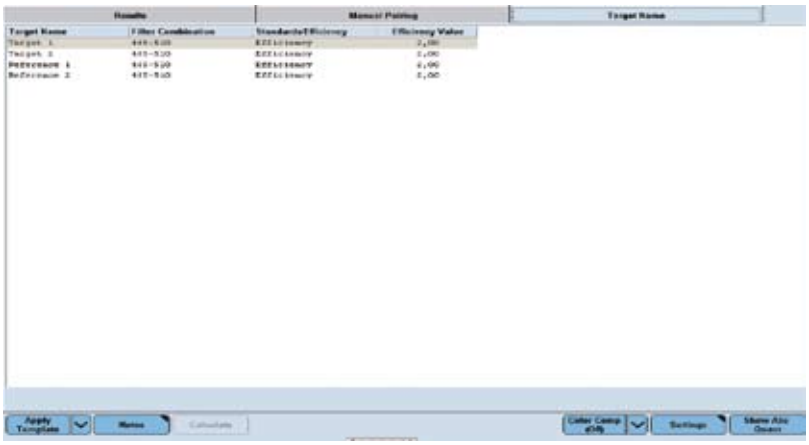
To view and edit subordinate analyses:

1. The *Results* tab is displayed by default.

   By default the Manual Pairing tab is enabled in an Advanced Relative Quantification analysis, and disabled in a Basic Relative Quantification analysis. In both analysis types you can enable/disable the Manual Pairing tab in the Rel Quant Settings window (see step 2).

   It is possible to apply a Color Compensation object for multicolor experiments if necessary. For more information see section *To Apply Color Compensation*.

   Click the *Target Name* tab to view the settings relating to gene targets.



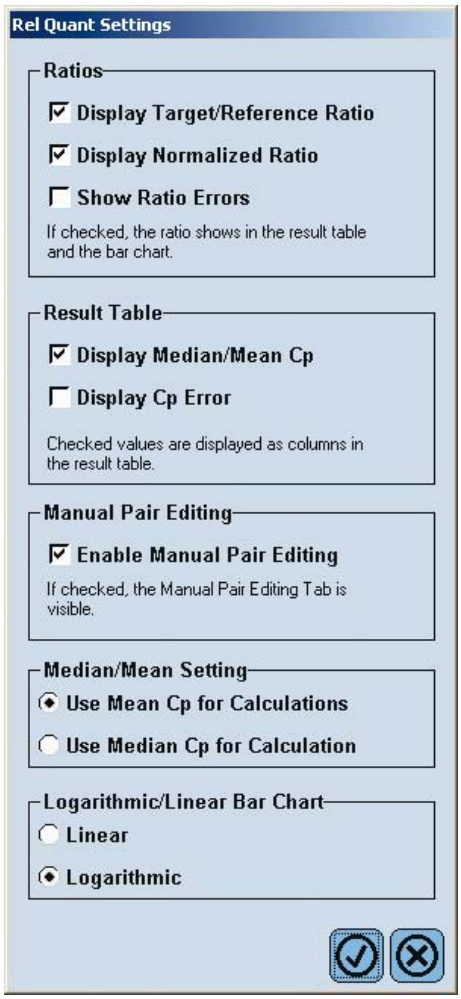
▶ ▶ ▶

4

D

2 If you want to change any general settings, click the *Settings* button.

The *Rel Quant Settings* dialog opens with the following options:



Ratios

Check the results you want to have displayed in the *Results* table and the bar chart.

The ratio errors are always displayed in the bar chart.

Results Table

Check the results you want to have displayed in the *Results* table.

Manual Pair Editing

Check this option to enable the *Manual Pairing* tab.

Median/Mean Setting

Select your preferred method of averaging:

- Mean: calculates a mathematically exact average.
- Median: uses the middle value in a set of values. This method compensates for statistical mavericks (single values that are extremely high or extremely low).

Logarithmic/Linear Bar Chart

Select your preferred method of scaling the bar chart:

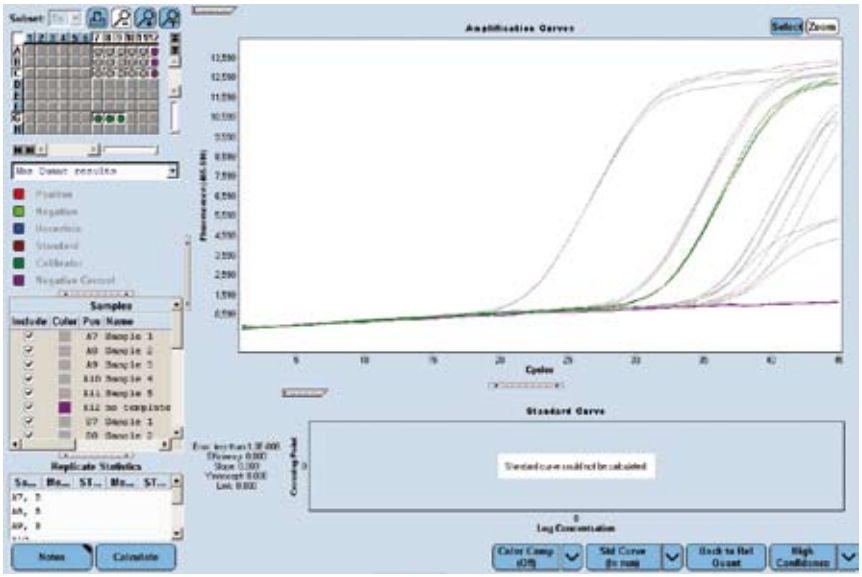
- Linear: If the results cover only one or two orders of magnitude or the display should be straight proportional, this is the preferred option.
- Logarithmic: If the results cover several orders of magnitude, this is the preferred option.

►►►

3 If you want to change any options relating to a gene target,

- either select a single sample in the *Sample View* tab (only after the analysis is calculated),
- or select the *Target Name* tab, then select the appropriate subordinate analysis.

This enables the *Show Abs Quant* button.



The software displays the subordinate Absolute Quantification analysis of the selected gene target. If you want to check the result of the analysis, click the *Calculate* button at any time.

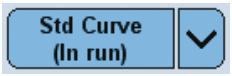
▶ ▶ ▶

4

D

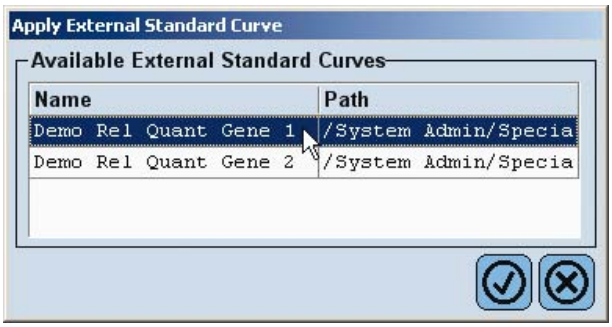
Source of Target Standards

To set the source of the standard curve used in the subordinate Absolute Quantification analysis and for PCR efficiency calculation, use the *Standard Curve* multi-select button.



Select one of the following options:

- *Save as External:* Save a calculated standard curve for use with other experiments.
- *Std Curve (In Run):* The standard curve is calculated from a dilution series in the current experiment.
- *Std Curve (External):* The standard curve is loaded from the database. A dialog opens which lets you select a suitable external standard curve:



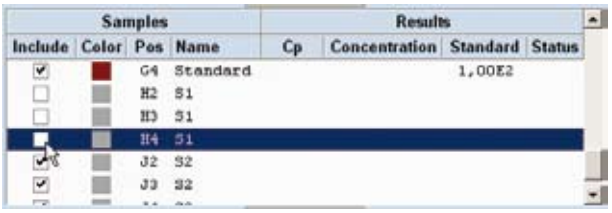
Your experiment may include one standard for the gene target with a defined concentration. You must have user rights to use the curve.

- *Set Efficiency:* The standard curve is calculated from the efficiency that was defined in the *Sample Editor*.

The efficiency is applied when either no in-run standard or one in-run standard with a given concentration is defined for the gene target. Concentrations for the gene target samples are only calculated when one in-run standard with a given concentration is defined for the gene target.

Deselect Samples

To exclude samples from the analysis, double-click the checkboxes of the sample in the *Results* table*:*



Fit Point Method Options

These settings are only available if *Fit Points* was selected as *Abs Quant Type* during creation of the analysis.

To change the settings of the Cp detection, use

- The *Cycle Range* tab
- The *Noise Band* tab
- The *Analysis* tab

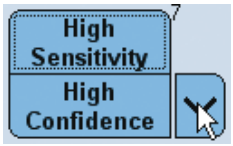
For more information please refer to section *Absolute Quantification Analysis*.

►►►

Second Derivative Method Options

These settings are only available if *2nd Derivative Max* was selected as *Abs Quant Type* during creation of the analysis.

To change the settings of the Cp detection, use the multi-select button:

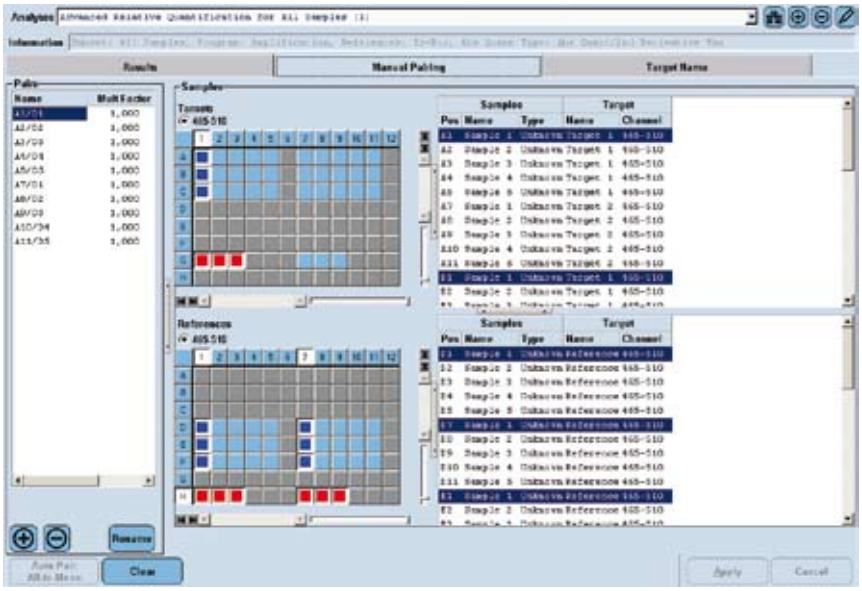


For more information please refer to section *Absolute Quantification Analysis*.

4. Click *Back to RelQuant* to return to the *Relative Quantification Analysis* screen.

5. If you want to change any settings relating to target|reference pairing, select the *Manual Pairing* tab.

   If the *Manual Pairing* tab is not available, click the *Settings* button and check the option *Enable Manual Pair Editing* (see above).



The software displays the pairs that were generated automatically.

You may

- Edit pairings
- Specify correction and multiplication factors

For more information please refer to section *Pairing Samples and Creating Result Sets*.

6. Click *Calculate*.

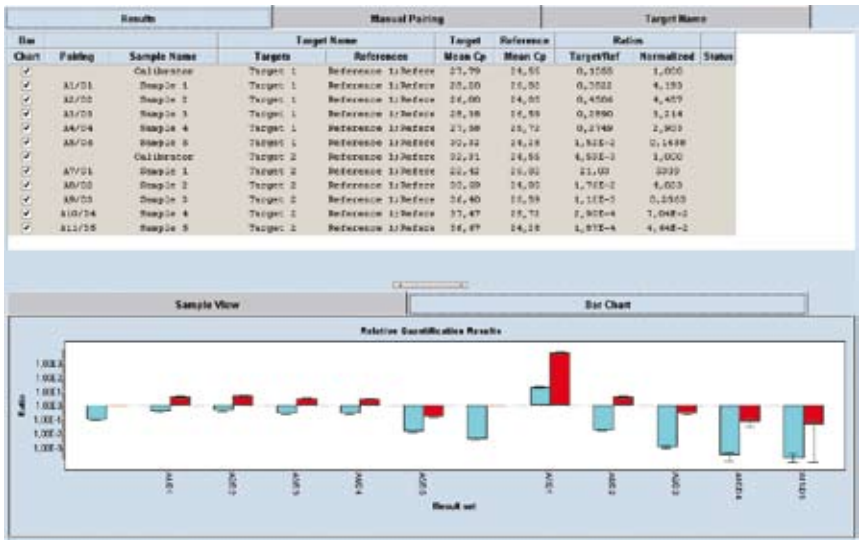
■

4

4.3.7 Viewing the Results

To view results on the Results tab:

1. Select the *Results* tab to view detailed results for each result set.



2. The *Results Table* displays one row with the following information for each paired result set and each calibrator set:
   - Bar chart: The selected result sets are displayed in the *Bar Chart*. If you want to exclude a result set from the bar chart, deselect the checkbox by double-clicking it.
   - Pairing: name of the result set (empty for calibrators).
   - Sample Name: name of sample in the result set as defined in the *Sample Editor*. (Usually this is just one sample name; manual pairing also allows several sample names.)
   - Target Name: names of the gene targets in the result set.
   - Target Mean/Median Cp: crossing point of the target.
   - Reference Mean/Median Cp: crossing point of the reference.
   - Error of the Cp (not displayed as default): the standard deviation of sample replicates.
   - Ratio Target/Ref: concentration ratio of the target and reference in this result set.
   - Target/Ref Ratio Error (not displayed as default): the standard deviation of all target/reference combinations of sample replicates.
   - Ratio Normalized: concentration ratio of the target and reference in this result set, normalized with the calibrators for this result set.
   - Normalized Ratio Error (not displayed as default): the standard deviation of all target/reference/calibrator combinations of sample replicates.
   - Status: any special information relating to the result set.

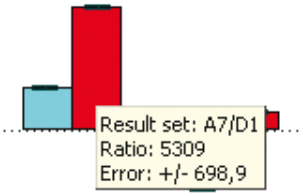
▶ ▶ ▶

D

3 The *Bar Chart* displays one set of bars for each paired result set and each calibrator set selected in the *Results Table:*

- The height of the left bar indicates the target/reference ratio of the result set; the right bar shows the normalized value.
- Each bar displays the statistical standard deviation of the value as an error range as a capped line.

If you place the mouse pointer over a column, more detailed data is displayed:



4.3.8 Pairing Samples and Creating Result Sets

Auto Pairing

The software creates *Result Sets* automatically. These consist of

- A target
- A reference
- A calibrator (optional)

The *Result Sets* are displayed on the *Manual Pairing* tab. The Relative Quantification module applies the following rules to auto-pair target and reference samples:

- Target and references with matching *Sample Names* are paired.
- Gene targets and calibrators with matching *Target Names* are paired. Calibrators are only used if every gene target can be paired with a calibrator.
- If no *Target Names* and no identical *Sample Names* are defined, the software tries to identify *Result Sets* based on pattern recognition. If the shape of the sample positions of the targets matches the shape of the sample positions of the references then these targets and references are paired.

After the identification of targets and references, the software offers the following pairing rules. The examples are based on the targets: T1, T2 and references: R1, R2

- *One to One*: One target is paired with one reference according to the pipetting scheme, *e.g.,* T1|R1, T2|R2
- *All to All*: Each target is paired with each reference,
  e.g., T1|R1, T1|R2, T2|R1, T2|R2
- *All to Mean*: Pairs each target with all references. The geometric mean of the resulting ratios is calculated,
  e.g., $T1/R(all) = (T1/R1 \times T1/R2)^{1/2}$ and $T2/R(all) = (T2/R1 \times T2/R2)^{1/2}$
- *Mean to All*: Pairs all targets with each reference. The geometric mean of the resulting ratios is calculated,
  e.g., $T(all)/R1 = (T1/R1 \times T2/R1)^{1/2}$ and $T(all)/R2 = (T1/R2 \times T2/R2)^{1/2}$

4

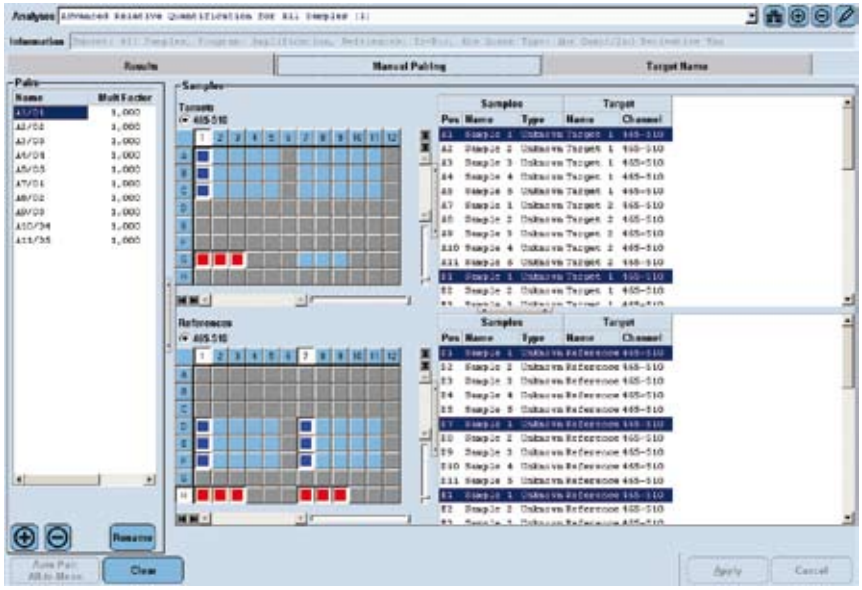
D

Manual Pairing

Use the *Manual Pairing* tab to manually define *Result Sets*. You can further specify correction and multiplication factors for the sets.

To manually pair samples and create Result Sets:

1. The *Manual Pairing* tab displays two *Sample Selectors*: the upper one for target samples, the lower one for reference samples. Only the unknown and calibrator samples in the active subset are available for selection. All other sample positions are inactive.



The Auto Pair button is only enabled if no Result Sets are defined.

2. To create a new *Result Set*, perform the following steps:
   - Click the + button in the *Pairs* list to add a new *Result Set.*
   - Select the unknown target (in the upper sample selector) and unknown reference (in the lower sample selector) that form a pair.
   - If you want to add calibrators, hold down the <*Ctrl*> key and click the target calibrator (in the upper sample selector) and reference calibrator (in the lower sample selector).
   - Click *Apply*.

     The new *Result Set* is added to the *Pairs* list. A *Result Set* is automatically assigned the default name “Pairing ###”, where ### is a serial number. The paired positions are displayed.
   - If you want to rename the new *Result Set,* click the name in the *Pairs* list and type a new name.

3. If you want to apply a correction factor to the *Result Set*, perform the following steps*:*
   - If there is only one target calibrator and one reference calibrator, click the *Correction Factor* button.
   - If there is more than one target calibrator or reference calibrator, select the *Correction Factor* in the *Pairs* list.

   The correction factor is used to normalize results for lot-to-lot variations of a calibrator. The normalized ratio is divided by the correction factor.

   Each new batch of a calibrator should be validated with a “master” calibrator.

► ► ►

4 If you want to apply a multiplication factor to the *Result Set,* perform the following steps:

- If there is only one target calibrator and one reference calibrator, click the *Multiplication Factor* button.
- If there is more than one target calibrator or reference calibrator, select the *Multiplication Factor* in the *Pairs* list.

A multiplication factor might be used to adjust the final calibrator-normalized relative ratios to a reasonable value. The normalized ratio is multiplied by the multiplication factor. The multiplication factor thus only has “cosmetic” function for easier reading and interpretation of results.

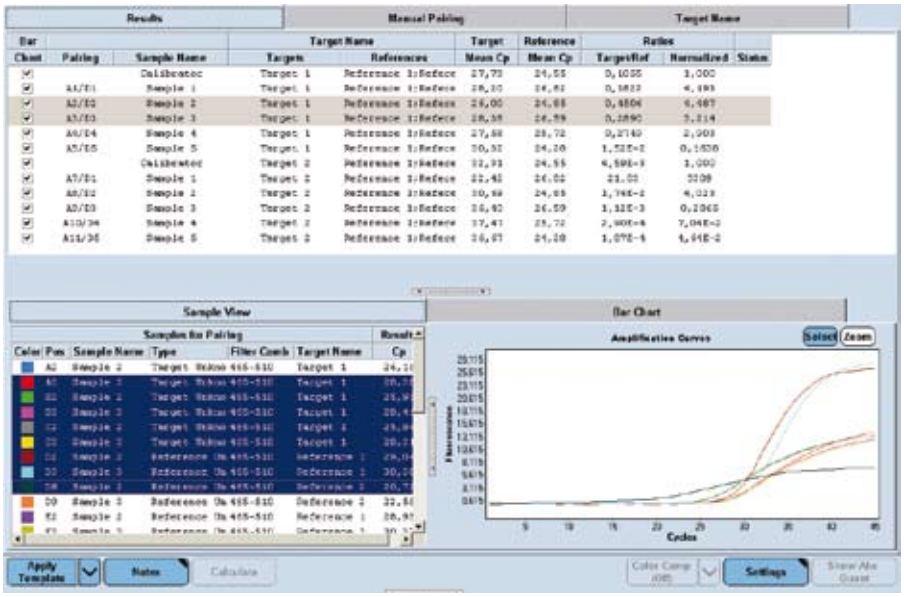
5 Create further *Result Sets* as needed.

Click *Calculate*.

To view amplification curves for the samples in a Result Set:

- Select the *Results* tab. The *Result Sets* are displayed in the *Pairing* column.
- Select the *Sample View* tab.
- In the *Results* table select the pairs to be displayed in the *Sample View*.
- In the *Sample View* select the positions to be displayed in the *Amplification Curves* chart.

If only one target name is selected in the Sample View list, the Show Abs Quant button is enabled.



4

4.3.9 External Standard Curves

To create a statistically valid standard curve, consider the concentration range of samples to be analyzed and the required standard deviation:

- Include standard concentrations that cover at least 3-5 orders of magnitude in the range of the samples to be analyzed.
- For Relative Quantification analysis it is not necessary to know the copy number/concentration of the diluted standards. Selecting a calibrator enables the use of relative standards, *e.g.,* dilution series of mRNA or cRNA.
- Use a minimum of 4-5 dilution steps (*e.g.*, 1:10 dilutions).
- Use 3-6 replicates of each standard, to ensure a statistically valid result.

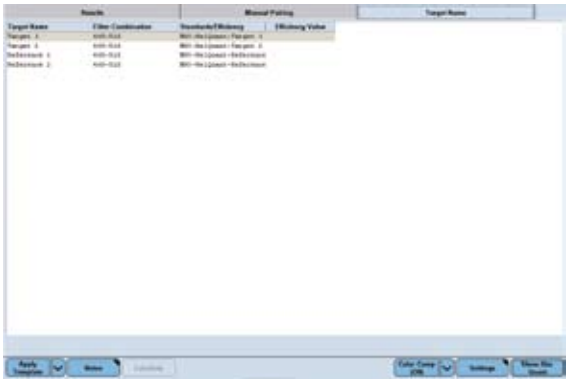
If the external standard is to be applied automatically in the subsequent Relative Quantification analysis, the target names defined for the standards and defined in the Relative Quantification analysis must match.

To generate external standard curves:

1. Perform an amplification experiment containing the relative standards for your target and reference gene (see section *Performing an Advanced Relative Quantification Experiment*). Apply the same experimental protocol you will use for your Relative Quantification experiment.
2. Enter the concentration for the dilution steps of target (T) and reference (R) standards in the *Sample Editor*.
3. Create a new *Advanced Relative Quantification* analysis (see section *Performing an Advanced Relative Quantification Experiment*, step 3 to 7).

   The Relative Quantification analysis screen opens with the *Results* tab.
4. Click the *Calculate* button to calculate the standard curve.

   Click the *Target Name* tab and select the gene target.

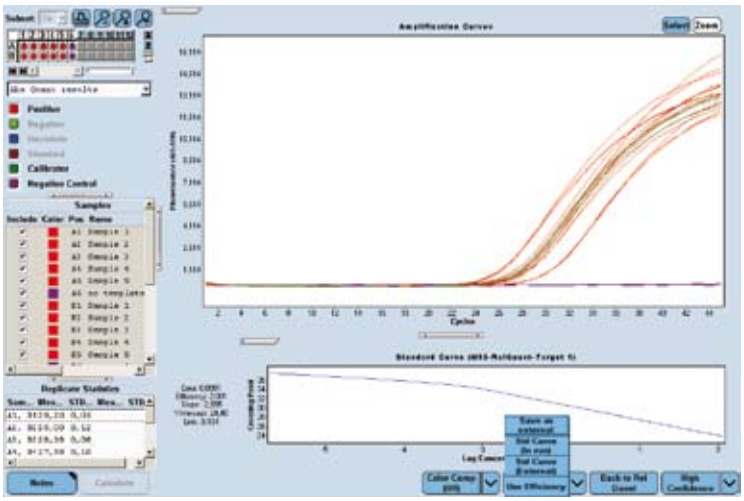
   Click the *Show Abs Quant* button.

▶ ▶ ▶

D

5 The subordinate absolute quantification analysis opens.

The standard curve is displayed.



Click the standard curve multi select button and select *Save as external*.

6 Now you can save the standard curves as external standard curve.

Apply a meaningful name to the external standard curve and click *OK* to save it in the *StdCurve* directory.

4.3.10 Supplementary Information

Invalidating the Analysis

The following changes invalidate the Relative Quantification analysis and require to recalculate the analysis:

- Changing the target or reference standard curve or efficiencies
- Checking/un-checking samples to be included in calculations
- Changing samples types (creating new standards or removing standards)
- Changing standard concentrations
- Changing the source of the efficiency value (external standard curve, internal standard curve, or efficiency = 2)
- Adding or deleting a pairing set
- Changing correction or multiplication factors
- Changing Color Compensation status (on/off/selected object)
- Applying a template
- Changing the currently selected channel of targets or references

Updating an external reference experiment after the experiment has been imported does neither update nor invalidate the analysis.

Relative Quantification Template

A Relative Quantification analysis template contains the following settings:

- Filter combinations of target and references

4

If you want to apply a template to an experiment that does not use the target or reference filter combinations defined in the template, a warning message will appear and the template will not be applied.

- Target/reference/calibrators pairing information (by position)

If the pairing information of the template is not consistent with the sample properties used in the current experiment, the template will not be applied.

- Target and reference experiment subsets

When a template is applied, the software checks whether the current experiment contains a subset with the same name and the same well positions as the subset in the template.

- *If the current experiment does not contain a subset with the same name, the software will create the subset.*
- *If the current experiment does contain a subset with the same name, but with different well positions as the subset in the template, the template will not be applied.*

- List of subordinate analyses for each target name or filter combination
- Target types

When a template is applied, the software compares the target names defined in the current experiment with the target names defined in the template.

- *If any target name defined in the current experiment is of a different type than in the template, the template will not be applied and an error message will be displayed.*
- *If any target name defined in the current experiment is not defined in the template, the template will not be applied and an error message will be displayed.*

- Sample types for pairing

When a template is applied, the software checks whether any position is not of the correct type in the current experiment for a pairing in the template. In this case the template will not be applied and an error message will be displayed.

- Standard curve information of target and references. The external standard curves are saved with the template.
- Color Compensation. The CC objects are saved with the template.
- All display settings
- Correction and multiplication factors
- Include/exclude setting for the pairs in the bar chart
- Auto pairing rule
- Manual pairing

If the template has manual pairing disabled, no pairs are loaded from the template when the template is applied. Auto pairing is run after the template is applied. If the template has manual pairing enabled, then pairs are stored in the template and added from the template when the template is applied.

- Absolute quantification analysis type (Fit Points or Second Derivative Maximum method)
- External reference experiment

If the template uses an external reference experiment, the software opens a dialog where you can select the reference experiment, program, and subset. If you cancel this dialog, the template cannot be applied.

Result Control Concept

The LightCycler® 480 Relative Quantification Software applies a control concept to assess whether a result is valid, uncertain, or invalid. Uncertain result values are displayed in brackets, while "invalid" or no value is displayed for invalid results.

See the table below for an overview of possible result states. Brackets indicate that the status column in the *Results* table will contain the corresponding information.

Targets/References	Calibrators	Concentration Ratio	Normalized Ratio
Positive/Positive	Positive	Ratio	Ratio
	Negative or Uncertain	Ratio	Invalid
Positive/Uncertain, Uncertain/Positive, Uncertain/Uncertain	Positive	[Ratio]	[Ratio]
	Negative or Uncertain	[Ratio]	Invalid
Negative/Positive	Positive	Zero	Zero
	Negative or Uncertain	Zero	Invalid
Negative/Uncertain	Positive	[Zero]	[Zero]
	Negative or Uncertain	[Zero]	Invalid
Positive/Negative, Uncertain/Negative, Negative/Negative	All	Invalid	Invalid
Any Invalid (unknown, reference or calibrator)	-	Invalid	Invalid
Failed standard curve	-	Invalid	Invalid

If all selected calibrator replicates in a result set are positive, the normalized concentration ratio is calculated.

If at least one selected calibrator replicate in a result set is not positive, the normalized concentration ratio is invalid.

If the normalized concentration ratio is not invalid, and the sample concentration ratio is bracketed, then the normalized concentration ratio is bracketed.

5

D

5 T_m Calling Analysis

This section explains how to use melting temperature profiles to identify DNA products and to genotype samples.

5.1 Using Melting Curve Profiles to Identify DNA Products and Genotypes

The temperature at which a DNA strand separates or melts when heated can vary over a wide range, depending on the sequence, the length of the strand, and the GC content of the strand. For example, melting temperatures can vary for products of the same length but different GC/AT ratio, or for products with the same length and GC content, but with a different GC distribution. Also, base pair mismatches between two DNA molecules lead to a decrease in melting temperature. This effect is more pronounced for short DNA hybrids and is, thus, the basis for probe-based genotyping analysis: A perfectly matched (*e.g.*, wildtype-specific) probe will melt at a higher temperature than the mismatched probe bound to a target sequence carrying a single-base mutation.

The purpose of Melting Curve analysis is to determine the characteristic melting temperature of the target DNA and to identify or genotype products based on their melting temperature.

To analyze sample melting temperature profiles, the fluorescence of the samples must be monitored while the temperature of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument thermal blockcycler is steadily increased. As the temperature increases, sample fluorescence decreases. In the case of the double-stranded DNA-specific dye SYBR Green I or ResoLight dye, this is due to the separation of the DNA strands and consequently the release of SYBR Green I molecules. For single-labeled probes and hybridization probes, this is due to the separation of target-probe hybrids resulting either in quenching of the reporter dye or in the spatial separation of the dye molecules. Both lead to a consequent drop in fluorescence.

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument T_m Calling analysis software module calculates for each sample the melting temperature, the melting peak, height, width and the area under each melting peak. Use the T_m Calling analysis to identify characteristic melting profiles of DNA products or target-probe hybrids.

5.1.1 Defining a Melt Program

A melting temperature analysis can be performed on any experiment that includes a melt program. A melt program is usually performed after amplification of the target DNA. A typical melt program includes three segments:

- The samples are rapidly heated to a temperature high enough to denature all DNA molecules.
- The samples are cooled to below the annealing temperature of the target DNA.
- The samples are slowly heated while measuring sample fluorescence as the target DNA melts.

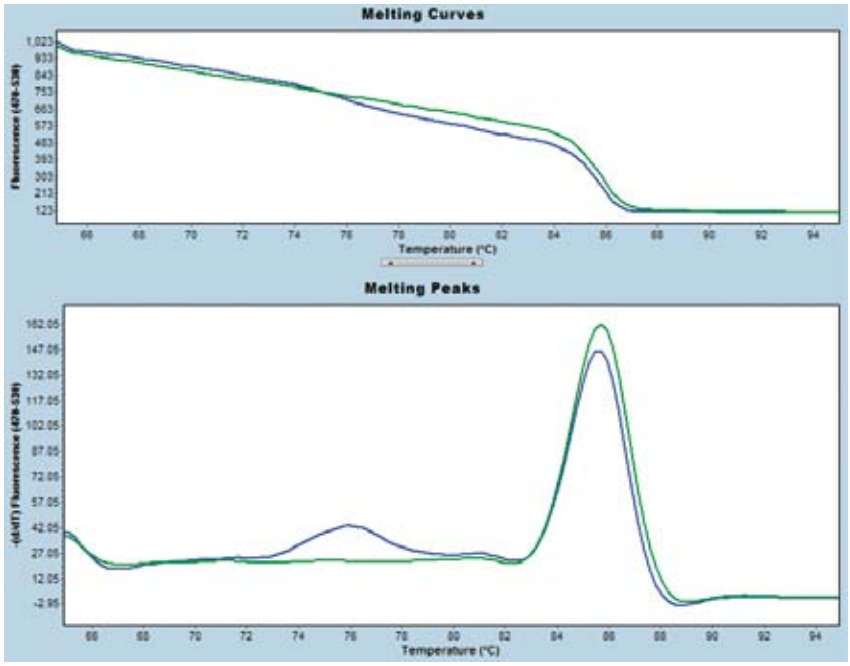
You can use melting temperatures from +20 to +95°C. Please note that samples should be cooled to 20°C only for a short time (<15 min).

5.1.2 Content of a Melting Temperature Analysis

A melting temperature analysis uses the fluorescence measurements of the melt program to determine the melting temperature of each sample. The melting temperature (or T_m) of a sample is defined as the point at which half of the DNA has melted or half of the probes have melted off the DNA.

The analysis displays a *Melting Curves* chart of sample fluorescence versus temperature. The chart shows the downward curve in fluorescence for the samples as they melt. The analysis also displays a *Melting Peaks* chart that plots the first negative derivative of the sample fluorescent curves. In this chart, the melting temperature of each sample appears as a peak. Displaying the melting temperatures as peaks makes it easier to distinguish each sample's characteristic melting profile and to discern differences between samples.

The following figure shows a melting curve chart and a melting peak chart from a T_m Calling analysis of a SYBR Green I experiment as an example how melting temperature analysis can be used for DNA product characterization:



Both samples analyzed show a prominent and sharp peak from a DNA product having a T_m of 86°C, representing the desired PCR product. The blue sample shows in addition a weak and broad peak with T_m 77°C, representing an unspecific by-product such as primer-dimers.

5

5.2 Performing T_m Calling Analysis

You can perform a T_m Calling analysis on any experiment that includes a melt program. During a melt program, the decrease in fluorescence of the samples is monitored while the temperature is steadily increased to melt the DNA or melt probes off the target strands.

The reasons for the decrease of fluorescence during melting are different for the various detection formats:

- In the case of DNA-binding dyes (SYBR Green I, ResoLight) this is due to the separation of DNA strands and consequently the release of dye molecules. As these dyes only fluoresce at 530 nm if bound to double-stranded DNA, melting drastically decreases fluorescence at this wavelength. The melting temperature, or T_m, is defined as the point at which half of the DNA is double-stranded and single-stranded.
- In the case of hybridization probes, the separation of target-probe hybrids results in the spatial separation of the fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) partners and in a drop of fluorescence from the reporter dye at a certain temperature. The melting temperature, or T_m, is defined as the point at which half the probes have melted off their target DNA sequence.
- In the case of single-labeled probes, fluorescence is emitted from the reporter dye when the probe is hybridized to its target sequence. Fluorescence is quenched when the probe is free floating in solution. Again, the melting temperature, or T_m, is defined as the point at which half the probes have melted off their target DNA sequence.

After amplification in a hydrolysis probe PCR assay, all probes are digested. Thus, Melting Curve analysis cannot be performed.

The analysis displays a chart of the melting curves of samples which shows the drop in fluorescence. The software also charts the first negative derivative of the melting curves, which displays the melting temperatures of the samples as peaks. When sample melting temperatures are displayed as peaks, it is easier to discern small differences in the melting profiles of the samples.

The analysis result data includes the melting temperature of each sample as well as area under each peak.

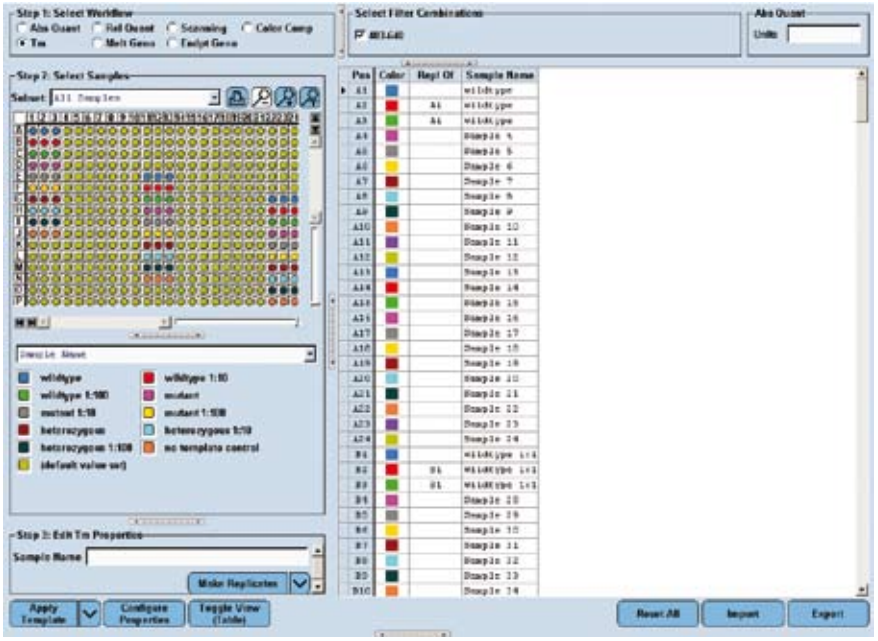
The T_m Calling analysis uses automated algorithms to find the peak areas and melting temperatures. Additionally, you can also determine melting temperatures and peak areas manually.

The automatic T_m Calling algorithm requires that you start the melt program at least 7°C before and end it at least 3°C after the expected T_m value.

To perform automated T_m Calling analysis:

1. Create and run an experiment or open an existing experiment that contains a melt program.

2. Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow T_m.

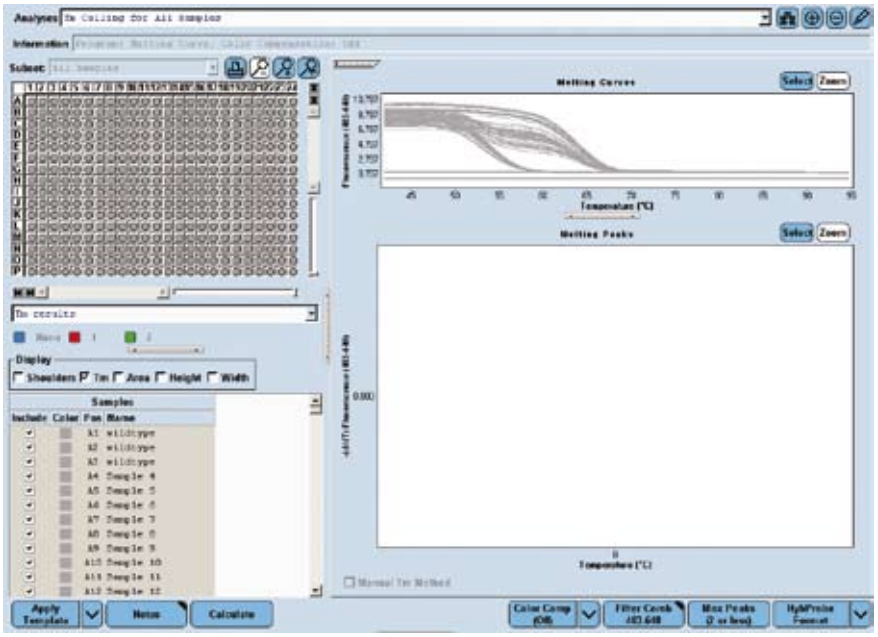


For T_m *Calling* analysis, no properties have to be edited in the *Sample Editor*.

3. Click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar.

4. From the *Create New Analysis* list, select T_m *Calling*. In the *Create New Analysis* dialog, select an analysis subset and a program in the experiment (typically there is only one program, which is selected by default). Click

The *Analysis* screen opens.

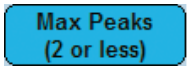


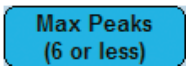
▶ ▶ ▶

5

D

5. If this is a multicolor experiment, click the *Filter Comb* button to open the *Filter Combination* dialog. Select the filter combination for the targets you want to analyze. Use the *Color Compensation* multi-select button to turn Color Compensation on or off and to select a Color Compensation object.

6. 

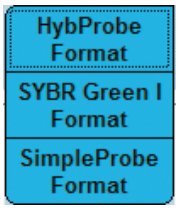


   Decide the minimum number of melting peaks you expect. You can choose between *Max Peaks (2 or less)* or *Max Peaks (6 or less*). Select *2 or less* for a typical genotype experiment. Choose *6 or less* for curves with many peaks.

   Click the *Max Peaks* button in the *Action button* area to toggle between the two options.

   When using the SYBR Green I Format (see next step), it is recommended that you apply the Max Peaks (2 or less) option only.

   We recommend that melting peaks have at least a Δ T_m of 4°C to achieve a good resolution.

7. 

   Select the detection format that was used in your experiment from the *Format* multi-select button. You can choose between *HybProbe Format, SYBR Green I Format,* and *Simple Probe Format*. Click the arrow-down button and make your selection.

   Selecting one of the format options changes the analysis algorithm according to the specific demands of the detection chemistry.

8. By default, all samples are included in result calculations; to remove a sample from result calculations, double-click the checkbox next to the sample name to clear the checkbox or press the <Space> key.

9. Click *Calculate* to complete the T_m Calling analysis.

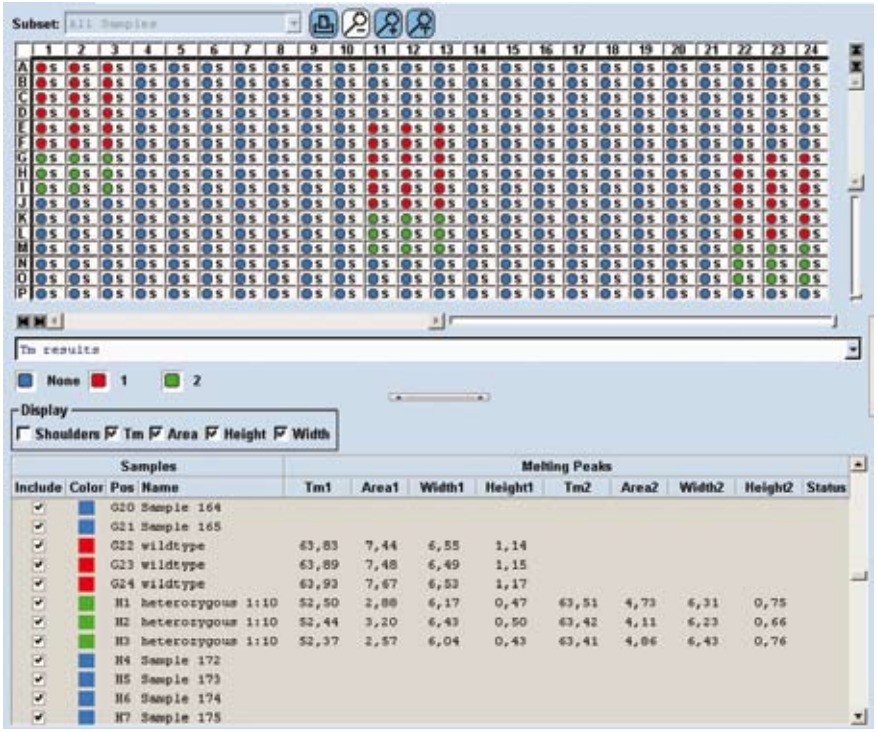
10. To view analysis results, click and drag the left border of the chart section to the right to display all the result data. Results include the *Sample Selector* with the legend and the *Sample Table*.

▶ ▶ ▶

11 ▶ Use the checkboxes of the *Results* table *Display* area to select which type of result you want to display in the table.

▶ Use the *Legend Property Selector* to display colors by result, by sample types, by sample preferences or by replicate groups. Use the colored *Legend Property* buttons to select display of samples with certain properties in the MWP image, the *Results* table and in the charts.

If you choose T_m *results* in the *Legend Property Selector* the selection depends on the result call, *i.e.,* the number of peaks found. The *Results* table of a T_m Calling Analysis displays the following results:



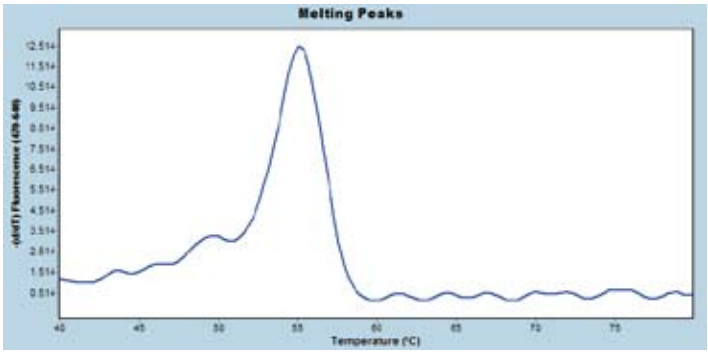
Result	Description
Tm1	The melting temperature for the first peak in the sample.
Area1	The area under the first peak.
Width1	The width of the first peak.
Height1	The height of the first peak.
Tm2	The melting temperature for the second peak for the sample, if any.
Area2	The area under the second peak.
Width2	The width of the second peak.
Height2	The height of the second peak.

▶ ▶ ▶

5

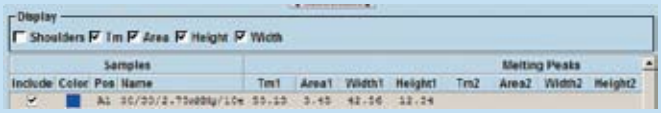
If there are additional peaks and the appropriate setting is chosen, the results display them as Tm3, Area3, etc. (Only in Max Peaks (6 or less) mode.)

Sometimes there is a shoulder visible on the side of a peak. If you want to see the result data for these shoulder peaks, select Shoulders from the Display area. To hide them, deselect Shoulders.
In the example below, there is a shoulder at 50°C.

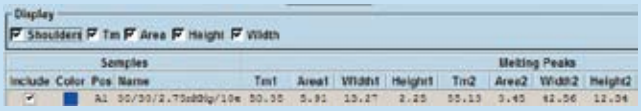


12 Result data for this shoulder is only displayed if *Shoulders* is selected:

Shoulders deselected



Shoulders selected



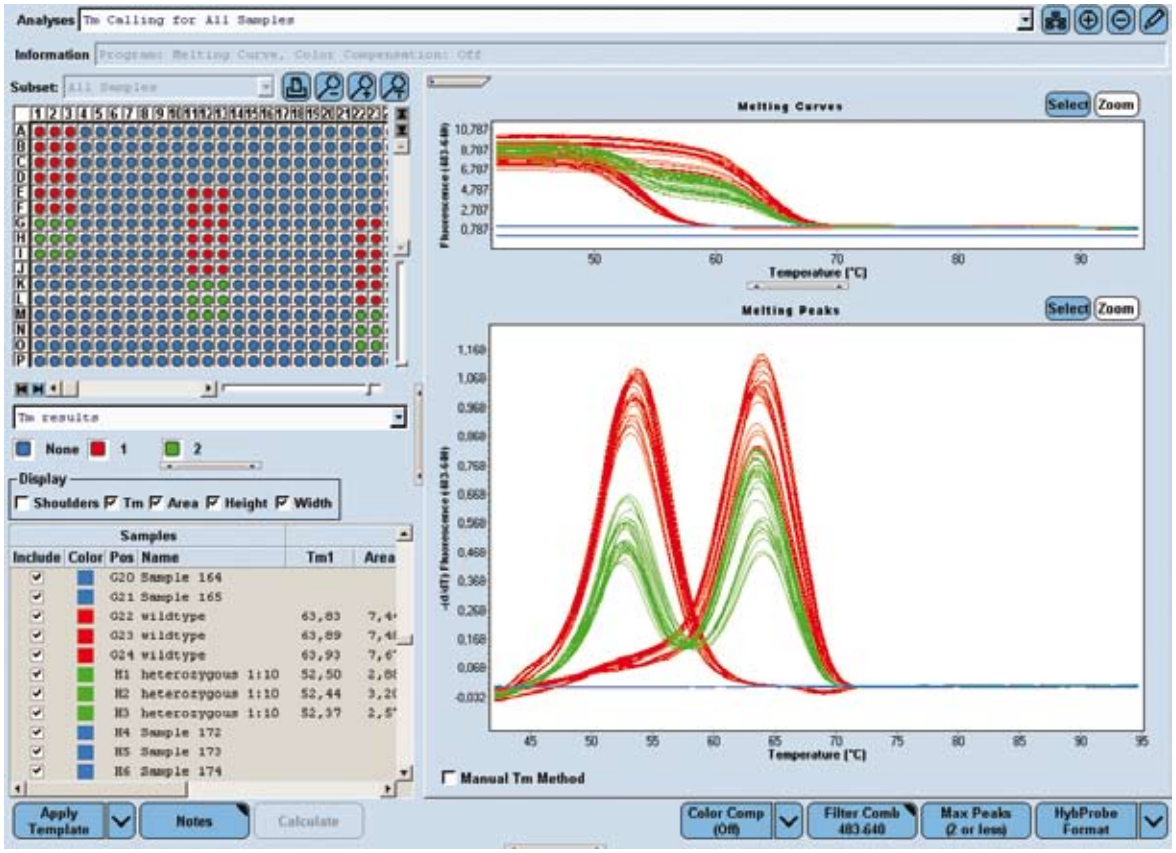
Note that the shoulder data are now displayed in the columns for the first peak, while the data of the main peak are displayed in the columns for the second peak. This is because peak data is sorted ascending by Tm automatically.

13 The analysis contains two charts. By default the upper chart displays the melting curves. The lower chart always displays the melting peak chart.

For a detailed description of the *Analysis* window see section *Using the Analysis Window*.

D

As an example a T_m Calling analysis of a HybProbe assay is shown below. Results are calculated for all samples in the experiment. Sample curves are displayed for the highlighted samples: The samples have two melting peaks, each peak represents a different genotype of the target gene.



5

D

To perform manual T_m Calling analysis:

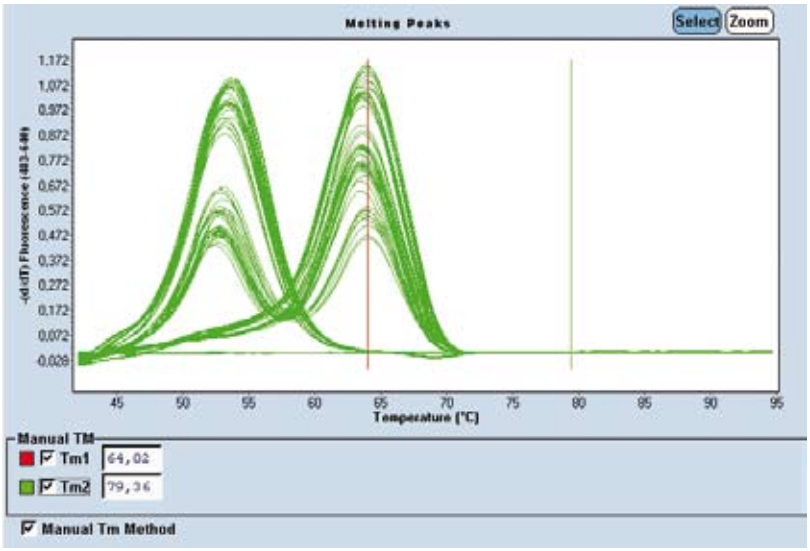
1. Create and run an experiment or open an existing experiment that contains a melt program. Perform an automated T_m Calling Analysis.

   The manual T_m method becomes active only after the T_m Calling analysis has been calculated.

2. Select one or more samples from the sample list to edit their calculated melting peaks.

3. Select the *Manual T_m Method* checkbox.

   Depending on the *Max Peaks* setting, two or six *Tm* checkboxes are displayed below the *Melting Peaks* chart.

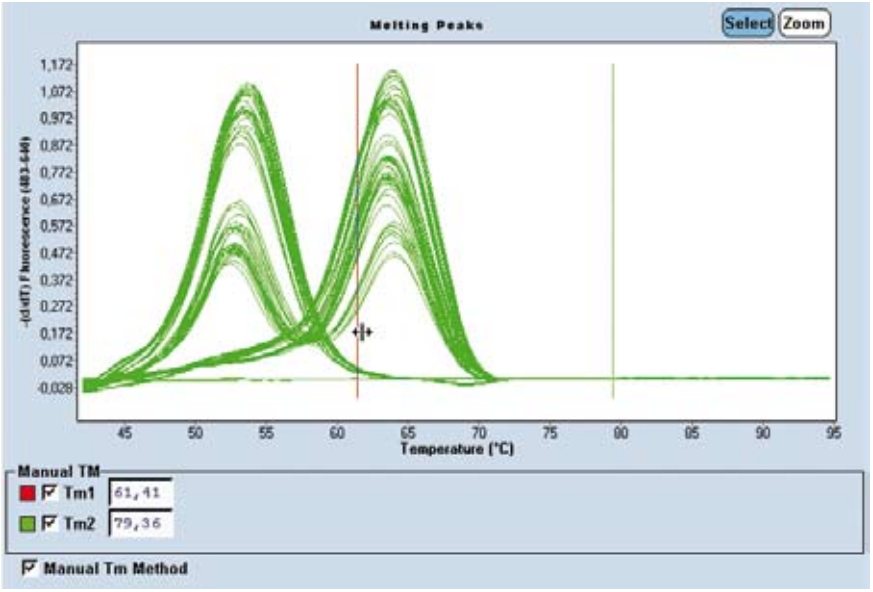


   Indicators are located at the automatically calculated T_m values. If multiple samples are highlighted in the sample list, indicators of the first sample in the selected sample list are displayed.

4. Click a *Tm* checkbox to display a manual T_m indicator and a T_m field. The color of the indicator matches the selected *Tm* checkbox.

▶ ▶ ▶

To change a T_m value, place the cursor on the vertical T_m indicator. The cursor changes to a double-pointed arrow. Click and drag the line to the desired T_m value.



The T_m value is displayed in the T_m field to the right of the *Tm* checkbox. The areas, heights and widths of the corresponding T_m are recalculated and displayed in the sample list for this sample.

In the Sample Table, manually edited T_m values are indicated by an asterisk.

It is possible to have both automatically generated and manually generated T_m values in the same analysis (but not for the same samples).

During the manual T_m editing it is not possible to change the Show Shoulders display.

5 To restore the original (automatically calculated) T_m values, deselect *Manual T_m Method*, and click the *Max Peaks* button twice, followed by *Calculate*.

6 Genotyping

6.1 Overview

Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) are the most abundant form of genetic variation accounting for more than 90% of all differences between individuals. In recent years, genotyping of SNPs has become a key technology for genetic research.

On the LightCycler® 480 System two different methods of SNP analysis are available:

- Endpoint Genotyping analysis
- Melting Curve Genotyping analysis

Depending on the chemistry (probe type and format), instrument run and data acquisition mode used, genotyping information can be derived from the amplification curve's endpoint signal intensity (endpoint analysis) or from the shape of a melting curve established after the PCR (Melting Curve analysis).

Endpoint Genotyping Analysis

Analysis of amplification curve endpoints is normally done by acquiring a fluorescent signal with two differently labeled hydrolysis probes (one for each allele) in two channels. Endpoint Genotyping provides a method that is easy to access and can be run for simple experimental setups to analyze a single SNP in well-characterized regions with no unknown variations expected.

For many targets, ready-to-use primers and probes are available commercially and can be run under identical standard conditions in parallel. They can readily be combined with LightCycler® 480 reagents and the results analyzed with the Endpoint Genotyping Software module.

Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis

Melting curves obtained with fluorescent hybridization probes (HybProbe probes and SimpleProbe probes) provide robust information about the sequence under study for recurrent analysis for a limited, constant set of known SNPs.

Since signal generation and analysis are done post-PCR, there is no influence of PCR efficiency (*e.g.*, when DNA amounts or purity are an issue), making the method more robust than endpoint analysis. Melting Curve analysis can also deal with unexpected additional SNPs present in the investigated region under the probe. Rather than interfering with the assay performance, such additional SNPs will result in a variation of the melting curve shape, which the analysis software will be able to recognize for closer investigation.

To screen for unknown SNPs, the LightCycler® 480 Gene Scanning Software and LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Master reagent are available.

Analysis is done based on acquisition in only one channel for each locus, allowing investigation of several SNPs in parallel in multiplex assays if a different color is chosen for each SNP. HybProbe probes can also be designed to cover several SNPs under one probe, thus allowing haplotype analysis.

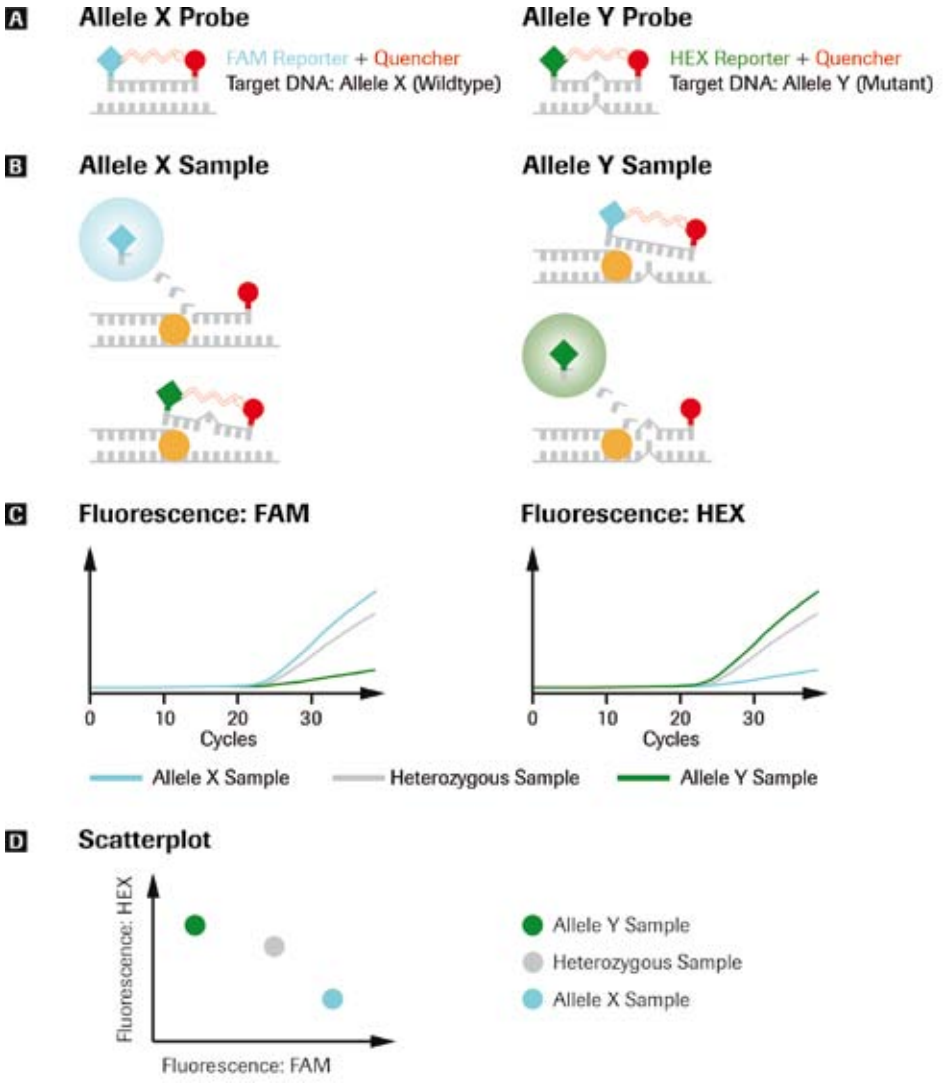
6.2 Endpoint Genotyping Analysis

6.2.1 Overview

Endpoint Genotyping analysis uses two sequence-specific probes that are designed for wildtype and mutant target DNA and are labeled with different dyes. The software determines the genotype by measuring the intensity distribution of the two dyes after PCR.

The relative dye intensities can be visualized comprehensibly on an scatter plot, simplifying discrimination into wildtype, heterozygous mutant, or homozygous mutant samples. LightCycler® 480 Genotyping Software then automatically groups the samples and calls the genotypes based on the intensity distribution of the two dyes.

Endpoint Genotyping assays utilize hydrolysis probes. Each probe contains two labels, a fluorescent reporter and a quencher, in close proximity to each other. When the probe is intact, the quencher dye is close enough to the reporter dye to suppress the reporter fluorescent signal via a FRET process. During the elongation phase, the hydrolysis probe is cleaved, separating the reporter and quencher. In the cleaved probe, the reporter is no longer quenched and emits a fluorescent signal when excited. For more information on detection formats see section *Detection Formats for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument*.



Schematic representation of Endpoint Genotyping with different reporter dyes:
A: Sequence-specific probes with different reporter dyes.
B: During elongation phase, only the fitting probes are cleaved, separating the reporter dye from the quencher.
C: The cleaved reporter dye is no longer quenched end emits a fluorescence signal.
D: The scatterplot displays final fluorescence intensities of several samples allowing an easy discrimination: High intensities of the Allele X Probe are placed to the right, high intensities of the Allele Y Probe are placed upwards, high intensities of both Probes are placed up and right, these mark heterozygous samples.

The LightCycler® 480 Endpoint Genotyping analysis software groups similar samples and automatically calls genotypes. The software shows a graphical representation of the multiwell plate with color-coded genotypes and a corresponding data table. For each sample, the table displays a called genotype, and a score.

6.2.2 Principle of Endpoint Genotyping

LightCycler® 480 Endpoint Genotyping Software groups samples with similar fluorescence together and identifies each group as a genotype or a negative. The following types of samples are supported:

- Unknown: samples to be analyzed
- Standard (optional): The software uses genotype standards to group unknown samples around the standards and name the genotype after the name of the standard. All standards are used as positive controls: If any standard sample emits a fluorescence signal that cannot be distinguished from the negatives, the software displays a warning. If no standards are defined, the software will group the samples automatically.
- Negative control (optional): If any negative control sample emits a fluorescence signal that cannot be distinguished from the called samples, the software displays a warning.

After the software has called the genotype, it can be edited for selected samples. If the call is changed, the status of the result changes to “manually edited”.

Endpoint Genotyping experiments are always multicolor experiments and thereby subject to color crosstalk. You can suppress the effect of color crosstalk by including a Color Compensation object in the analysis. Nevertheless Endpoint Genotyping analysis does usually not require Color Compensation because the grouping algorithm is pretty stable against the influence of color crosstalk.

6.2.3 Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Experiment

In an Endpoint Genotyping analysis two measurement modes can be used:

- PCR Read: The Endpoint Genotyping experiment includes also the amplification in one run. Endpoint fluorescence values of amplification curves are background-corrected and fluorescence values of both channels are analyzed in a Scatter Plot.
- Pre/Post Read: If the amplification reactions are performed using a non-real time block cycler instrument, the resulting endpoint fluorescence is determined by using a short program (Post Read).

  Optionally this short program can also be run before the amplification on a block cycler instrument is performed (Pre Read). This allows background correction of fluorescence values during Endpoint Genotyping analysis to give more precise values.

6

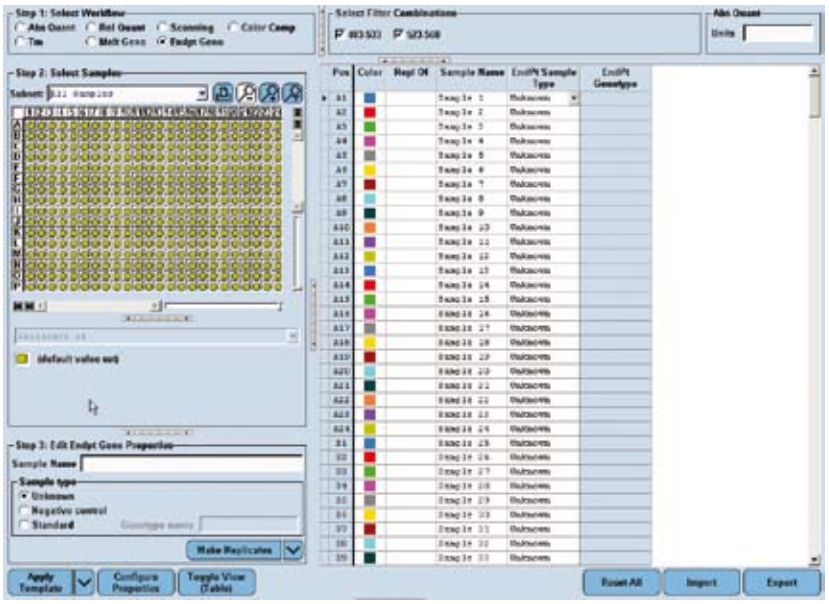
D

To perform Endpoint Genotyping with PCR Read:

1. Perform an experiment containing an amplification program. (If you want to perform an Endpoint Genotyping experiment without amplification measurements refer to section *To perform Endpoint Genotyping with Pre/Post Read*.) Whether you need to include standards in your experiment depends on the analysis mode you want to apply:
   - Auto group analysis: No genotype standards are required.
   - In-run standards: Include genotype standards.

   You can optionally include control samples:
   - Positive control: Include genotype standards. All genotype standards are used as positive controls.
   - Negative control: Include your reagent mix without DNA template.

   (Optional) Define the subset that will be analyzed: Refer to section *Working with Subsets* for details. If no subset is defined the software will analyze the whole plate and automatically identify empty sample locations as negative.
2. Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar.
3. Select the workflow *Endpt Geno.*



4. Define the properties for the samples.

   For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.

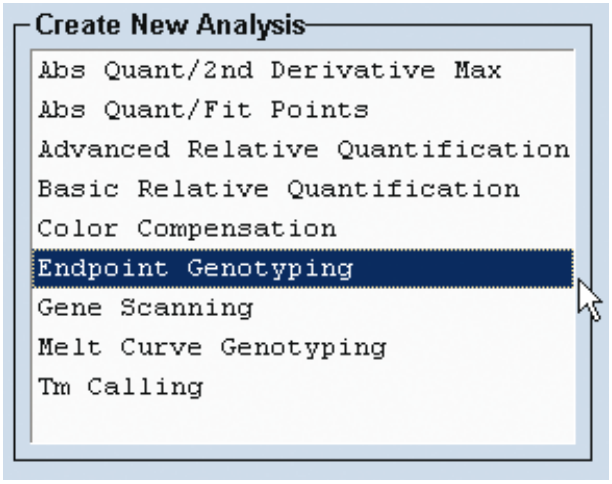
   The software uses the following parameters for calculation:

Column Name	Description	Valid Values
Endpt Sample Type	Type of the sample	▶ Unknown ▶ Negative Control ▶ Standard
Endpt Genotype	Genotype of the standard *This field is active only when the Sample Type is Standard.*	Alphanumeric value (≤ 25 characters)

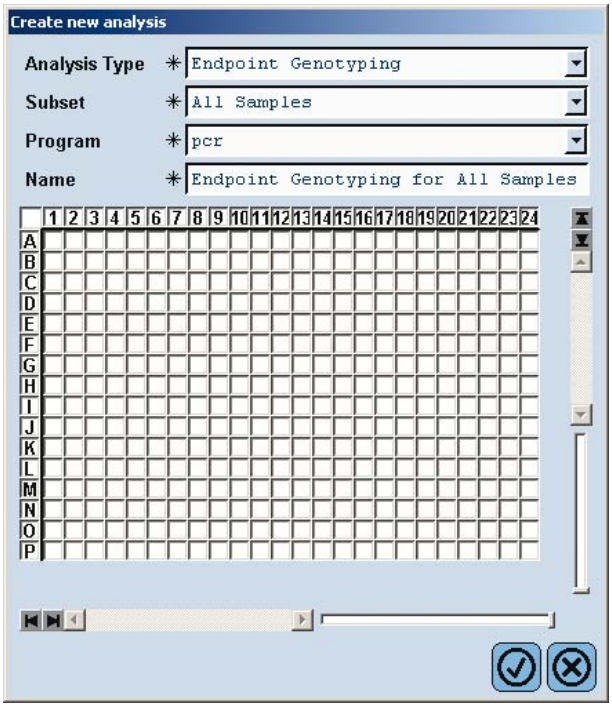
▶ ▶ ▶

5 Click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar.

In the *Create New Analysis* dialog box, select *Endpoint Genotyping*.



6 The *Create new analysis* dialog opens. Select an analysis subset and an experimental program from the *Program* list (this is usually the *PCR* program). If you wish, you can change the analysis name (the default name is "*analysis type* for *subset name*"). Click  .

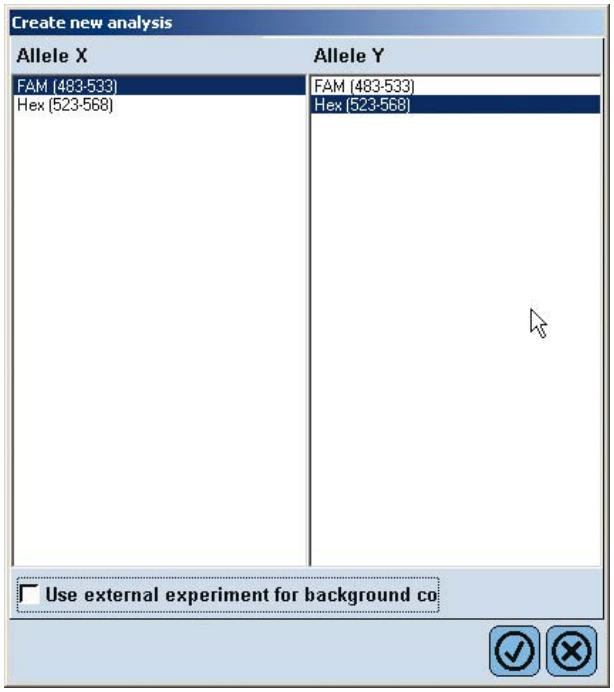


►►►

6

D

7 The *Create new analysis* dialog opens.

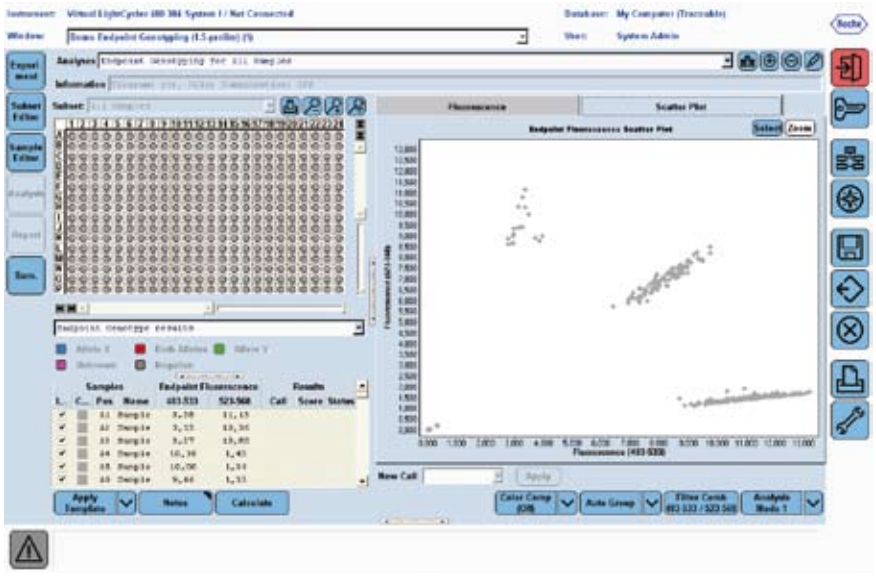


Select the filter combinations that will be used for genotyping:

- In the list *Allele X*: Select the filter combination for the x-axis of the scatter plot.
- In the list *Allele Y*: Select the filter combination for the y-axis of the scatter plot.

(If you are analyzing an experiment without an amplification program, you can add an experiment for baseline subtraction by selecting the option *Use external experiment for background correction*. Refer to section *To perform Endpoint Genotyping with Pre/Post Read* for details.)

8 The *Genotyping Analysis* screen opens.



9 Continue the analysis as described in the section *Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Analysis*.

To perform Endpoint Genotyping with Pre/Post Read:

LightCycler® 480 Endpoint Genotyping Software determines the genotype of a sample based on the dual color fluorescence measurement after amplification. With this option it is possible to run the PCR on non-real-time instruments for very high throughput applications. The software requires a measurement before PCR (optional) for baseline subtraction and a measurement after PCR for analysis.

Use a short endpoint measuring program (post-PCR measurement) and (optionally) import an external experiment for baseline subtraction that includes a pre-PCR measurement.

The workflow is essentially the same as described in the section *To perform Endpoint Genotyping with PCR Read*. The following changes apply:

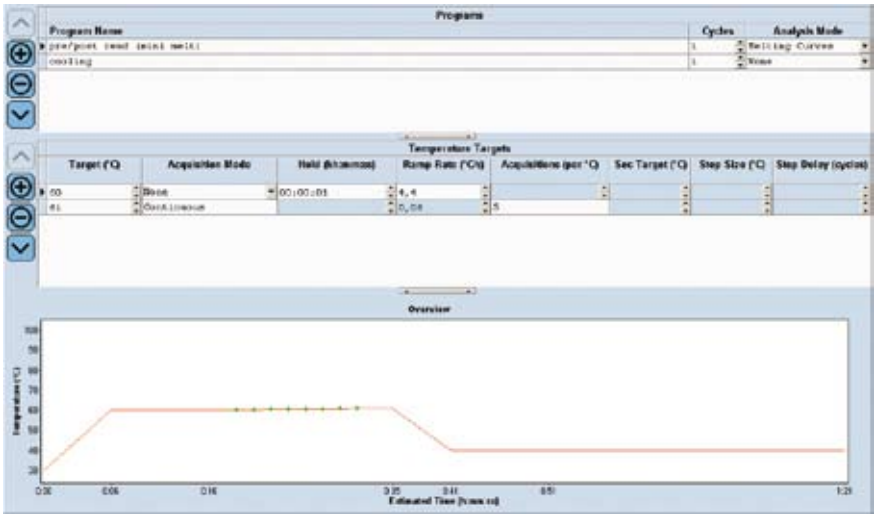
1. Instead of creating one experiment with an amplification program, create one or two experiments:
   - (Optional) A Pre-PCR experiment containing at least one acquisition.
   - A Post-PCR experiment containing at least one acquisition.

   Use an identical program for both cases (see the example below).

   We recommend that you use the Roche Run Template "Endpoint Genotyping (Pre-Post Read)" for both the pre-PCR experiment and the post-PCR experiment.

   Example:

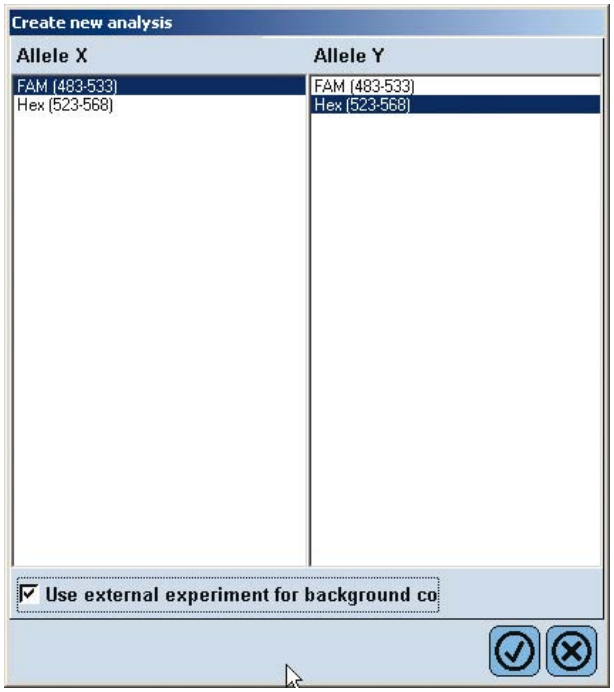
   Roche Run Template *Endpoint Genotyping (Pre-Post Read)*



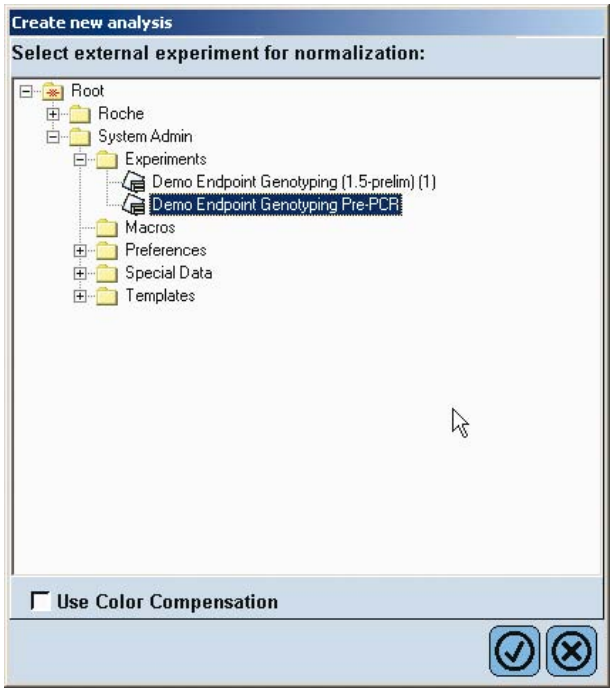
2. Define subsets and samples in the Post-PCR experiment as described in the section *To perform an Endpoint Genotyping experiment with PCR Read*.

▶▶▶

3 Create a new Endpoint Genotyping analysis. If a Pre Read experiment was performed, check *Use external experiment for background correction.*



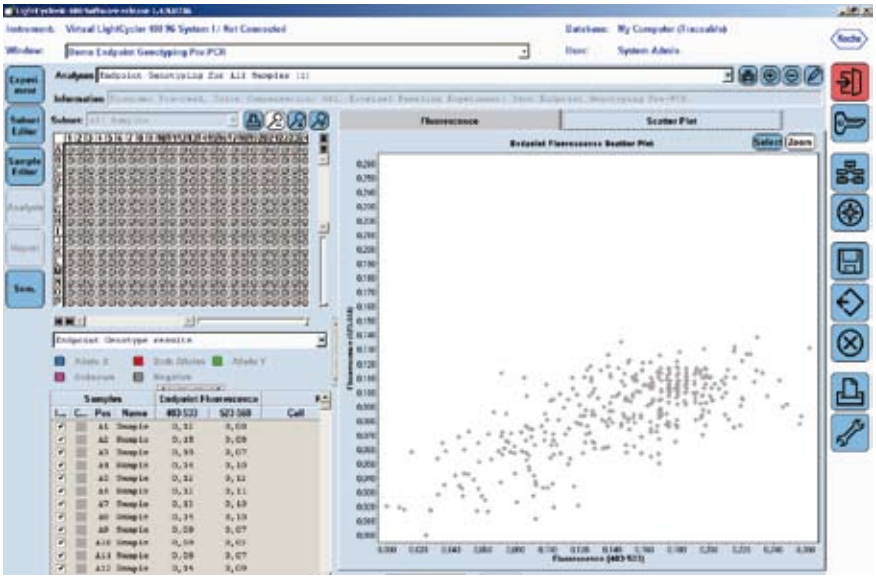
4 Select the Pre Read experiment in the *Navigator Window.*



Color Compensation is usually not necessary for Endpoint Genotyping analysis as the algorithm is stable against the influence of color crosstalk.

▶▶▶

5 The *Genotyping Analysis* screen opens.



6 Continue the analysis as described in the section *Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Analysis*.

6.2.4 Performing an Endpoint Genotyping Analysis

To perform an Endpoint Genotyping analysis:

1 Use the *Standards (In Run)* multi-select button to select the grouping method you want to apply.

Standards (In Run)	Applies grouping using genotyping standard samples included in the run. *If in the Sample Editor samples are defined as standard, this option is activated by default after creating the analysis.*
Auto Group	Applies automated grouping. *If in the Sample Editor no sample is defined as standard, this option is activated by default after creating the analysis.*

6

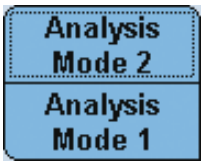
D

2 (Optional) The *Filter Comb* button displays the selected Filter Combinations for Genotyping. Click the button to change the filter combinations that will be used for genotyping.

(Optional) Color Compensation is usually not necessary for Endpoint Genotyping analysis, as the algorithm is stable against the influence of color crosstalk.

3 Use the *Analysis Mode* multi-select button to select the appropriate analysis algorithm setting.

In most cases both settings will result in correct grouping. If the groups are not separated properly (depending on the PCR chemistry used and the analyzed parameters), test both settings for optimized results.



4 On the *Results* tab of the *Sample Table*, exclude any samples you do not want to be included in result calculations.

5 Click the *Calculate* button.

The software calculates genotype groups and assigns a color and name to each group.

Genotype groups auto-called by the software are named with

- Allele X: samples that emit a dominant fluorescence signal with the filter combination selected for Allele X
- Both Alleles: samples that emit a strong fluorescence signal with both filter combinations
- Allele Y: samples that emit a dominant fluorescence signal with the filter combination selected for Allele Y
- Negative: samples that emit a weak or no fluorescence signal

If genotype standards are defined in the *Sample Editor*, the groups are named after the standard.

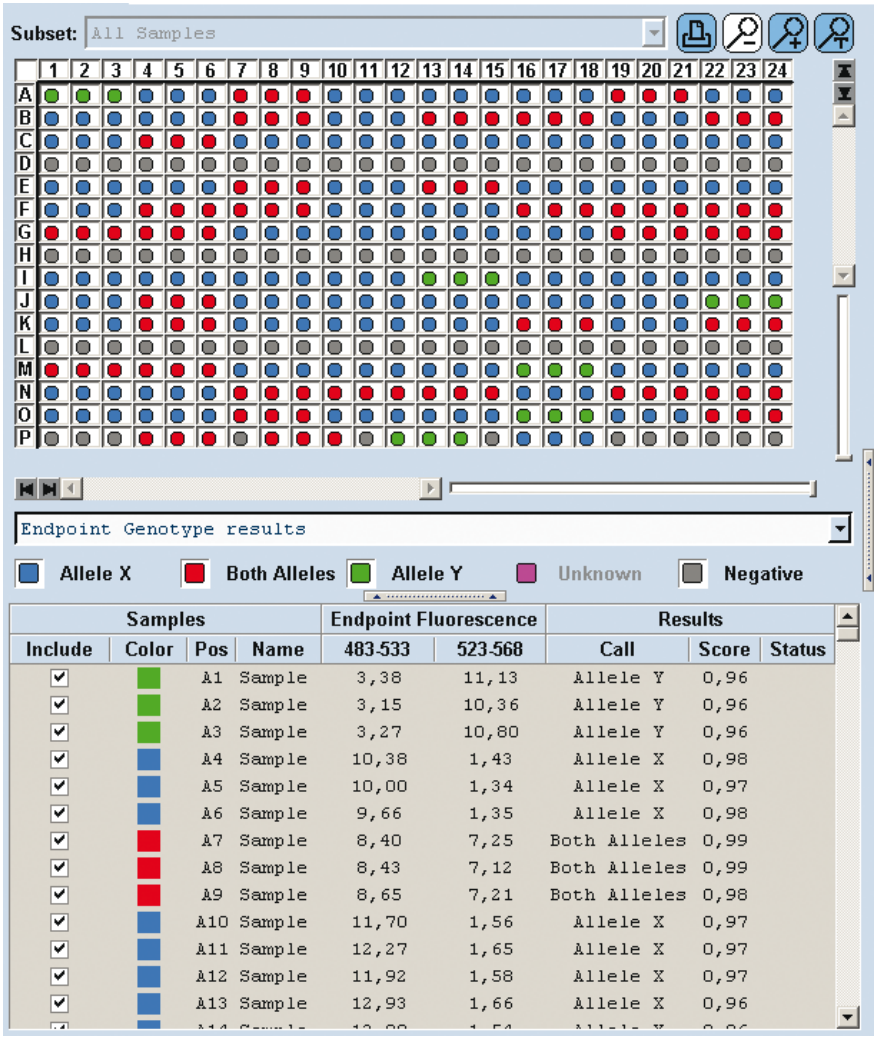
▶ ▶ ▶

6 When the calculation is completed, the results are displayed in the MWP image and the *Results* table.

Results of an Endpoint Genotyping analysis include the *Sample Selector* with *Legend Property Selector* and *Legend Property* buttons and the *Results* table.

Use the *Legend Property Selector* to display colors by result, by sample types, by sample preferences or by replicate groups. Use the colored *Legend Property* buttons to select display of samples with certain properties in the MWP image, the *Results* table and in the charts.

You can use the *Legend Property Selector* to select which *Legend Property* buttons are displayed. If you choose *Endpoint Genotype results,* the *Selector Filter* MWP image and *Results* table are displayed as follows:



Samples				Endpoint Fluorescence		Results		
Include	Color	Pos	Name	483-533	523-568	Call	Score	Status
☑		A1	Sample	3,38	11,13	Allele Y	0,96	
☑		A2	Sample	3,15	10,36	Allele Y	0,96	
☑		A3	Sample	3,27	10,80	Allele Y	0,96	
☑		A4	Sample	10,38	1,43	Allele X	0,98	
☑		A5	Sample	10,00	1,34	Allele X	0,97	
☑		A6	Sample	9,66	1,35	Allele X	0,98	
☑		A7	Sample	8,40	7,25	Both Alleles	0,99	
☑		A8	Sample	8,43	7,12	Both Alleles	0,99	
☑		A9	Sample	8,65	7,21	Both Alleles	0,98	
☑		A10	Sample	11,70	1,56	Allele X	0,97	
☑		A11	Sample	12,27	1,65	Allele X	0,97	
☑		A12	Sample	11,92	1,58	Allele X	0,97	
☑		A13	Sample	12,93	1,66	Allele X	0,96	

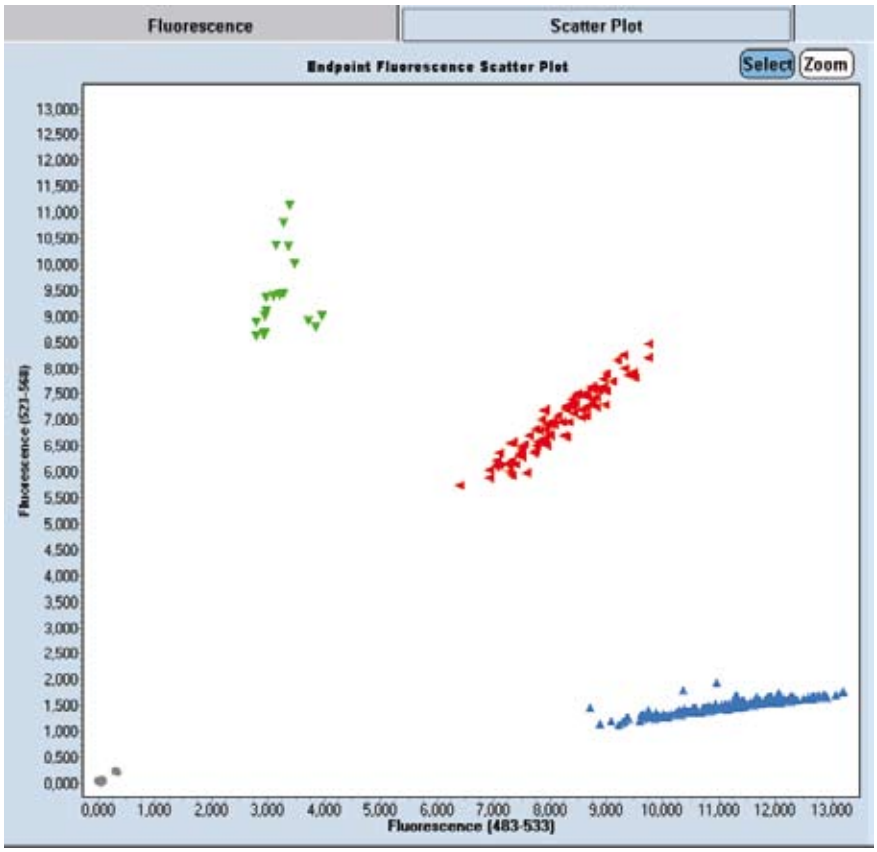
▶ ▶ ▶

The results include:

- Endpoint Fluorescence: Endpoint fluorescence measurement for both filter combinations (two decimal places)
- Call: Result of the genotyping analysis
- Score: Score of the sample (0-1, to two decimal places)
- Status: If the call is changed, the status of the result changes to “manually edited”.

For detailed information on the multiwell plate image and the *Results* table see section *Using the Analysis windows*.

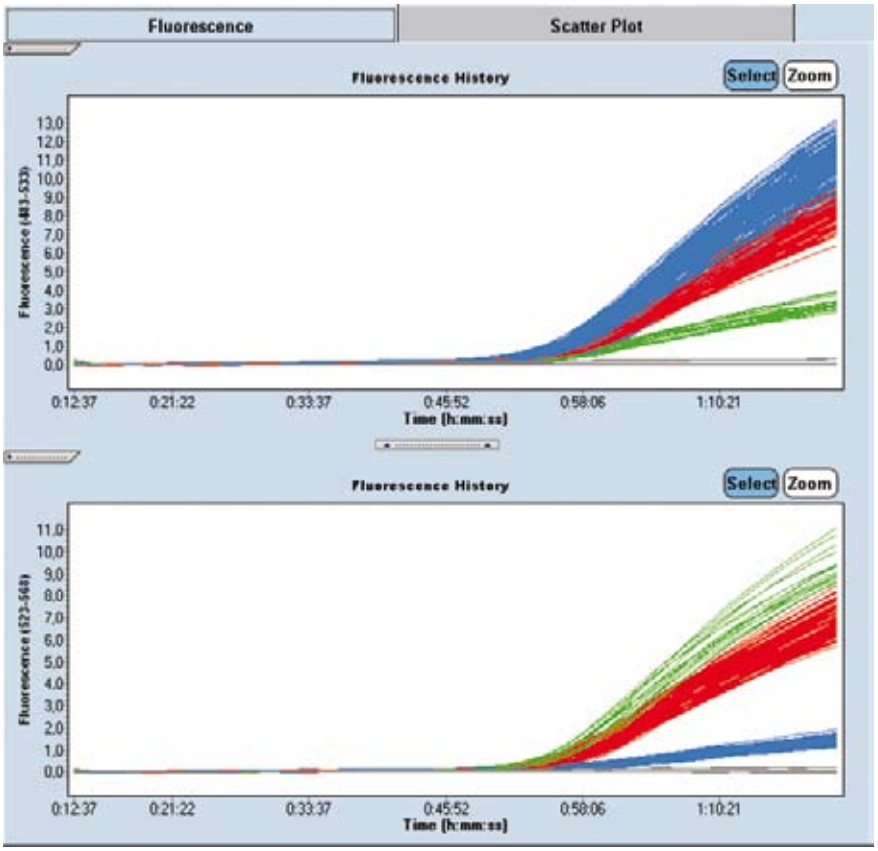
7 The Genotyping analysis displays the following charts:



The *Scatter Plot* displays the terminal fluorescence intensities. Every sample is displayed as a mark. High intensities in the *Allele X* filter combination are placed to the right, while high intensities in the *Allele Y* filter combination are placed upwards.

▶ ▶ ▶

By default the *Fluorescence* tab displays the standard *Fluorescence History*.
For detailed information on the charts see section *Working with Charts*.



8 Save the analysis by clicking the *Save* button.
Create a report by clicking the *Report* button. (See section *Generating Reports*.)

6

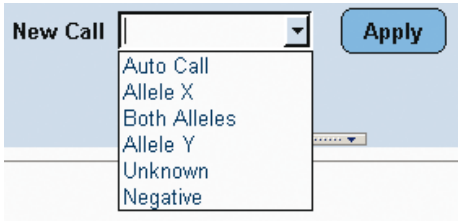
To change genotype calls:

You can manually change any genotype using the *New Call* option.

If you use *In-Run Standards* grouping, you cannot change the call for standards or negative controls. If you attempt to apply a new call to a selection that includes a used standard or control, the software will warn you that the selection includes standards or controls that cannot be changed, and asks you if you want to continue. If you choose to continue, the software will apply the changes to all samples except in-run standards and controls. If you choose not to continue, the operation will be canceled.

1. Select the samples to be changed (For details see section *Working with Samples in the Analysis*). All samples are selected by default.

2. From the *New Call* drop-down list below the chart area, select the new call.



Click the *Apply* button.

If you want to revert a sample to the automatically calculated call, change the genotype to *Auto Call*.

All changed calls are marked with the status "manually edited".

D

6.2.5 Supplementary Functions

Endpoint Genotyping Template

A Genotyping analysis template contains the following settings:

- Filter combination
- Color Compensation setting (off or current)
- Subset and program

When a template is applied, the software checks whether the current experiment contains a subset with the same name and the same well positions as the subset in the template.

- *If the current experiment does not contain a subset with the same name, the software creates the subset.*
- *If the current experiment does contain a subset with the same name, but the subset does not contain the same well positions as the subset in the template, the template cannot be applied.*

- Analysis name
- Standards (in-run or auto group)
- Analysis notes
- Experiment for background correction
- External baseline setting

When a template with an external baseline experiment is applied, the software displays a dialog where you can select the baseline experiment.

Result Control Concept

The LightCycler® 480 Endpoint Genotyping Software applies a control concept to assess whether the analysis has passed or failed.

The result control concept is only applied in the grouping mode *In Run Standards*. It is not applied for *Auto Group* analysis mode.

- Negative Controls
  - If every Negative Control is called negative, the control succeeds.
  - If any Negative Control is not called negative, the control fails.
  - If any Negative Control fails, the software will report no results and will inform you that the Negative Control has failed. The software will inform you which Negative Control has failed.
- Standards (act as positive controls)
  - If every Standard is called positive, the control succeeds.
  - If any Standard is not called positive, the control fails and the software will report no results. The software will inform you which Standards have failed.
  - If Standards with different names have the same call, the control fails.
  - If Standards with the same name have different calls, the control fails.

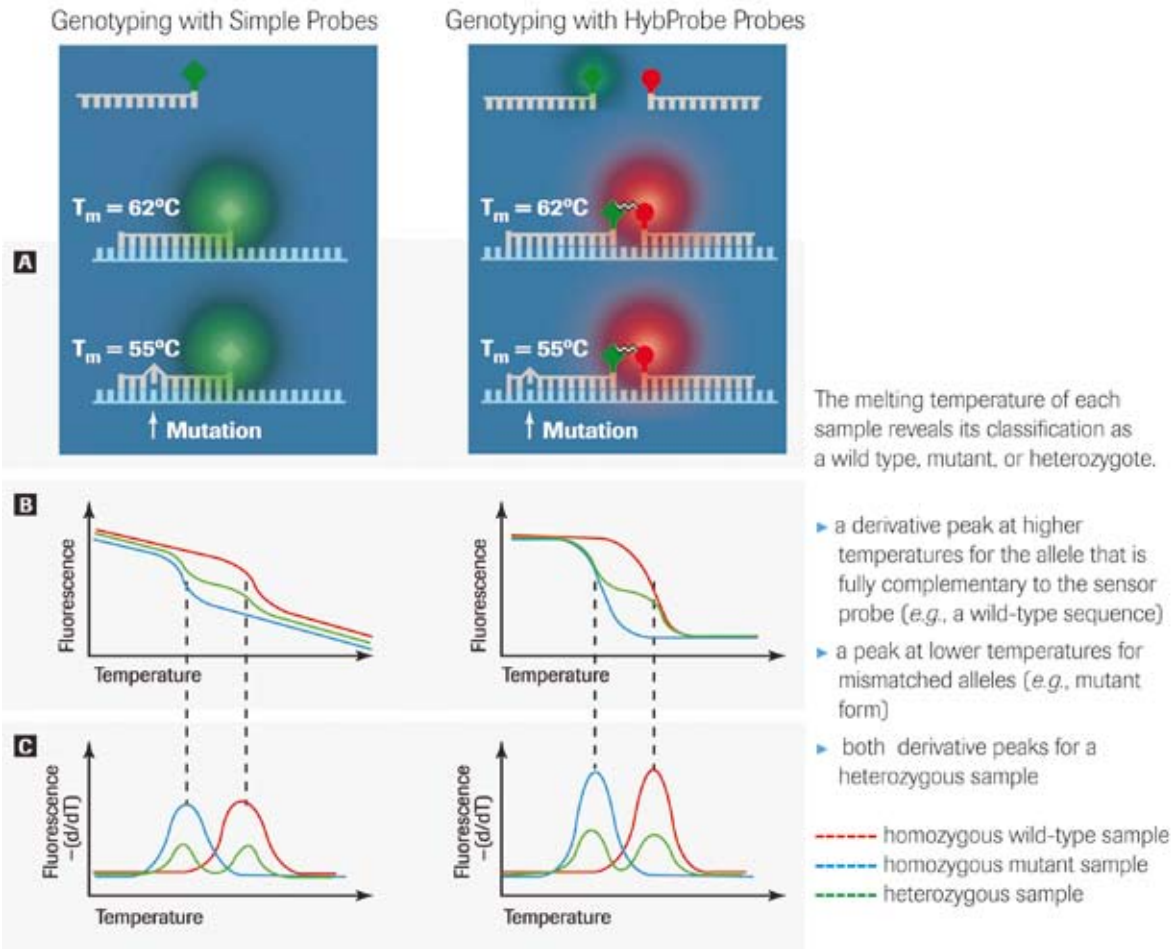
6.3 Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis

6.3.1 Overview

After PCR is performed, Melting Curve analysis looks at the temperature at which the two strands of a DNA double helix separate or melt. This temperature depends greatly on its sequence, length, and GC content. For melting curve genotyping experiments, sequence-specific probes that hybridize to the target DNA are added to a PCR and allowed to anneal to the reaction products. A melting curve is then generated by slowly heating the amplicon-probe heteroduplex and measuring the changes in fluorescence that result when the probe melts away from the amplicon. Even a single mismatch between the labeled probe and the amplicon (*e.g.*, a SNP) will show a significantly reduced melting temperature. Thus, probe-amplicon heteroduplexes containing destabilizing mismatches melt off at lower temperatures than probes bound to a perfectly matched target DNA.

By taking the negative first derivative, the melting profile of the heteroduplexes can be easily visualized and compared, simplifying discrimination into wildtype, heterozygous mutant, or homozygous mutant samples. LightCycler® 480 Melting Curve Genotyping Software then automatically calls genotypes based on differences in melting curve shapes.

Two different probe chemistries are available for genotyping by Melting Curve analysis: HybProbe and SimpleProbe (For more detailed information on the probe chemistries see section *Detection Formats for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument*.) HybProbe probes are easy to design and are well established. They employ the fluorescence resonance energy transfer or FRET principle, which is based on the energy transfer from one fluorescent molecule (*e.g.*, FLUOS) to another fluorescent molecule (*e.g.*, LightCycler® Red 640). Both molecules are bound to two separate oligonucleotide probes. This transfer only happens when both probes are annealed to the target DNA in close proximity, and is abolished as soon as the probes melt off. SimpleProbe probes consist of only one oligonucleotide, which carries a fluorescent dye and a quencher linked directly to each other. Because of their conformation, fluorescence is quenched in solution but activated after binding to the target sequence. With both probe formats, LightCycler® 480 Software monitors the decrease in fluorescence during the post PCR melting step.



Schematic representation of mutation detection with SimpleProbe (left) or HybProbe probes (right):
A: Destabilizing mismatches cause a significant reduction of melting temperature (Tm)
B: Melting curve
C: Derivative melting peaks

The LightCycler® 480 Melting Curve Genotyping Software then groups similar melting curves and automatically calls genotypes based on supplied standards and thresholds. The LightCycler® 480 Melting Curve Genotyping Software analysis screen shows a graphic representation of the multiwell plate with color-coded genotypes and a corresponding data table. For each sample, the table displays a called genotype, a Score, and a Resolution (for more information see section *Principle of Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis*).

6.3.2 Principle of Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis

LightCycler® 480 Melting Curve Genotyping Software groups samples with similar melting profiles together and identifies each group as a genotype. If you wish, you can import melting curves (external melting standards) for known genotypes and compare them to sample melting curves, or you can include melting standards in the experiment (in-run melting standards).

The raw data of an analysis is displayed as a melting curve graph of sample fluorescence versus temperature. The graph shows the downward curve in fluorescence for the samples as they melt. The display also includes a graph that plots the first negative derivative of the sample fluorescent curves. In this graph, the melting temperature of each sample appears as a peak. Displaying the melting temperatures as peaks makes it easier to distinguish each sample's characteristic melting profile and to discern differences between samples.

To determine genotypes, the software analyzes the shapes of all the melting curves. It compares each individual melting curve profile to a standard, and then makes a "call" (*i.e.*, groups the melting curves into genotypes). The software can use three types of melting standards:

- Software-defined melting standards (auto group analysis): The software employs algorithms that scan through all the samples and groups them based on similarity of melt profiles. The software then calculates a representative median melting curve for each individual group; this becomes the melting standard for that group.
- User-defined standard on plate (in-run melting standards): This option allows you to include one or more previously genotyped samples in the experiment. You can then specify one sample as a standard for that particular genotype. If more than one sample of a melting standard for the same genotype is included, then a median melting curve is calculated from all these samples and used as the standard.
- Previously defined standard (external melting standards): You can create an external melting standard object from a melting curve genotyping analysis and then import it into future runs. How to create external melting standards is described in section *To save an external melting standard object*.

LightCycler® 480 Melting Curve Genotyping Software applies a genotyping negative filter to classify two types of sample groups or calls:

- Positives, which are grouped into genotypes or Unknowns.
- Negatives

For the Positives, the software then compares melting curves of individual samples to the standard melting curves. Thereby it generates two numerical values to describe how closely individual sample curves can be classified with like curves.

- The first value is the Score. The score of a sample measures the similarity between the melting curves of a sample and the standard that is most similar to the sample. If the melting curves of a sample and a standard are identical, the score of that sample is 1. If the melting curve of the sample is unlike the melting curve of any of the standards, the score of that sample is nearly 0.
- The second value is the Resolution. The resolution of a sample measures the dissimilarity between the melting curve of the sample and the melting curve of the second most similar standard. If the melting curve of a sample is similar to the melting curve of only one standard, the resolution of that sample nearly equals the score of that sample. Alternatively, if the melting curve of a sample is quite similar to the melting curves of two of the standards, the resolution of that sample is nearly 0.

You can specify stringency thresholds for both score and resolution in the software. The threshold value for the score defines the required similarity of a sample to the best matching melting standard, while the threshold value for the resolution defines the required dissimilarity to the second best matching melting standard. The default values are 0.7 for the Score Threshold and 0.1 for the Resolution Threshold.

If both the score and resolution value of a sample meets the designated threshold, the sample is assigned to a genotyping group. If either the score or resolution value of a sample is below the designated threshold, the sample is called "Unknown".

6.3.3 Performing a Melting Curve Genotyping Experiment

You can perform a melting curve genotyping analysis on any experiment that contains a melting curve program. The Melting Curve Genotyping Software determines the genotypes of unknown samples by analyzing the shapes of the melting curves of all the samples and then grouping curves with similar shapes together. The median curve of each group is defined as the genotype standard for that group. The software compares the melting curves of individual samples to the standard genotype curves.

You can also include standards with known genotypes in the experiment, or import an object containing standards. In these cases, the software compares the melting curves of the individual samples to the designated standards.

The presence of a mutation introduces a mismatch that lowers the temperature at which the probe melts off the sequence. The melting temperature shift (ΔT_m) between a normal allele-probe match and a mutated allele-probe mismatch causes different fluorescence profiles, which indicate the presence of the mutation. The difference in melting temperature depends on the type of mismatch, the mismatch position within the probe sequence, and the base pairs immediately adjacent to the mismatch.

To perform a Melting Curve Genotyping experiment:

1. Perform an experiment containing an amplification program and a melting curve program.

   There must be at least 15 degrees of temperature data in the melting in the experiment in order to create a Melting Curve Genotyping analysis.

   Whether you need to include melting standard and control samples in your experiment depends on the analysis mode you want to apply:

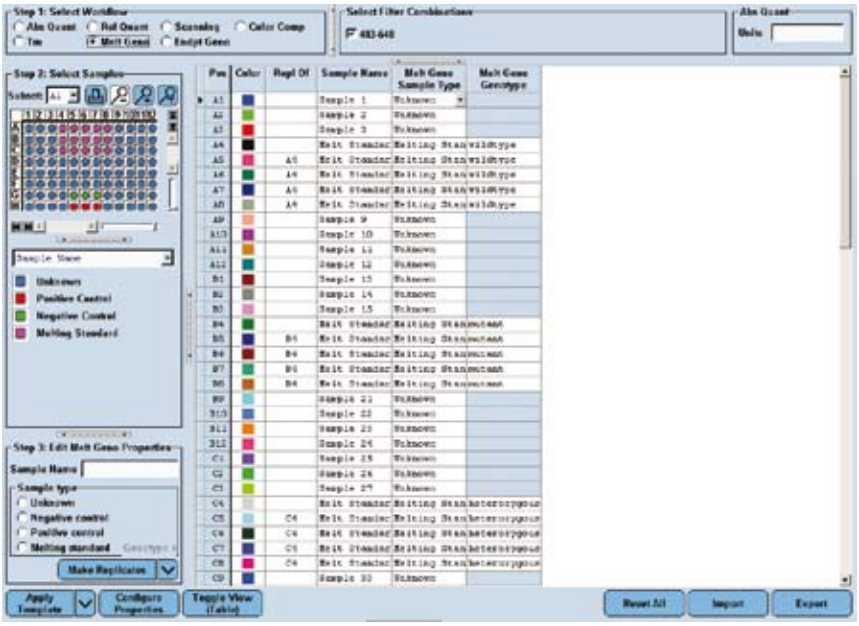
   - Auto Group analysis: no melting standard and control samples are required
   - In-run melting standards: include melting standard samples and (optionally) control samples
   - External melting standards: no melting standard samples are required, include optional control samples

▶ ▶ ▶

6

D

2 Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow *Melt Geno*.



3 Define the properties for the samples.

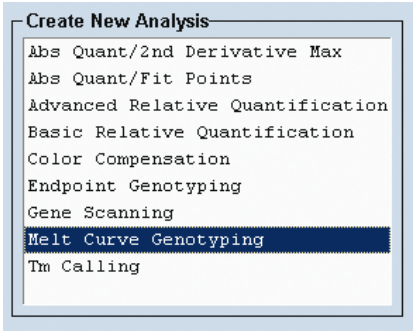
For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.

The software uses the following parameters for calculation:

Column Name	Description	Valid Values
Sample Type	Type of sample *In-run: You need to include a Melting Standard for any genotype you want to detect.* *You must annotate Positive Controls with a genotype, and a Positive Control can only be used with a Melting Standard of the same genotype.*	Choose from dropdown list: ▶ Unknown ▶ Positive Control ▶ Negative Control ▶ Melting Standard
Genotype	Genotype of melting standard or positive control samples. *This field is active only when the Sample Type is Melting Standard or Positive Control.*	Alphanumeric value (≤ 25 characters)

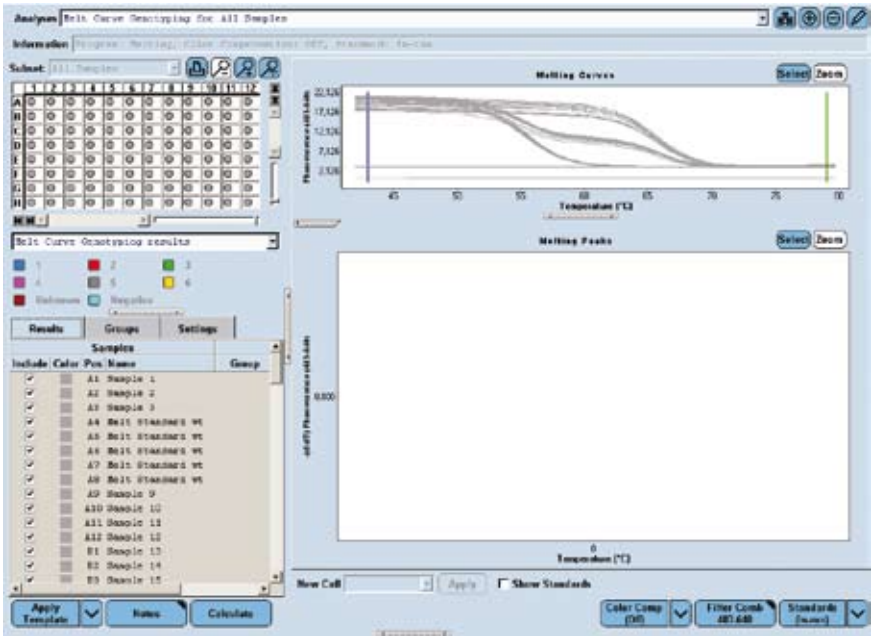
▶ ▶ ▶

4 Click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar. In the *Create New Analysis* dialog box, select *Melt Curve Genotyping*.



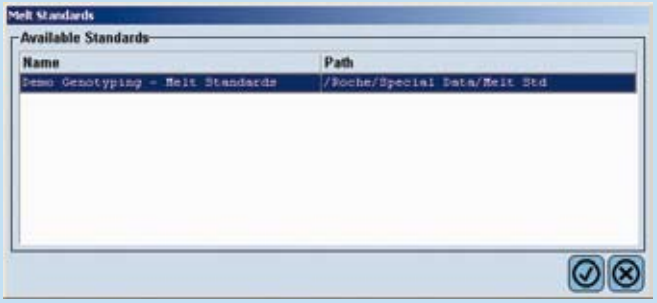
5 The *Create new analysis* dialog opens. Select an analysis subset and an experimental program from the *Program* list (this is usually the *Melting Curve* program). If you wish, you can change the analysis name (the default name is "*analysis type* for *subset name*"). Click .

6 The *Genotyping Analysis* screen opens.



To perform a Melting Curve Genotyping analysis:

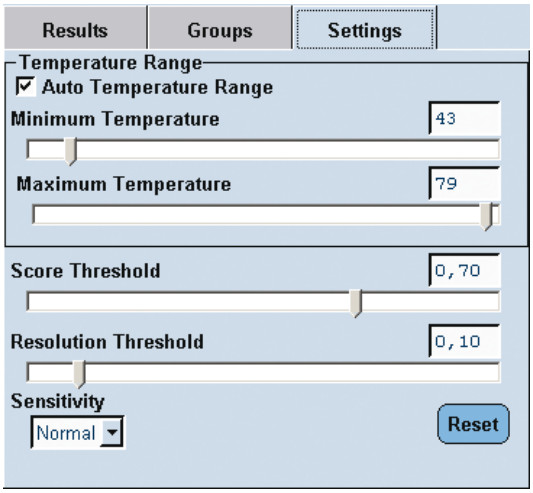
1. If this is a multicolor experiment, use the *Filter Comb* button to select the filter combination used to detect the target.
2. Use the *Color Compensation* multi-select button to turn Color Compensation on or off and to select a Color Compensation object.
3. Use the *Standards* multi-select button to select the grouping method you want to apply:

Auto Group	Applies automated grouping without melting standard samples. *If in the Sample Editor no sample is defined as melting standard, this option is activated by default after creating the analysis.*
In-run	Applies grouping using melting standard samples included in the run. *If in the Sample Editor samples are defined as melting standard, this option is activated by default after creating the analysis.*
External	Applies grouping using melting standards saved from another run. Use this option to import a previously saved external melting standard object. A dialog opens which lets you select a suited external melting standard object from the database:  *The external melting standard object must have been created from an experiment with the same filter combination and Color Compensation data (if any) as the current experiment. Further, you must have user rights to use the object. If no appropriate melting standard object is available in your database, a warning message appears.* If you change the filter combination or CC status and this change makes the current external melting standard object invalid, the software asks you if you want to select a new external melting standard. If you click *OK*, an external melting standard selection dialog opens. If you select *No* or cancel the selection dialog, auto grouping analysis mode is used.

Select 'Save as ext' if you would like to save the melting standards included in the experiment as an external melting standard object for use with other experiments. This option is only active after you calculated an analysis.

▶ ▶ ▶

4 Click the *Settings* tab in the *Sample Table* to modify the analysis setting:



- **Temperature Range:** The option *Auto Temperature Range* is selected by default. In this case, the software will automatically set the temperature range. Although it is recommended that you use the automated option, you can also set the temperature range used to compute genotype calls manually by dragging the *Minimum Temperature* and *Maximum Temperature* sliders or editing the text box (*e.g.,* if you want to exclude experimental artifacts at the beginning or end of the melting curve from the analysis).
  - *Minimum Temperature*: Set the temperature at which the melting analysis is to begin.
  - *Maximum Temperature*: Set the temperature at which the melt analysis is to end.
- **Thresholds:** You can adjust both the *Score Threshold* and *Resolution Threshold* to refine the genotyping results. For example, you can increase the Score Threshold to require that samples more closely match a genotype standard before they can be classified as that genotype. Both thresholds (score and resolution) have values between 0 and 1, with a larger number representing a better score or resolution. That is, if the score and resolution of a curve both equal 1, the curve is identical to its group's standard, and is very dissimilar to all other standards. A sample that has either a score or resolution value below its respective threshold will be classified as an "unknown" genotype.
  - You can use the slider bars or edit the text boxes to reduce or increase stringency.

  The default values are 0.7 for the Score Threshold and 0.1 for the Resolution Threshold (recommended for initial analysis). These values provide a reasonable balance between producing too many unknowns and making possible wrong calls. As you raise the thresholds, you increase the chance that a good melt will be called an unknown. As you lower the thresholds, you increase the chance that a significantly different melting curve will be incorrectly included in a genotype group. Anyhow, always optimize the thresholds for the specific assay performed.
- **Sensitivity:** The *Sensitivity* function lets you influence the sensitivity with which melting peaks are grouped into different Genotyping groups.
  - *Normal* is the default setting: it generates in maximum six genotyping groups. If you are not satisfied with the accuracy of the "Normal" setting and want to separate the melting peaks into more different groups, select *High*.
  - *High* associates melting peaks with higher sensitivity into different groups. *High* generates in maximum nine genotyping groups.
- Use the *Reset* button to reset all fields to the default values.

5 On the *Results* tab of the *Sample Table*, exclude any samples you do not want to be included in result calculations.

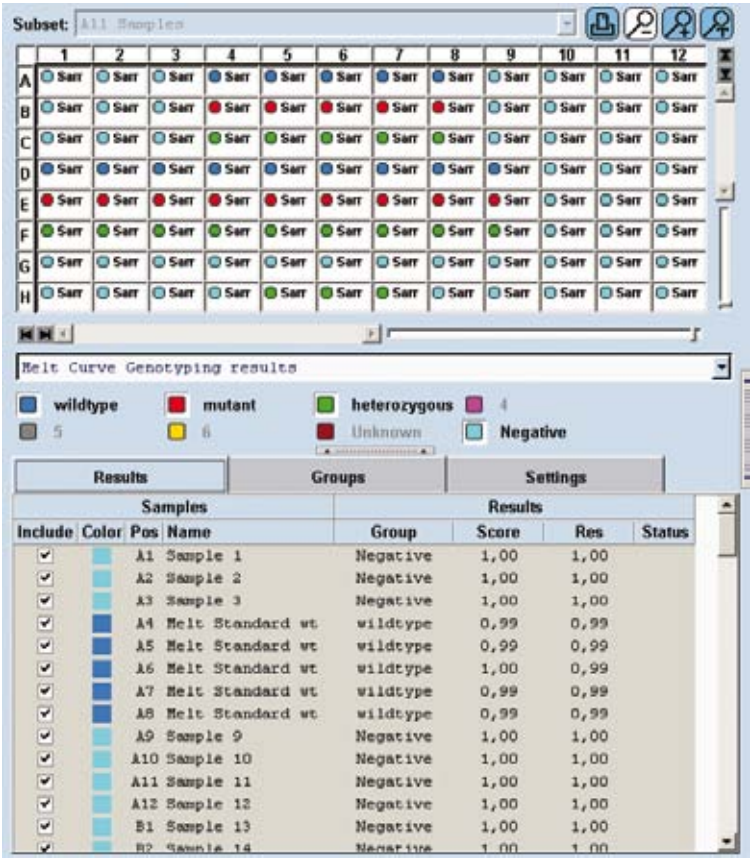
▶ ▶ ▶

6

D

6. Click the *Calculate* button.
   The software calculates genotype groups and assigns a color and name to each group.

7. When the calculation is completed, the results are displayed in the MWP image and the *Results* table.
   Results of a Melting Genotyping analysis include the *Sample Selector* with *Legend Property Selector* and *Legend Property* buttons and the *Results* table.
   Use the *Legend Property Selector* to display colors by result, by sample types, by sample preferences or by replicate groups. Use the colored *Legend Property* buttons to select display of samples with certain properties in the MWP image, the *Results* table and in the charts.
   If you choose *Melt Curve Genotyping results*, the MWP image and *Results* table are displayed as follows:



- *Group*: Name of the genotype group to which this sample is assigned

  Genotype groups auto-called by the software are named with sequential numbers (1, 2, etc.), while groups based on in-run or imported melting standards are named using the genotype name from the Sample Editor or external standard.

- *Score*: Score of the sample (0-1, with two decimal places)
- *Res*: Resolution of the sample (0-1, with two decimal places)
- *Status*: Status for manually edited calls

▶ ▶ ▶

8 The *Legend Property* buttons display

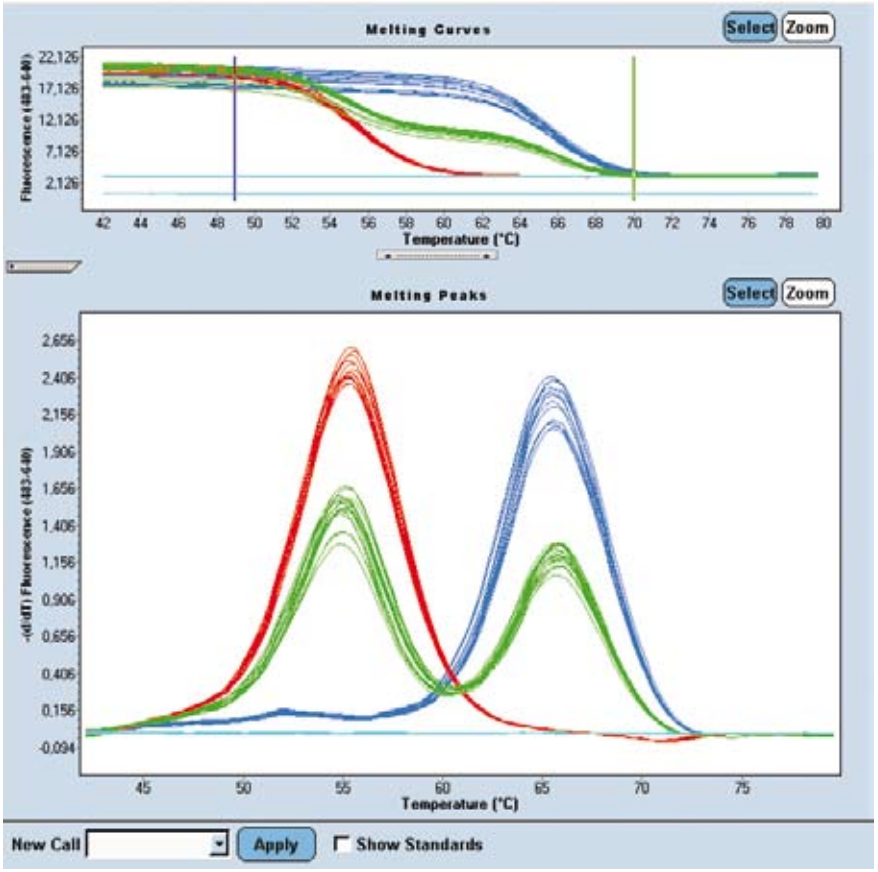
- 9 genotype groups (if you selected high-sensitivity) or 6 genotype groups (if you selected normal sensitivity).
- Negative and Unknown genotype groups

Each checkbox has a label displaying the color assigned to the group and a text label for the genotype or group name.

Checkboxes are displayed, even if the groups are not found in the data.

Clicking a checkbox causes the wells associated with that group to be selected in the *Sample Selector* and to be highlighted in the color associated with the group.

9 The Melting Curve Genotyping analysis displays the following charts:



- Upper chart: *Melting Curves*, which charts sample fluorescence versus temperature. The chart shows the downward curve in fluorescence for the samples as they melt.

  The *Melting Curves* chart displays vertical bars that indicate the beginning (blue bar) and the end (green bar) of the selected temperature range. You can change the min and max temperature by dragging the bars. This is equivalent to changing the *Temperature Range* values on the *Settings* tab.

  If the "Auto Temperature Range" option is selected and you drag a temperature bar, the option will automatically be unchecked.

- Lower chart: By default the lower charts displays *Melting Peaks*, which plots the negative first derivative of the sample fluorescent curves. In this chart, the melting temperature of each sample appears as a peak.

  If the lower chart displays a Fluorescence History chart, you can view any program (amplification or melt) and any filter combination.

For a detailed description of the *Analysis* window see section *Using the Analysis Window*.

▶ ▶ ▶

10 By checking the *Show Standards* box, you can display the curves of the melting standards in the charts.

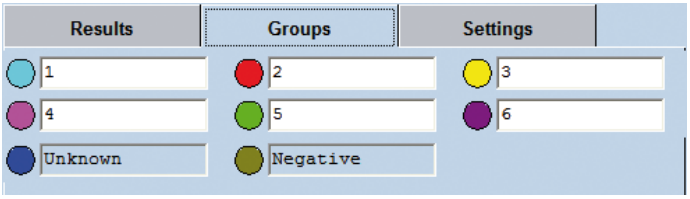
6

To rename genotype groups:

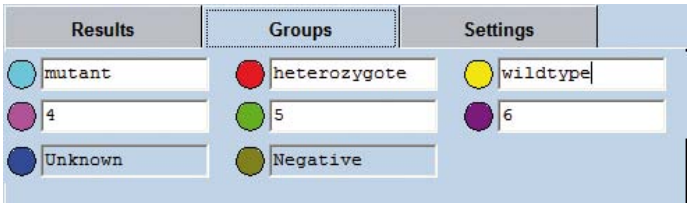
On the *Groups* tab of the *Sample Table*, you can change the name associated with each genotype.

You can edit group names only for groups generated by Auto Group analysis mode, but not for groups generated based on internal or external melting standards. You cannot change Negative or Unknown group names or the number of group boxes that are displayed.

1 On the Groups tab, double-click the field for the group name.



2 Type a new name in the field. The new name is immediately applied to the Sample Selector and Results table.

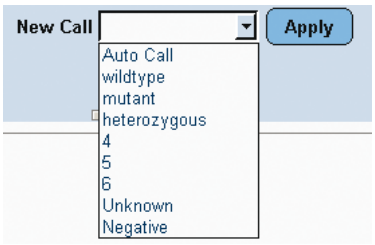


D

To change genotype calls:

If you believe the software has not correctly called a sample, you can manually change the genotype using the *New Call* option.

1. Select the samples to be changed.
   For a description of the *Results* table see section *Working with Samples in the Analysis*.
2. From the *New Call* drop-down list below the chart area, select a genotype group name, or Unknown or Negative.



3. Click the *Apply* button.
4. Selecting a genotype group from the *New Call* list and clicking *Apply*, changes all samples currently displayed in the charts to the new call.
   Selecting *Auto Call* from the *New Call* list and clicking *Apply* causes all samples currently displayed in the charts to revert to their automatically calculated calls.

   *All manually modified calls are marked in the Results table and in reports. The status column in the Results table has a colored background and displays the text *-Manually edited.*

   You cannot edit the call for positive controls or negative controls. When in-run standards are selected, you are not able to edit the call for in-run standards. If you attempt to apply a new call to a selection that includes an in-run standard or control, the software will warn you that the selection includes in-run standards or controls that cannot be changed, and asks you if you want to continue. If you choose to continue, the software will apply the changes to all samples except in-run standards and controls. If you choose not to continue, the operation will be canceled.

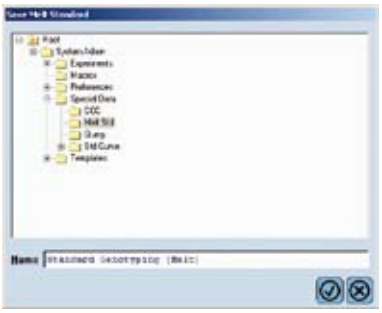
To save an external melting standard object:

A melting standard object consists of the melting curve data of known genotypes. You can create an external melting standard object from any calculated Genotyping analysis that either contains in-run melting standards or is generated by *Auto Group* analysis mode.

To save an external melting standard object, it is not necessary that melting standard samples are defined in the Sample Editor. If melting standards are saved from an Auto Group analysis, the median sample of each individual group is saved as a melting standard. The samples selected as group specific melting standards can be visualized by selecting the Show Standards checkbox.

1. Click the *Standards* multi-select button and select *Save as ext.*

2. In the *Save Melt Standard* dialog select a destination to save the object. The default location is the *Melt Std* folder within the *Special Data* directory.



6.3.4 Supplementary Functions

Melting Curve Genotyping Analysis Template

A Genotyping analysis template contains the following settings:

- Filter combination
- Color Compensation setting (off or current)
- Subset and program

When a template is applied, the software checks whether the current experiment contains a subset with the same name and the same well positions as the subset in the template.

- *If the current experiment does not contain a subset with the same name, the software creates the subset.*
- *If the current experiment does contain a subset with the same name, but the subset does not contain the same well positions as the subset in the template, the template cannot be applied.*

- Analysis name
- Melt Standards (auto group, in-run, or external)
- Analysis notes
- Min/max temp and optimize temperature setting, score threshold, resolution threshold, and sensitivity

Result Control Concept

The LightCycler® 480 Genotyping Software applies a control concept to assess whether the analysis has passed or failed. The result control concept is only applied when internal or external melting standards are used; it is not applied for *Auto Group* analysis mode.

- Positive Controls
  - If every Positive Control is called positive and matches its assigned genotype, the control succeeds.
  - If any Positive Control is called positive but does not match its assigned genotype, the control fails.
  - If any Positive Control is called negative the control fails.
  - If any Positive Control fails, the software will report no genotypes and will inform you that the Positive Control has failed.
- Negative Controls
  - If every Negative Control is called negative, the control succeeds.
  - If any Negative Control is not called negative, the control fails.
  - If any Negative Control fails, the software will report no genotypes and will inform you that the Negative Control has failed.

- Melting Standards
  - If any Melting Standard is not called positive by the algorithm, the software will report no genotypes.
  - If Melting Standards for the same genotype are not grouped together by the auto group function with the user-defined parameters, the software will report no genotypes.
  - If Melting Standards of different groups are called in the same group by the auto group function with the user-defined parameters, the software will report no genotypes.
  - If any Melting Standard fails, the software will inform you that a Melting Standard has failed.

Advanced Software Functionalities

Introduction to Color Compensation analysis and description of the use of advanced software tools (e.g., templates and macros)

Advanced Software Functionalities

7 Color Compensation Analysis

The LightCycler® 480 System is able to simultaneously detect and analyze more than one fluorescent signal in each reaction. By this means, different target sequences can be detected in one reaction. Due to overlap of the emission spectra of the dyes, one filter combination may pick up signals from a dye measured by another channel, a phenomenon called "crosstalk". Although each emission filter is optimized for a specific emission maximum, all fluorescent dyes currently available have emission spectra with long "tails," leading to this spectral overlap. This bleed-over of fluorescence signal can result in misinterpretation of data. To correct the crosstalk, Color Compensation can be applied before data analysis. When Color Compensation is activated, LightCycler® 480 Software algorithms use the data from a so-called Color Compensation (CC) object to compensate for the fluorescence crosstalk.

Color Compensation is only necessary when you run an experiment where you want to detect two or more different dyes in one reaction. Color Compensation is not required when the experiment uses only a single dye.

You can easily correct the spectral overlap described above by applying a Color Compensation object to your experiment. During a Color Compensation run, from which the CC object is generated, the LightCycler® 480 Instrument measures the fluorescence of each dye and generates an instrument-specific Color Compensation object. Later, the LightCycler® 480 Software automatically uses this so-called CC object to reassign the fluorescence in each channel to the appropriate dye. The net result is detection of only one dye signal in each channel.

A CC object can only be applied to experiments that were run on the same LightCycler® 480 Instrument it was created on.

Universal Color Compensation Objects

LightCycler® 480 Software provides predefined universal Color Compensation objects (universal CC objects), which you can apply to an experiment. You will find the universal CC objects in the *Roche* folder of the *Navigator* window.

- LightCycler 480 Instruments II: Universal CC objects can be applied to two types of experiments:
  - Dual Color hydrolysis probes experiments using FAM and VIC dyes with filter combinations 465-510 (FAM) and 533-580 (VIC).
  - Dual Color UPL Probes experiments using FAM and Yellow 555 dyes with filter combinations 465-510 (FAM) and 533-580 (Yellow555).

  For all other dye combinations, no universal CC objects are provided. Other dye combinations running with LC480 System II instruments require the generation of instrument-specific CC objects by the user. For more information, see section *Performing a Color Compensation Experiment.*

- LightCycler 480 Instruments I: Requires instrument-specific CC objects generated by the user for all filter and dye combinations including FAM/VIC and FAM/Yellow555."

Using Color Compensation

To use Color Compensation, you must perform the following steps:

- If you do not want to use a universal CC object, run a Color Compensation experiment on the instrument where you are going to perform the multiplexed experiments. The Color Compensation experiment gathers the data needed to compensate for the fluorescence bleed-over. From the Color Compensation experiment, create a Color Compensation object. For more information, see section *Performing a Color Compensation Experiment*.
- Apply the Color Compensation information when you perform the experiment or when you analyze the experiment. For more information, see section *To Apply Color Compensation*.

7.1 Performing a Color Compensation Experiment

The temperature profile used in a Color Compensation protocol always includes a heating, cycling, temperature gradient and cooling program. The cycling program mimics a typical PCR, including data acquisition. Instead of running a separate Color Compensation experiment, you can also run the Color Compensation reactions in parallel to your experimental samples. In this case, apply the appropriate experimental PCR protocol, but always add a temperature gradient or melting curves program.

For hydrolysis probe Color Compensation runs it is obligatory to perform a real PCR, as cleavage of the probe by the Taq DNA polymerase during cycling is required to generate a fluorescent signal.

The data required for Color Compensation are taken from the temperature gradient program. In this program, after a brief denaturation (95°C), the protocol slowly increases the temperature from 40°C to an end temperature that should be approximately 5°C above the temperature the fluorescent signal is usually measured during an experimental run. During the temperature gradient fluorescence is measured at a rate of 1 acquisition/°C. If you run HybProbe probe Color Compensation reactions in parallel to experimental samples you can also apply a melting curves program used for later T_m Calling analysis.

The optimal acquisition rate for Melting Curve analysis has to be determined empirically for each assay and can range from 1 to 5 acquisitions/°C.

After the Color Compensation run, the LightCycler® 480 Software saves the data generated as a normal experimental file. For these data to be used for Color Compensation, you must first convert the data of the temperature gradient or melting curves program into a CC object and save it separately.

For both HybProbe and hydrolysis probes it is sufficient to generate one Color Compensation object per dye combination used irrespective of the specific probe sequence applied in your experiments. Nevertheless, in certain cases where insufficient Color Compensation is observed, the situation might be improved by creating an assay-specific CC object.

You need to create a new CC object only after the optics module of your instrument was exchanged. It is not necessary to create new CC objects after a Xenon lamp exchange, because Color Compensation is independent from light intensity, or after moving the instrument.

In some multicolor assays, for example assays with FAM- and VIC/HEX-labeled hydrolysis probes, you may observe a negative amplification curve which results from overcompensation when applying inadequate Color Compensation; you may also observe slightly increasing curves, that you would have expected to be negative resulting from remaining crosstalk from the adjacent channel also caused by inadequate Color Compensation. If you use the High Sensitivity algorithm of the Absolute Quantification – Second Derivative Maximum method, this can lead to false positive callings. For such assays it is therefore highly recommended that you either apply the High Confidence algorithm or use the Absolute Quantification – Fit Points method. See the following section for details on how to improve insufficient Color Compensation.

Preferably, use dyes which are not detected in adjacent channels. Some dye combinations used in dualcolor hydrolysis probe assays need even no Color Compensation at all. These are:

LightCycler® 480 Instrument I	LightCycler® 480 Instrument II
Cyan 500 (450-500) – Red 610 (558-610)	Cyan 500 (440-488) – Red 610 (533-610)
Cyan 500 (450-500) – Red 640 (558-640)	Cyan 500 (440-488) – Red 640 (618-660)
Cyan 500 (450-500) – Cy 5 (615-670)	Cyan 500 (440-488) – Cy 5 (618-660)
FAM (483-533) – Red 610 (558-610)	FAM (456-510) – Red 610 (533-610)
FAM (483-533) – Red 640 (558-640)	FAM (456-510) – Red 640 (618-660)
FAM (483-533) – Cy5 (615-670)	FAM (456-510) – Cy5 (618-660)
HEX / VIC (523-568) – Cy5 (615-670)	HEX / VIC (533-580) – Cy5 (618-660)

Using these dye combinations will reduce the complexity of your assay validation drastically.

Examples for Possible Dye Combinations for Dual- or Multi-Color Applications

LightCycler® 480 Instrument I, HybProbe probes:

Excitation Filter	Detection Filter	Dye	CC Object necessary
483		FAM	Yes
	610	LightCycler® Red 610	
	670	Cy 5	
450		Cyan 500	Yes
	568	Rhodamin 6G	
	610	LightCycler® Red 610	
	670	Cy 5	

LightCycler® 480 Instrument I, hydrolysis probes:

Excitation Filter	Detection Filter	Dye	CC Object necessary
483	533	FAM	No
558	610	LightCycler® Red 610	
483	533	FAM	Yes
558	610	LightCycler® Red 610	
615	670	Cy 5	
450	500	Cyan 500	Yes
483	533	FAM	
523	568	VIC / HEX	
558	610	LightCycler® Red 610	
615	670	Cy 5	

LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, HybProbe probes:

Excitation Filter	Detection Filter	Dye	CC Object necessary
498		FAM	Yes
	610	LightCycler® Red 610	
	660	Cy 5	
440		Cyan 500	Yes
	580	Rhodamin 6G	
	610	LightCycler® Red 610	
	660	Cy 5	

LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, hydrolysis probes:

Excitation Filter	Detection Filter	Dye	CC Object necessary
465 533	510 580	FAM VIC / HEX	Yes, universal CC object
465 533	510 610	FAM LightCycler® Red 610	No
465 533 618	510 610 660	FAM LightCycler® Red 610 Cy 5	Yes
440 498 533 618	488 580 610 660	Cyan 500 FAM LightCycler® Red 610 Cy 5	Yes

In the case of insufficient Color Compensation leading to overcompensation or remaining crosstalk we recommend the following:

- If you do not want to change your current dye labels: Adjust the fluorescence height of adjacent channels to an equal level (*e.g.*, if the maximum fluorescence of FAM measured in channel 533 is 40 units and the fluorescence of VIC measured in channel 568 is just 10 units, reduce the amount of FAM to a level of 10 to 20 units).

  Note: Short-wavelength dyes usually have a greater fluorescence emission than long-wavelength dyes.

- For multicolor hydrolysis probe assays, it is strongly recommended that you use a non-fluorescent quencher dyes (*i.e.*, dye molecules which efficiently quench the fluorescence of a FRET reporter dye without emitting fluorescence themselves). Roche Applied Science recommends the use of BHQ-2 for all hydrolysis probe reporter dyes covered by the Multicolor Hydrolysis Probe Detection Format. Alternatively, DABCYL can be used with a little lower quenching efficiency.
- In general, you can use the same hydrolysis or HybProbe probe concentration in multicolor experiments as in monocolor experiments. That is 0.05 - 0.2 µM for individual hydrolysis probes, or 0.1 - 0.3 µM for HybProbe acceptor probes. The concentration of donor (FLUOS-labeled) HybProbe probes should be 0.2 µM, whereas the total concentration of FLUOS-labeled donor HybProbe probes in the mix should not exceed 1.2 µM. Prepare an equimolar mix of all the donor HybProbe probes to be used in your assay.

  Check the quality of the dyes and probes that you use. High amounts of free unlabeled dye can cause a high background signal that might impact Color Compensation.

Check the design of your probes. In rare cases the way a probe is synthesized and modified might have an impact on Color Compensation. Contact your licensed oligonucleotide supplier for further information (*e.g.*, TIB MOLBIOL: www.tib-molbiol.com).

- Especially for multicolor HybProbe assays, there is potential to improve Color Compensation by creating an assay-specific color-compensation object, *i.e.,* in the color-compensation run use exactly the same probes you will use in your experiment.
- In the LightCycler® 480 Software check that all dyes used have an exposure time that is greater than 40 ms. When using too high dye concentrations it may occur that the signal exceeds the linear range of the CCD camera. If that is the case, lower the concentration of the corresponding probe.
- For the generation of a CC object, prepare a minimum of 5 replicate Color Compensation reactions.
- For quantifying multicolor experiments requiring Color Compensation use either the Absolute Quantification – Second Derivative Maximum analysis method in combination with the High Confidence algorithm or the Absolute Quantification – Fit Points analysis method. Use of the Absolute Quantification – Second Derivative Maximum analysis method in combination with the High Sensitivity algorithm is not recommended.

To run a Color Compensation experiment:

1. Prepare a minimum of 5 replicate Color Compensation reactions for each fluorescence dye you need to compensate in your experiment, including a blank (*i.e.,* set up monocolor reactions not the multi color reactions you want to run with your experimental samples).
   - For a HybProbe Color Compensation experiment do not use the HybProbe probe pairs (donor-acceptor probes) but the individual probe oligonucleotides only. Prepare complete PCR mixes.
   - For a hydrolysis probe Color Compensation experiment set up and run complete amplification reactions according to your experimental protocol. Each reaction (except the blank) should contain one of the hydrolysis probes that will go into your multicolor hydrolysis probe assay. Use the same hydrolysis probe concentration as in your experiment.

   Setting up and performing an amplification reaction using hydrolysis probes requires the cleavage of the hydrolysis probe and the release of the reporter dye from the quencher. Otherwise, no fluorescence signal required for Color Compensation will be generated.

   For the blank (the sample designated "Water" on the Sample Editor's 'Color Comp' tab), use a complete PCR mix, but omit the probes

►►►

7

D

2 Open LightCycler® 480 Software and, using the same program settings you plan to use for your multicolor experiment.

- Create a Color Compensation experiment that has one temperature gradient program with the following segments:

  Segment 1: 95ºC for 0 seconds at 4.8ºC/sec.

  Segment 2: 40ºC for 30 seconds at 2.5ºC/sec.

  Segment 3: XºC for 0 seconds at 1 acquisition/°C, continuous; X = experimental measurement temperature +5°C.

- Enter the following information, if needed:

  Test ID: String that identifies the probe combination used for the Color Compensation experiment.

  Lot No: String that identifies the reaction mix used for the Color Compensation experiment.

  Color Comp ID: String that correlates the Color Compensation object to an experiment with identical Color Compensation ID.

  When a Color Compensation ID is entered, only Color Compensation objects with matching ID can be applied to an experiment.

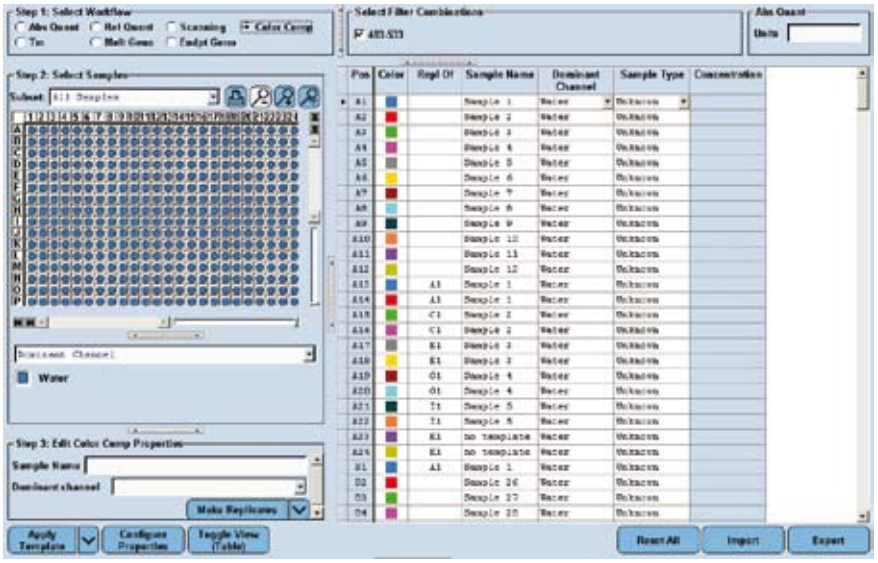
  When a Color Compensation ID is entered, only Color Compensation objects with matching ID can be applied to an experiment.
  Especially when working with the LightCycler® 480 LIMS/Bar-Code Module, this ID number is highly convenient for the correct identification of Color Compensation objects in combination with macros. If you saved a macro with the “smart select Color Compensation” option, you can select the appropriate CC object, when starting the macro remotely via LIMS, by submitting the Color Comp ID.

- For the temperature gradient program, select *Color Compensation* in the *Analysis Mode* field.

  If a Melting Curve analysis is performed in parallel wells of the multiwell plate in the same run, select Melting Curves in the Analysis Mode field. It is possible to perform a Color Compensation analysis from a melting curve program, but it is in turn not possible to perform a T_m calling analysis from a Color Compensation program.

▶ ▶ ▶

3 Click *Sample Editor* in the *Module* bar and select the workflow *Color Comp*.



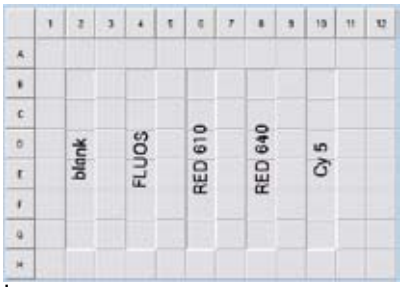
Define the properties of the samples.

For detailed information on the *Sample Editor* see section *Entering Sample Information*.

The software uses the following parameters for calculation:

Column Name	Valid Values	Description
Dominant Channel	The possible values are displayed in the dropdown list depending on the experiment.	The channel used for the dye in this well. Select the appropriate filter combination for each additional well.

4 Pipette the reactions into the multiwell plate, *e.g.*, a typical setup might look as below.



5 When the experiment is finished, click *Analysis* in the *Module* bar.

6 From the *Create New Analysis* list, select *Color Compensation*.

In the *Create new analysis* dialog, select an analysis subset and a program in the experiment (typically there is only one program, which is selected by default). Click .

7 Click *Calculate* on the *Action button* area to perform the Color Compensation analysis.

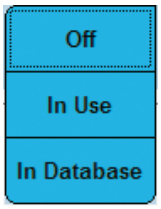
8 Click *Save CC Object*. By default, the *CCC folder* in your *Special Data* folder is selected as location.

You can now apply the Color Compensation data to another experiment. For more information, see the following section.

7.2 To Apply Color Compensation

1. First, select the filter combination you want to display and compensate by using the *Filter Comb* button.

2. ▶ To apply Color Compensation during an experiment run, click the arrow-down button *Color Comp*. Select between the options *In Use* or *In Database*.
   ▶ To apply Color Compensation to an analysis, add the analysis module, and click the arrow-down button. Select between the options *In Use* or *In Database*.



3. Select the Color Compensation object you want to apply, and click *OK*.

   After you select an object for an analysis, the object name is added to the Color Compensation menu for all analysis modules added to this experiment.

4. The experiment or the analysis charts are redrawn using the compensated data.
   Note that the *Color Comp* button label now says "(On)."

8 Working with Templates and Macros

Templates and macros provide convenient ways to speed up the process of creating an experiment.

A template is based on an individual item, such as a protocol or a sample list containing the information you want to use. The different templates are:

- Run Template
- Sample Template
- Subset Template
- Report Template
- Analysis Templates

A macro is a collection of templates; one for each portion of an experiment, along with a program (the actual macro) that automatically applies the templates and runs the experiment.

This section explains how to create and apply templates and macros.

8.1 Creating and Using Templates

Templates provide a convenient way to speed up the process of creating and analyzing an experiment. A template is based on an individual item, such as a predefined subset or sample table, that includes all the information you want to use in your experiment. You cannot rerun an experiment protocol, but you can save the protocol from an existing experiment as a template and apply this template to a new experiment. Subset, sample, report and analysis templates can be used in a similar manner. Using the template function, it is possible to save all settings made in an *Editor* frame to a database object as a template object and, subsequently, to apply these settings to a different, matching database object. This allows preferences that replace existing user preferences to be stored and applied.

Templates generated with a 384-well block cycler cannot be applied to an experiment run with the 96-well block cycler and vice versa.

Templates generated with a LightCycler® 480 Instrument I cannot be applied to an experiment run with the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II and vice versa.

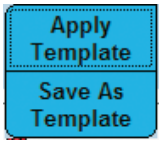
Sample list templates, analysis templates and report templates created with a previous LightCycler® 480 Software release may not be used in the LightCycler® 480 Software version 1.5.

See the table below for object types which allow saving and applying of templates:

Object Type	Parameters Included in the Template	Comment
Run	▶ Programs and temperature targets ▶ Detection format ▶ Selected filter combinations (in the customize window) ▶ Integration time mode and integration time if manual is selected ▶ Lot ID ▶ Test ID ▶ Color Compensation ID ▶ Reaction volume ▶ Block type ▶ Block size ▶ Run notes	*LightCycler® 480 Software comes with 32 demo run templates (located in the Roche folder under Templates/Run Templates).*
Subsets	▶ Availability of the subset for analysis ▶ Availability of the subset for report ▶ List of included wells ▶ The subset ID ▶ Subset name ▶ Block size	*A subset template cannot be applied after an analysis has been created.* *LightCycler® 480 Software comes with two demo subset templates (checkerboard and quadrant; located in the Roche folder under Templates/Subset Templates).*
Sample	A sample template includes block size, active filter combinations, and a list of samples. For each sample, the template includes all selected sample properties.	*To apply a sample template, the filter combinations in the template must match the filter combinations in the experiment.*
Report	A report template includes ▶ Section selection setting on the *General* tab ▶ Subsection requirements on the *Details* tab. ▶ Report subset ▶ Report settings	*If there are fewer objects in the experiment, the objects in the template are discarded. If the experiment contains more objects, the defaults are applied to the remaining objects.* *Does not include any visual settings, such as the page number or current magnification.*
Quantificat. Analysis	▶ Notes ▶ Filter combination ▶ Color Compensation object ▶ External standard curve (quantification only) ▶ High sensitivity/high confidence setting ▶ Mean/median setting	*Does not include* the sample include/exclude status.
T_m Analysis	▶ Notes ▶ Filter combination ▶ Color Compensation setting ▶ SYBR setting ▶ Peak mode (two or six) ▶ Display checkboxes for the T_m area	▶ A T_m Calling analysis template does not include the peak number filter states nor the sample include/exclude status. ▶ A T_m Calling analysis template cannot be saved and applied with the manual T_m method setting.

Object Type	Parameters Included in the Template	Comment
Genotype Analysis	Endpoint Genotyping: ▶ Filter combination ▶ Color Compensation setting ▶ Subset and program ▶ Analysis name and notes ▶ External baseline settings ▶ In-run/Auto group Melting Curve Genotyping additional: ▶ Melt standards ▶ Min/max temperature ▶ Optimize temperature setting ▶ Score and resolution threshold ▶ Sensitivity	

Whenever an object that can be used or can be saved as a template is open in the LightCycler® 480 Software, the *Template* button is active.



The *Template* button allows you to select and apply a template to the currently open object and to save the currently open object as a template.

A template can only be created from an existing object that is open and active in the software. It is not possible to create a template from an object that is not open and active.

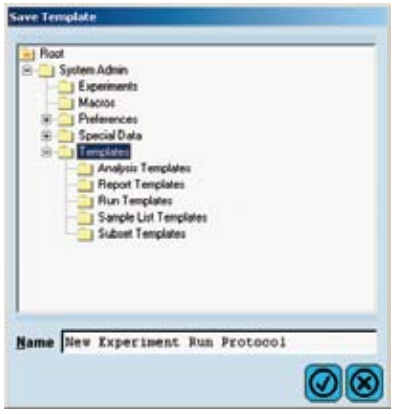
8

D

To create a template:

1. Open or create the object to be used as template.
2. Click *Save as Template* to open the *Save Template* dialog box.
3. Select a location to save the template and enter a name for the template in the *Name* field.

   The default template name is the name of the current experiment, plus the object type. The default storage location for all templates is the current user's preference setting for the Template folder.



4. Click .

   Result: The template is saved and the dialog box closes.

   After a template has been saved to the database, you can edit (from the navigator) only the template name and notes of the template object.

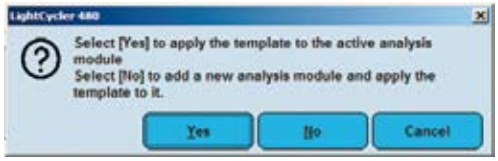
To apply a template:

1. Open the object to which you want to apply the template.
2. Click *Apply Template* to open the *Apply Template* dialog box. The dialog box displays a tree list of all templates to which you have access.
3. Highlight a template in the list, and click . The dialog box closes and the template is applied to the currently open object.

   To apply any template, the block size in the template must match the block size used by the experiment.

   You can still manually change an object after a template has been applied.

   If you apply a template to an analysis that does not match the analysis type of the template, a new analysis screen of the matching type is opened automatically. If an analysis template is applied from an analysis of the same type, a dialog asks whether you wish to apply the template to the current analysis or to create a new analysis:

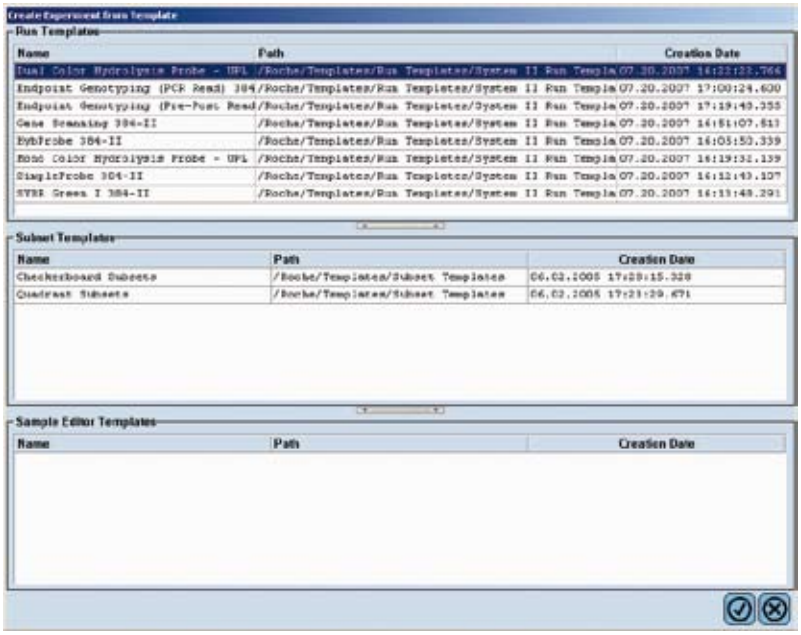


To create an experiment from templates:

1. Click *New Experiment from Template* in the *Overview* window.

2. The *New Experiment from Template* window is displayed.

   The *New Experiment from Template* window only displays the templates that match the connected instrument.



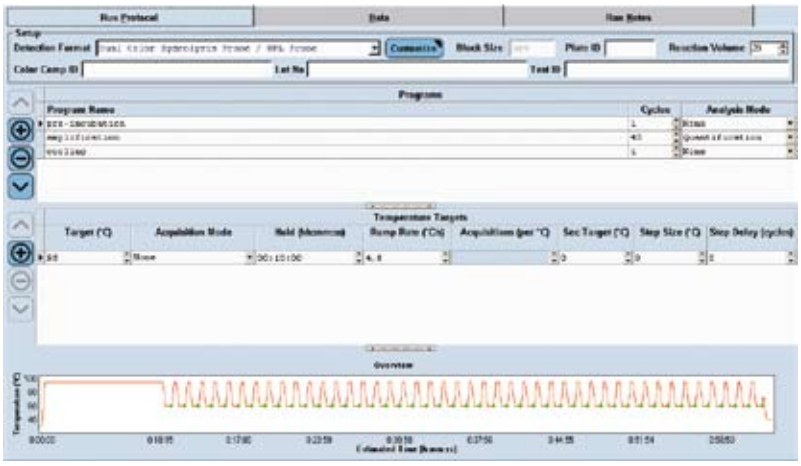
3. (Optional) Select a run template from the related set.

4. (Optional) Select a subset template from the related set.

5. (Optional) Select a *Sample Editor* template from the related set.

6. Click .

   Result: The experiment is created. The selected templates from steps 3-5 are applied. The *Run Protocol* is displayed.



8.2 Creating and Using Macros

While a template is based on an individual item, such as a protocol or a sample list that includes the information you want to apply to another experiment, a macro is a collection of templates. Macros automate the entire process of running an experiment, including setting up the experiment protocol, entering sample information, running the experiment, performing analyses and generating reports. You can use a macro to completely automate the process of running and analyzing a LightCycler® 480 experiment.

The macro functionality is especially required when operating the LightCycler® 480 Software via a LIMS interface: A client using the LIMS interface can execute a LightCycler® 480 Instrument run remotely by starting a macro.

Read this section to learn more about the following topics:

- Creating experiment macros
- Selecting and running an experiment macro

To create an experiment macro:

1. Open the *Summary* pane of the experiment you want to use as the basis for the macro.
2. Click *Save as macro* in the *Action* bar of the *Summary* pane to open the *Save macro* dialog box.
3. When you create a macro from an experiment using Color Compensation (CC), you can select whether to incorporate the CC object currently in use into the macro or to auto select a CC object when the macro is run.

   If you select the option "*Auto select Color Compensation*", a CC object is automatically selected from the CC objects available in the database. The selection filters are:
   - CC object generated with the same instrument
   - CC object having the same Color Comp ID as the macro (if the Color Comp ID is specified), and
   - Most recently created CC object matching the two preceding criteria.
4. Enter a name for the macro and browse to a location where you want to save it, and click *OK*. (The default location for saving the macro is the user's *Macros* directory and the default name for a macro is "Macro" followed by the experiment name. You can, however, specify a different name and location.)

   Macros in a traceable database must have unique names. When you save a macro with the same name as an existing macro, a new version of the macro will be created and the old version will not be deleted. When a macro is opened in the Navigator, the Navigator will display the version history. Only the current version of a macro can be executed, and the notes can only be edited for the current version. Previous versions of the macro may be viewed in read-only mode by clicking the version in the revision history for the current version. When an experiment is run from a macro, the experiment report will include the macro version.

   Once you have saved a macro in a traceable database, you can only edit the macro name and notes of the saved macro object in the navigator.

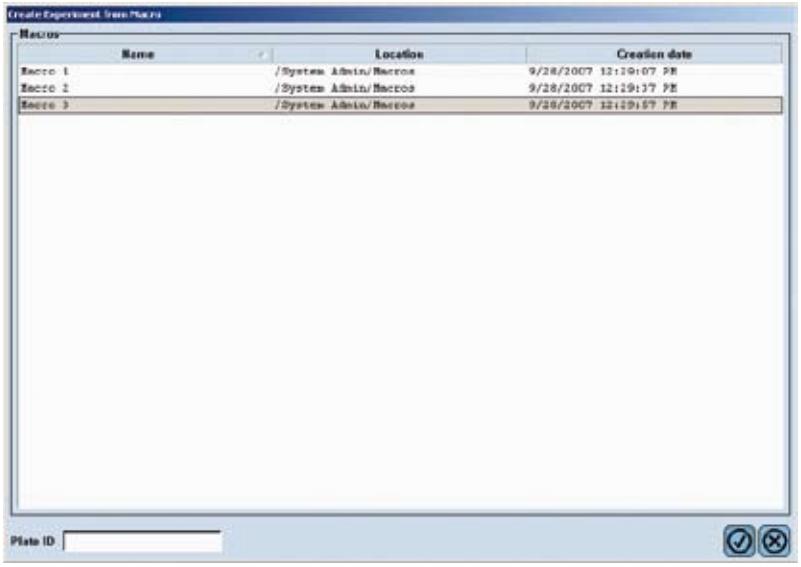
To run an experiment macro:

1. Select the *Overview* window.

2. Click *New Experiment from Macro* to open the macro dialog box.

   The New Experiment from Macro button is only active when LightCycler® 480 Software is connected to a real instrument and the instrument state is Standby (no MWP) or Standby (MWP loaded).

3. In the *Macros* area, a list of all macros is displayed for which the user has rights to execute and match the active instrument. Select a macro from the list.



4. (Optional) Enter a *Plate ID* for the macro run in the *Plate ID* field.

5. Click *Run macro*.

   The software will ask you for the name and location of the experiment.

6. The software checks whether the instrument is ready and a plate is loaded.

   If the instrument is not ready, you are asked to insert a plate into the instrument and click the confirm button.

   If a *Plate ID* was entered and *Barcode* is enabled, the software checks the *Plate ID*. If the *Plate ID* does not match, the macro does not start and a message box opens saying *Plate IDs do not match*.

▶ ▶ ▶

7 If the instrument is ready, the software starts the macro and performs the following steps:

- Creates and opens a new experiment.
- Applies the run template, subset template, and *Sample Editor* template.
- Asks you to name the experiment and saves the experiment before starting the run.
- Starts the run.

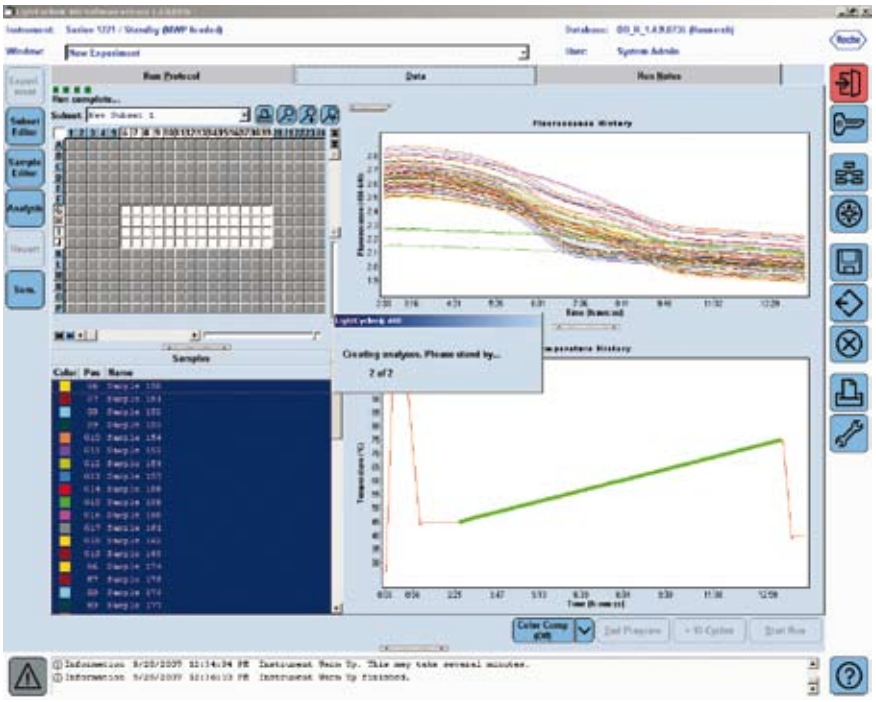
During the run, you have only limited access to the experiment data. You can use the following features:

- You can edit the sample names and sample comments in the *Sample Editor*.
- The *Import* button is enabled. The import file may only contain values for sample names and sample notes in the General category.
- You have access to the following screens:
  - You can view the *Summary* screen.
  - You can view the *Experiment* screen and the run progress on the *Data* tab. You can select options in the charts.
  - You can view the *Subset Editor*.
  - You can abort the run using the *Abort Run* button.
  - You can view the *Analysis* screen.
- You don't have access to the following features:
  - You cannot edit any other values except for sample names and sample comments in the *Sample Editor*.
  - The *Configure Properties* button is disabled.
  - In the *Summary* screen the *Save as Macro* button is disabled.
  - All settings in the *Subset Editor* are read-only.
  - All settings and buttons in the *Experiment* screen are disabled or read-only, including the *Color Comp* button, the *Run Notes*, the *End Program* button, and the *Add 10 Cycles* button.
  - You cannot add an analysis during the run.
  - The icon for the *Report* screen is inactive.
  - The *Apply/Save template* button is disabled in all screens.

▶ ▶ ▶

8 When the run is finished the experiment is automatically saved. A modal Wait dialog box appears. During this wait period, the software performs the following steps:

- Applies all the analysis templates and calculates each analysis. A progress dialog appears.



- If you create a macro from an experiment with Color Compensation, you are asked whether to incorporate the CC object or to use Smart Color Compensation.
  In the case of Smart Color Compensation, the related CC object must satisfy the following requirements:
  - The CC object must compensate for all possible filter combinations
  - The CC object must be valid for the current active instrument
  - The CC ID must match the original experiment specified in the *Sample Editor*
  - The CC object must have a compatible detection format.
- If the macro contains a template for Relative Quantification analysis using an external reference experiment or a template for Endpoint Genotyping, the dialog for selecting the experiment appears. If you cancel the selection dialog, the analysis will not be created.
- Applies any report templates.

  The report is not generated automatically.

- Saves the experiment.

  If you are working with a traceable database and you have made any edits during the run, the software will show the dialog for you to enter the reason for the changes.

  If any errors occur during analysis creation or calculation, a dialog appears at the end of the macro run that displaying all the errors that were encountered.

9 After the macro finishes, the saved experiment is still open and the analysis overview screen is visible.

■

9 Working with Subsets

The standard way to use LightCycler® 480 Software is to simultaneously analyze all the samples on the PCR multiwell plate. Alternatively, you can define subsets of the samples for separate analysis of each subset. This is useful if, for example, you want to use one section of a multiwell plate to test for one quantification target gene, and another section of the same plate to test for a different target.

You can also define different sample sets to include in a report. Reports are based on report subsets; a subset can be defined as both an analysis and a report subset. In this case, the analysis subset and the report subset include the same samples. Alternatively, reports can contain a different set of samples from those contained in the analysis subsets.

For example, each column in a multiwell plate can be used to analyze a different SNP, while each row in the plate can represent a different sample. In this case, an analysis subset can be used for each column and a report subset for each row.

The same samples may be assigned to multiple subsets of either type (analysis or report).

The *Subset Editor* is used to create, modify, and delete subsets. Subsets are applied using the subset drop-down lists on the *Data* tab, *Sample Editor*, analysis and report modules.

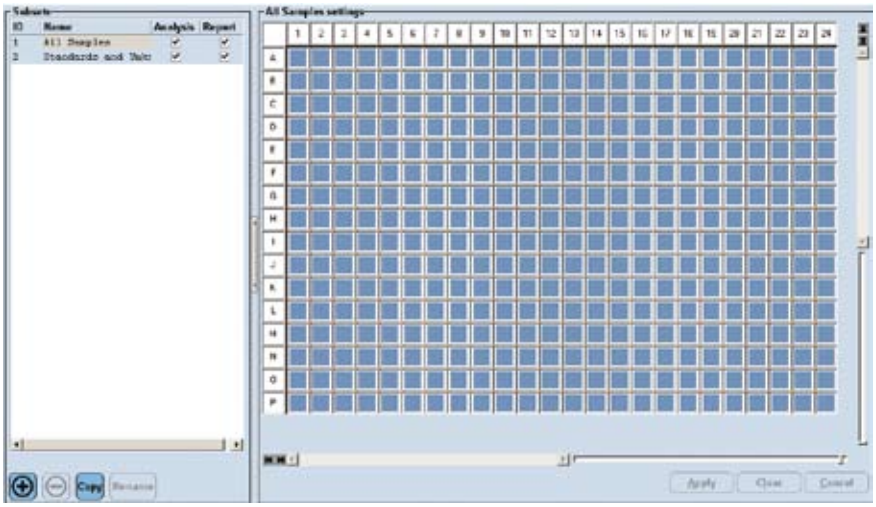
A default sample subset called *All Samples* for both reports and analysis is provided with the software. It includes all wells in the plate. The *All Samples* subset cannot be modified or deleted.

To create a subset:

1. Open the experiment for which you want to define subsets (or create a new experiment).

   The maximum number of subsets for one experiment is 255.

2. Click *Subset Editor* in the *Module* bar. The *Subsets* window opens:



▶ ▶ ▶

3 Click ⊕ to activate a new row in the list of subsets or click *Copy* to create a new subset based on the currently selected one.

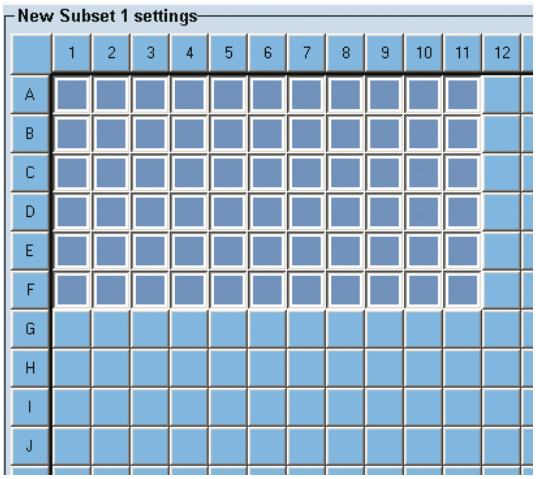
An ID number is automatically assigned to the new row. “Analysis” and “Report” are selected by default as the subset types. The *Name* column is automatically selected. The ID number is displayed in the *Sample Editor*.

4 Define the subset as follows:

- Select the subset type boxes for the new subset (Report, Analysis, or both)
- Type a name for the subset

A subset name can have up to 25 characters and must be unique within an experiment.

- In the multiwell plate image, select the well positions for the samples to be included in the subset: Press the <Ctrl> key and click individual positions to select samples, or click column and row buttons to select columns or rows of samples. Alternatively, you can press the <Ctrl> key and drag the mouse pointer over an area of the multiwell plate image to select all samples in this area simultaneously. During dragging, selected wells are displayed in dark blue.



- Click *Apply* to add the selected well positions to the subset.
- Click *Clear* to cancel the selection.

5 When finished, click 💾 in the *Global action* bar to save the experiment with the new subset.

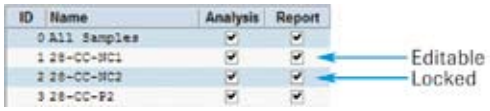
■

Subsets are experiment-specific. You can exchange subsets between experiments by using the template function.

To modify or rename a subset:

1. Open the experiment containing the subset you want to modify.
2. Click *Subset Editor* in the *Modules* bar. The *Subsets* window opens.
3. In the subset list, highlight the subset you want to modify.
4. Modify the subset as follows:
   - Select or clear the subset type boxes as needed (Report, Analysis, or both).
   - Modify the subset name as needed by clicking *Rename* or clicking the subsets name.
   - Select or deselect well positions by using the *Control* key, depending on whether they were unselected or selected before. Selected well positions are shown in outline blue, removed positions are shown in outline red.
   - Click *Apply* to confirm your preceding selections or deselections.
   - Click *Clear* to select all well positions to remove.
   - Click *Cancel* to return to the last saved version of the subset.
   - Click ⊖ to remove a subset.

   A subset cannot be modified, renamed, or deleted if it has been used in an analysis. Locked subsets are highlighted in the Subset list.



5. When finished, click 💾 in the *Global action* bar to save the experiment with the modified subset.

To create a subset template:

1. Open the experiment containing the subset you want to use as a template.
2. Click *Subset Editor* in the *Modules* bar. The *Subsets* window opens.
3. Click the *Save As Template* button.
   The *Save Template* dialog opens containing a navigator.
4. Select a folder and type in a name for the new template. *E.g.*, you can use the pre-defined *Subset Templates* folder to save the subset.
   When finished, confirm to save the template.

To apply a subset template:

1. Open the experiment to which you want to apply the subset template.
2. Click *Subset Editor* in the *Modules* bar. The *Subsets* window opens.
3. Select *Apply Template* on the *Template* button.
   A dialog box opens containing a navigator.
4. Find and select the template you want to use, and click *Open*.
   The dialog box closes. The related subsets from the chosen template are added to the *Subset Editor*.
   Verify that the block size of the subset template matches the current experiment block size.

10 Working with Charts

LightCycler® 480 Software generates many kinds of charts during and after an experiment run and as part of an experiment analysis. Charts allow you to view the following types of information:

- Program time, temperature cycles and acquisition points
- Data gathered from an experiment
- Information and results charted by analysis modules

You can print charts, export charts to various graphic formats, and copy and paste chart images and chart data. The charts include zoom and pan functions, so you can enlarge details of a chart and move the chart left or right. Right-clicking a chart displays a context menu with some or all of the available chart options. At a glance, the context menu provides the following options:

Option	Description
Chart Preferences	Opens a *Chart Preferences* editor. For more information, see section *Using Chart Preferences*.
Print	Opens a *Print* dialog used to print the chart.
Export Chart	Opens an *Export* dialog box used to export the chart image and its data.
Copy to Clipboard	Copies chart data to the clipboard.

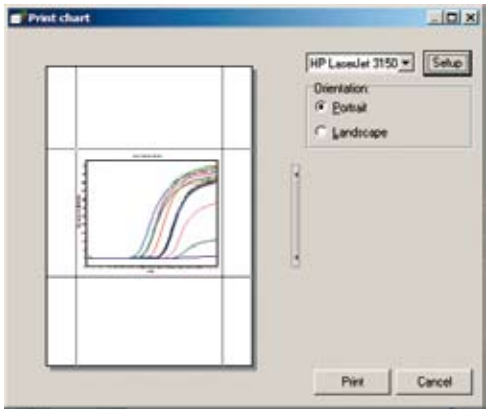
10.1 Printing, Exporting, and Copying Charts

You can print any chart displayed in LightCycler® 480 Software. You can also export the chart image and the chart data separately or copy and paste the image and the data separately into other programs.

To print a chart:

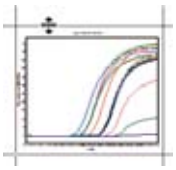
1. Display the chart you want to print.
2. Right-click within the chart boundaries, and select *Print*. The *Print chart* window is displayed.

   You can resize the window to make it easier to adjust the graph margins.

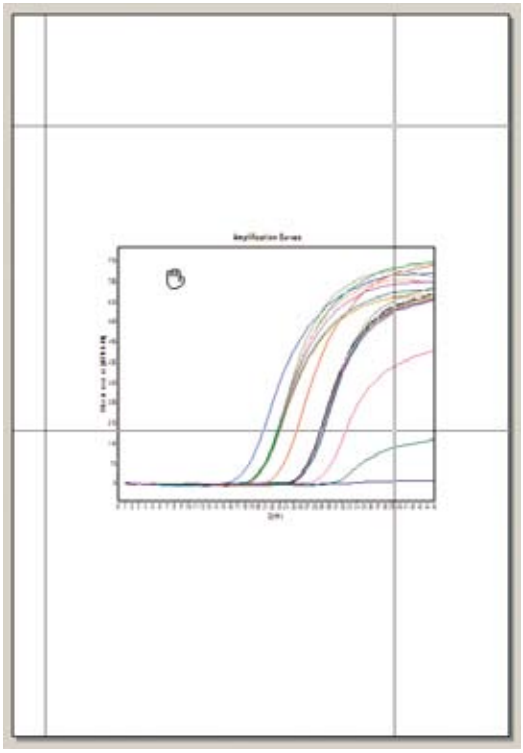


► ► ►

3 To change the graph margins, and therefore the size of the graph, click and drag the gray margin lines that surround the graph image. The mouse pointer changes its appearance to indicate that you can now drag the margin line.



4 To change the position of the graph on the page, position the mouse pointer over the graph. The pointer will change to a hand. Click and drag the graph margins to a new position. Release the left mouse key and the graph is placed at the new position.



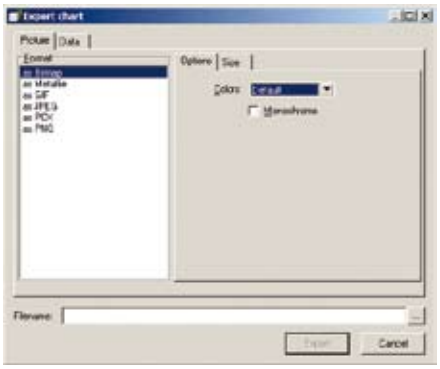
5 If necessary, select a printer from the drop-down list. The list displayed depends on the printers installed on your control unit. Your default Windows printer is selected by default.

6 To change printer configuration options, click *Setup*. A standard Windows printer setup dialog box is displayed. Enter the necessary information, and click *OK*.

7 Select the paper orientation (portrait or landscape) in the *Orientation* area and click *Print* to confirm.

To export a chart image:

1. Display the chart you want to export.
2. Right-click within the chart boundaries, and select *Export Chart*. The *Export Chart* dialog box opens.

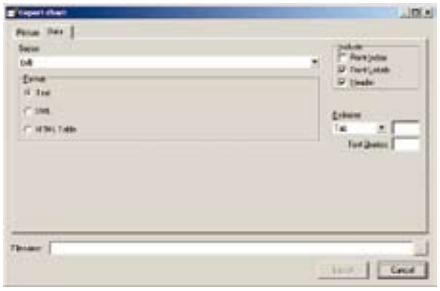


3. On the *Picture* tab, under *Format*, select the graphic format to be used for exporting the chart.
4. If an *Options* tab is displayed (on the right), select conversion options as needed. (The tab is not displayed for all graphic formats. If the tab is displayed, the options vary, depending on the format you selected.)
5. To change the size of the exported image, select the *Size* tab, and enter the new width and height values. Select *Keep aspect ratio* if you want to maintain the proportions of the chart.

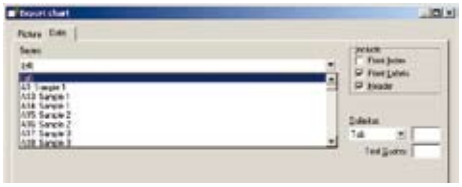
6. Click the ... button to the right of the *Filename* box, to open a *Select output file* dialog box. Browse to the location where you want to save the exported chart image, enter a name for the image, and click *Save*.
7. Click *Export* to export the chart.

To export chart data:

1. Display the chart containing the data you want to export.
2. Right-click within the chart boundaries, and select *Export Chart*. The *Export chart* dialog box opens.
3. Select the *Data* tab.



4. In the *Series* box, select the data item you want to export. The items vary, depending on the type of chart.



5. In the *Include* box, select the text labels to export with the data.
6. In the *Format* box, select a format for the exported data. You can choose the following formats: Text, XML, and HTML Table.
7. If you selected *Text* as the format, select a delimiter in the *Delimiter* box. You can choose between *Space*, *Tab*, *Comma*, *Colon* or a *Custom* delimiter. Enter a custom delimiter into the field right of the *Delimiter* box.
8. (Optional) If you selected *Text* as the format, you can define a character for delimiting text characters. Enter a character in the *Text Quotes* field.
9. Click the ... button (right of the *Filename* box), to open the *Select output file* dialog.
10. Browse to the location where you want to save the exported data, enter a name for the data file, and click *Select*.
11. Click *Export* to export the data.

■

To copy a chart image or chart data:

1. Display the chart you want to copy.
2. Right-click within the chart boundaries, and select *Copy to clipboard*. The chart is saved as a bitmap file and the data is saved as text.
3. To paste the chart image, open a graphics application, such as Paint, and press <Ctrl-V>.
4. To paste the chart data, open a text editor, such as Notepad, and press <Ctrl-V>.

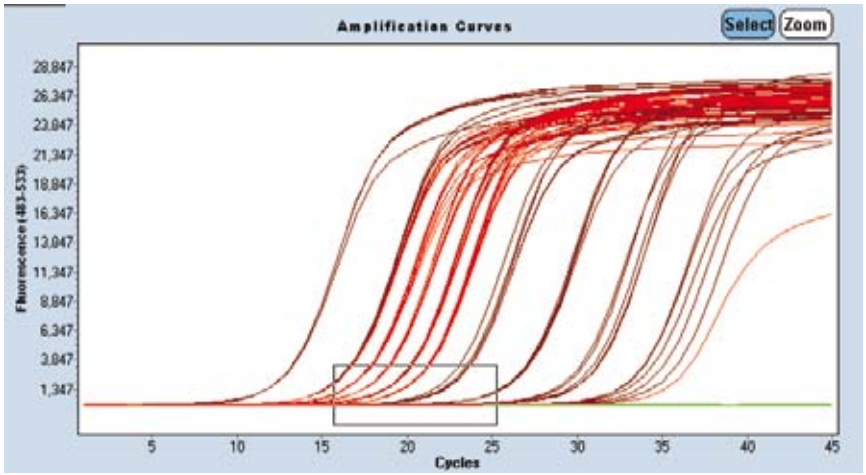
■

10.2 Zooming and Panning to View Chart Details

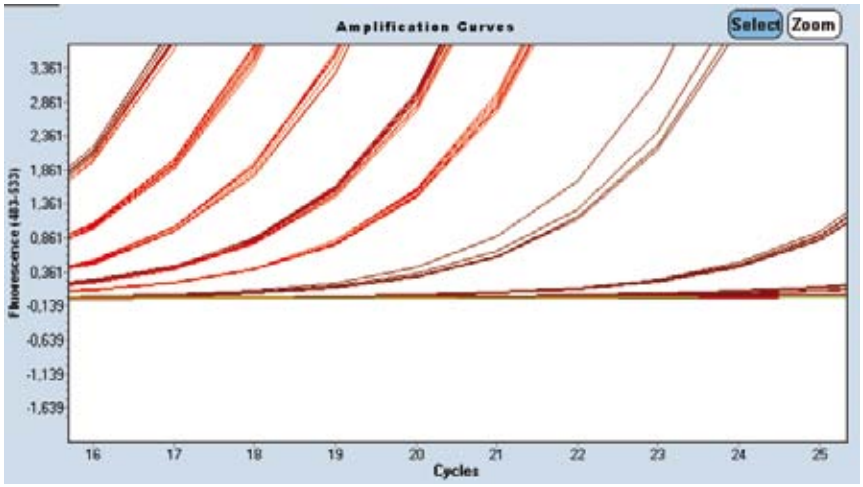
You can enlarge a portion of a chart as many times as necessary to view important details. If you use a three-button mouse, you can shift the chart in any direction to view details that are outside the window. Follow the procedures below to enlarge chart details (zoom) or to move a chart (pan).

To zoom:

1. Click the *Zoom* button.
2. Place the cursor above and to the left of the chart area you want to enlarge.
3. Click and drag the mouse pointer down and to the right. (The pointer changes to a rectangle.)



Release the mouse button when the rectangle covers the area you want to enlarge. The area within the rectangle is enlarged to fill the work pane.



4. Repeat Step 2 as often as necessary until the chart details are as large as you want.
5. To restore the chart to its original size, click and drag the mouse pointer up and to the left one time.

To pan:

If you want to see portions of the chart that are not displayed in the window, use the middle mouse button to click the chart. Drag the chart until the portion you want to see is in view.

You may be able to configure a two-button mouse so that clicking both buttons at the same time is equivalent to clicking the middle button of a three-button mouse. See your system administrator or refer to the device driver instructions that came with your mouse.

11 Working with Tables

The LightCycler® 480 Software uses tables with different layouts.

The operation of individual tables is described in the corresponding section of this documentation. This section gives you general information which applies to all tables.

To export the table data:

1. Right-click in the table area, *e.g.,* the Sample Table in an *Analysis* screen.
2. Select *Export Table*. The *Save table data* window opens.
3. Enter a file name and a location for the table export and confirm.
   If the table contains information from an experiment, the first line of the output file will contain the name of the detection format and the corresponding filters of the experiment. The first or second line contains the column headers for the file. The data lines of the table are tab-delimited.

■

To sort the table by a column:

1. Click in the column header of the table.
   The related column will be sorted ascending or descending.

■

To sort the sample table data by plate row or plate column:

1. Click in the *Pos* header of the sample table.
   The *Pos* column will be sorted by plate row or plate column.

■

To change the width of a table column:

1. Move the mouse pointer to the border of the table header you want to change.
2. If the cursor changes to a column with left and right arrow, drag the mouse by pressing the left mouse button until the column has the ideal width.

■

To copy a table region to the clipboard:

1. To select the cells from the table you want to copy either click and drag or press <Shift> and click.
2. Press <Ctrl-C>.
   The clipboard should contain the selected cells.
3. Start your target application (*MS Excel*, *WordPad*) and press <Ctrl-V>.
   The copied table cells will appear in your application.

■

To select samples in the Sample Editor by clipboard data:

1	Start the application program, *e.g., MS Excel* or *WordPad*.
2	Type in each sample position in a new line, *e.g.,* A2, A3, B2, B3.
3	After completion select all lines and copy them by pressing <Ctrl-C>. The clipboard should contain the selected lines.
4	To paste the sample position data, go to the LightCycler® 480 Software window and press <Ctrl-V>.

12 Generating Reports

After you analyze an experiment, you can generate an analysis report containing general experiment information and analysis results. You can customize the report to include any of the following:

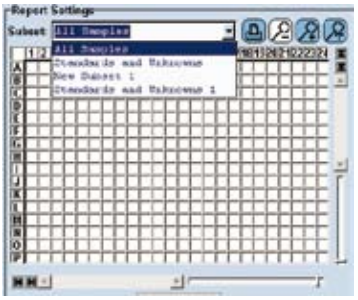
- Experiment summary information (*e.g.,* name, creation date, operator, owner etc.)
- Experiment protocol
- Sample information
- Instrument information
- Revision history
- Analysis results and other analysis items, such as statistics and settings. The actual analysis items you can include vary by analysis type.

You can arrange the order of items in the report and print the report.

To generate and print a report:

1. Open an experiment that includes one or more analysis modules or save your currently opened experiment.
2. Click the *Report* button in the *Module* bar. The *Report* window opens in the work pane. The left side contains the *Report Settings*.

   You must first save an experiment before the Report button becomes active.
3. If you already have defined a report subset, select one from the *Subset* list:



   The All Samples Subset contains standard settings for reports.

▶ ▶ ▶

4 The *General* and *Detailed* tab provide a list of available report items, with some items selected by default. The order of items in the list indicates the order of items in the report.

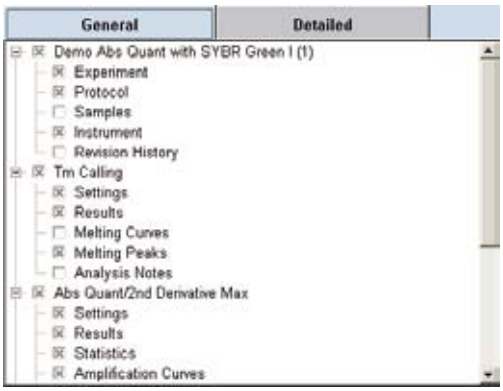
The list of report sections on the *General* tab includes the following:

- General information section labeled with the experiment name.
- Analysis sections for each type of analysis performed on the samples in the selected subset.

An analysis section is not included in the list unless that analysis has been performed on at least one sample in the selected report subset.

The list of report sections on the *Detailed* tab includes the following:

- General information section labeled with the experiment name
- Analysis sections for each analysis performed on any of the samples in the subset; there will be multiple analysis sections of the same type if more than one analysis of the same type has been performed on the samples.



5 Click items in the list to include or exclude them. If you click a section item, all corresponding subsections are automatically selected.

Note that changes made to settings on the General tab override the current settings on the Detailed tab for the same sections or subsections.

6 To change the location of an item in the report, click and drag the item to a new location in the list on the *Detailed* tab. You can drag both sections and subsections.

You cannot change the order of items on the General tab.

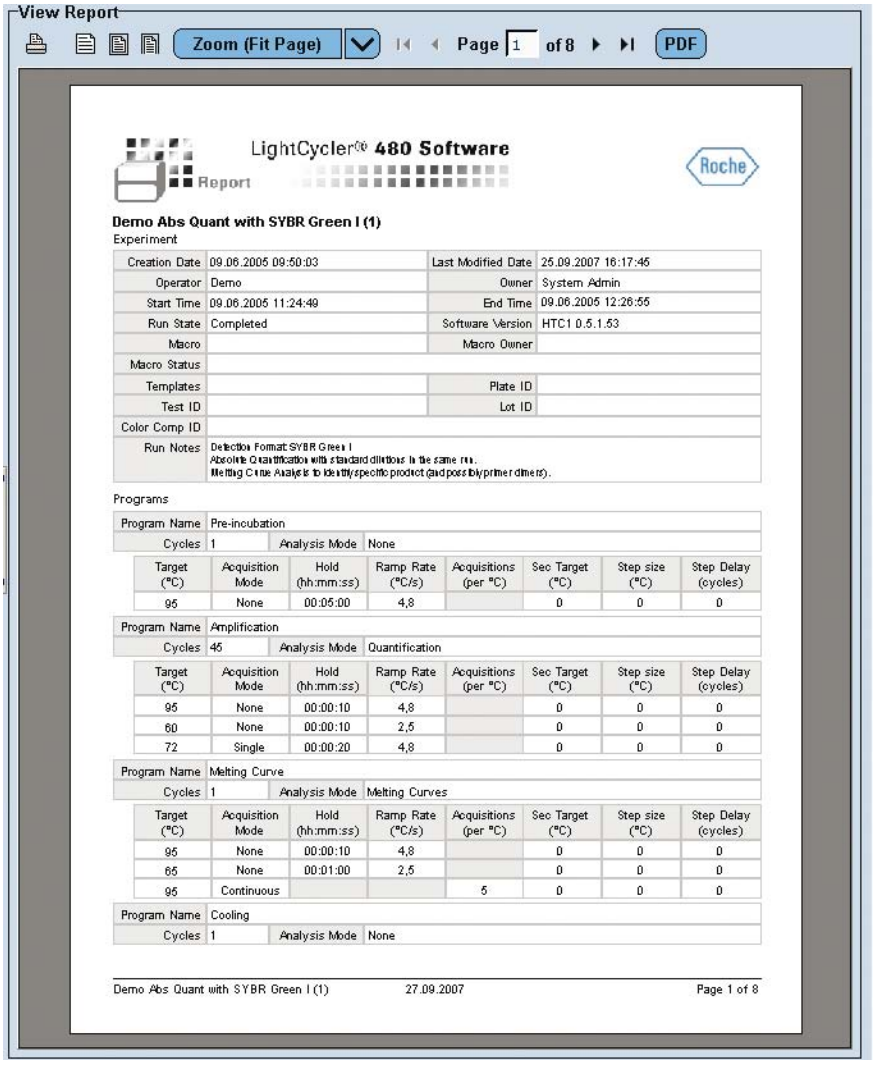
You cannot drag an item into a category where it does not belong. For example, you cannot drag results from a melting temperature analysis into an absolute quantification analysis.

7 Click in the *Global action* bar to save the changed report settings together with the experiment. You will be prompted to enter change notes. The saved report settings will be used the next time you generate a report.

8 If you saved changed settings and want to restore the default settings click *Default Settings*. Close the *Report* window and reopen it. The default settings will be restored.

▶ ▶ ▶

9 Click *Generate* to view the report:



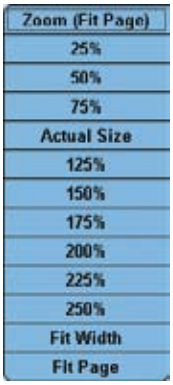
You can hide the Roche logo that appears on the report using the Report Settings tab on the Tools window. (For more details, see section Administrative Tools.)

10 To see additional pages of the report, use the page forward and backward controls:

11 To change the scale of the report within the window, click one of the following buttons:

- The first button displays the report at its printed size.
- The second button fits the entire report page into the window.
- The third button fits the width of the report page into the window.

Or select a zooming factor from the *Zoom* multi-select button:



12 To print the report, click the printer symbol  at the top of the report window.

13 To save the report as a pdf file, click the *PDF* button in the tool bar.

13 Working with Preferences

LightCycler® 480 Software provides the following preferences you can use to customize charts and samples and to set various default options:

- **Chart preferences** determine the default appearance and content of your charts.
- **Sample preferences** determine the default colors and line styles of samples in charts.
- **User preferences** determine default import and export directories and other settings.

Chart and User Preferences items are located in the *Preferences* folder in the user's folder in the LightCycler® 480 Software *Navigator*. When you open a preferences item, a window opens in the main window to allow you to set the preference options.

You can have multiple chart items, each with different settings. You can specify which item will be default. If all chart preference items are deleted, LightCycler® 480 Software creates new default preference items the next time you log on.

This section explains how to do the following:

- Use each type of preference
- Create multiple instances of preference items and specify an instance as the default for that preference type

13.1 Using Chart Preferences

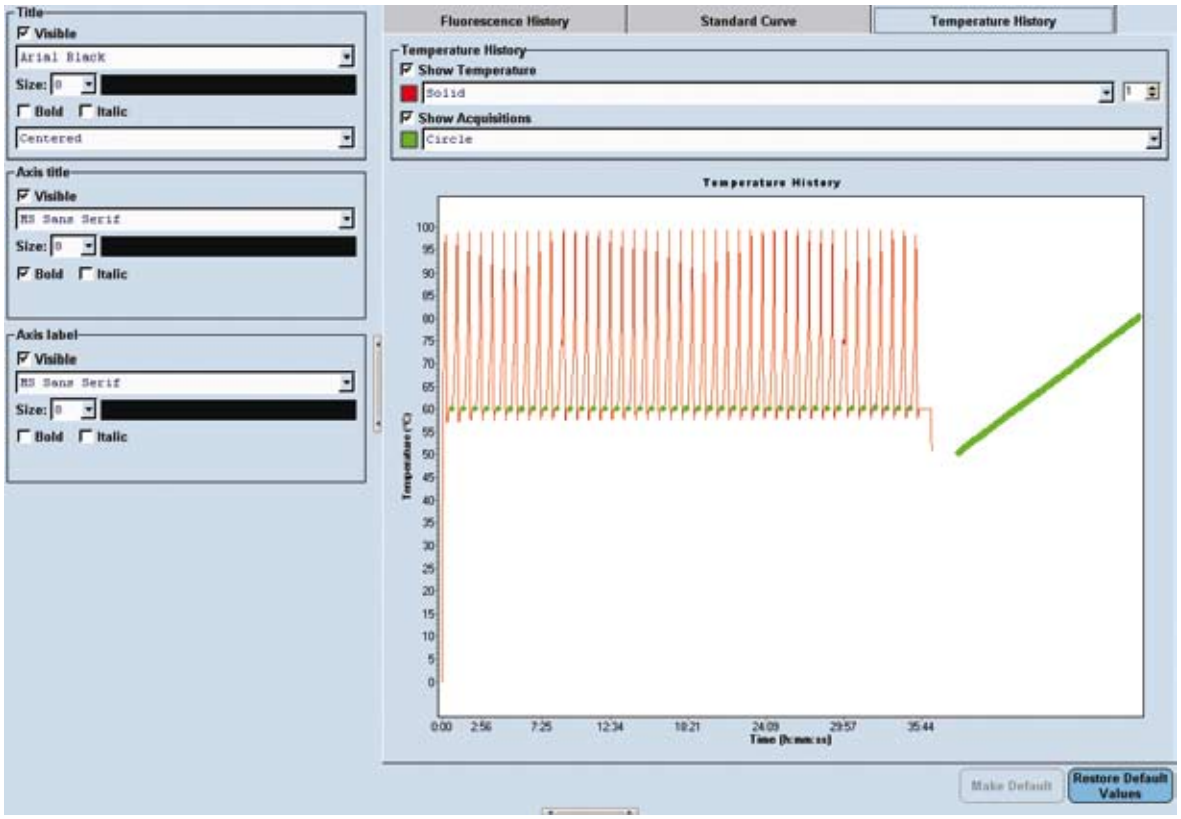
Your user account includes the *Chart preferences* item, which determines the default appearance and content of your charts. You can change the default chart settings as needed.

You can also save a modified version of a chart preference item and apply the preferences in place of the default. You can have as many different chart preference items as you want, each one defining a different look and feel for your charts. For more information, see section *Creating a Separate Chart Preferences Item and Making It the Default*. You can override the current chart preferences for individual charts, analyses, or experiments; for more information, see section *Overriding Default Chart Preferences*.

If you need to undo your changes and restore the previous values for the selected level at any time, click Restore default values.

To open the chart preferences item:

1. In your user folder in the LightCycler® 480 Software *Navigator*, open the *Preferences* subfolder.
2. Double-click *Chart preferences*. The *Chart preferences* window opens in the main window.
3. Using the *Chart preferences* window, you can customize the following chart settings:
   - Chart heading and label styles (using the three sections on the left).
   - Content and appearance of specific types of charts (using the tabs on the right).



There are no chart preference settings for the Exposure History Chart.

13.1.1 Specifying Chart Heading and Label Styles

Use the following three boxes on the window to modify headings and labels:

- *Title:* Specifies the appearance of chart titles.
- *Axis title :* Specifies the appearance of the text below the X axis and to the left of the Y axis on the charts.
- *Axis label :* Specifies the appearance of the measurement values on an axis, such as the times on the X axis of a fluorescence chart.

Each of the three sections has the same format options, except that the title section includes an option for title position.

To specify heading and label styles:

1. In the appropriate section, select or deselect the *Visible* checkbox to include or exclude this type of text on charts.
2. Specify the text appearance as follows:
   - Select the typeface from the pull-down list in the first box.
   - Select the type size from the pull-down list in the *Size* box or enter a value.
   - To change the text color, click the colored bar to the right of the *Size* box to display a color palette. Select the color you want, and click *OK*.
   - To make the text bold or italic, select the *Bold* or *Italic* checkbox (or both).
   - *Title* section only: To position the chart title, select a position from the pull-down list in the last box in the *Title* section (*Left justified, Right justified* or *Centered*).
3. Click  in the *Global action* bar to save your settings.

13.1.2 Specifying the Content of Fluorescence Charts

The *Fluorescence* tab of the *Chart preferences* window controls the default appearance of the fluorescence data displayed in the *Fluorescence History* chart. The *Fluorescence History* chart is displayed on the *Data* tab of the *Experiment* module.

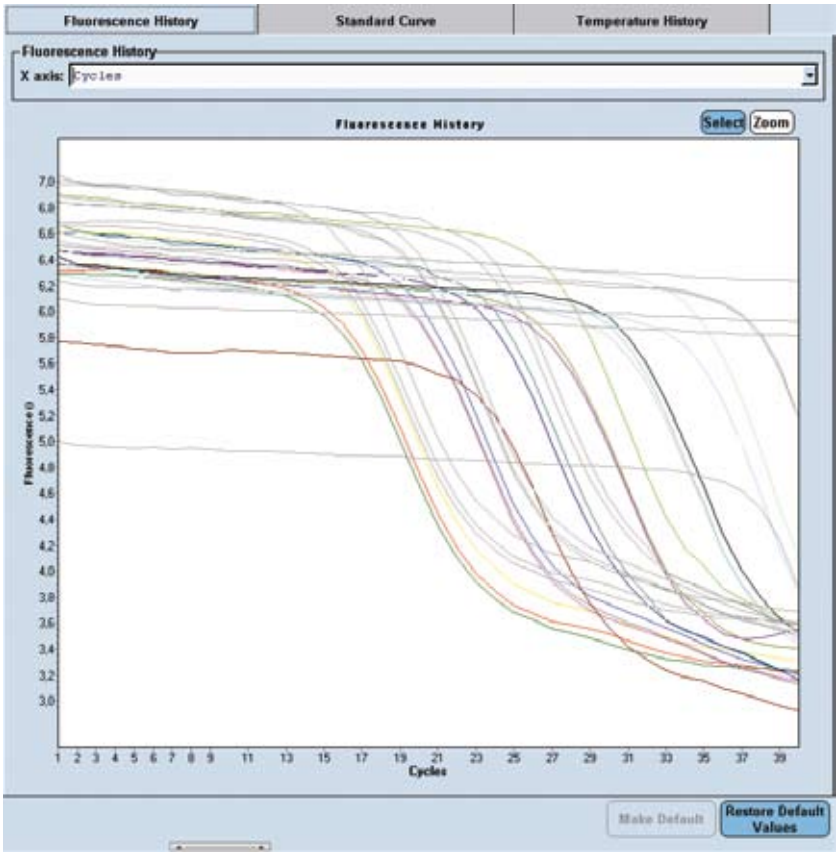
- The default axis value for the *Fluorescence History* chart that plots fluorescence versus time, cycles, or temperature.
- The default channels for the *Current Fluorescence* bar chart that displays the level of fluorescence for each sample and each channel at a particular acquisition point.

Both charts are displayed on the *Online Data Display* tab of the *Run* module and on the *Raw Data* tab of the *Summary* module.

To specify fluorescence chart information:

1. Select the *Fluorescence History* tab (if not already selected).

2. In the *Fluorescence History* box, select a value for the X axis from the pull-down list (*Cycles*, *Time* or *Temperature*).



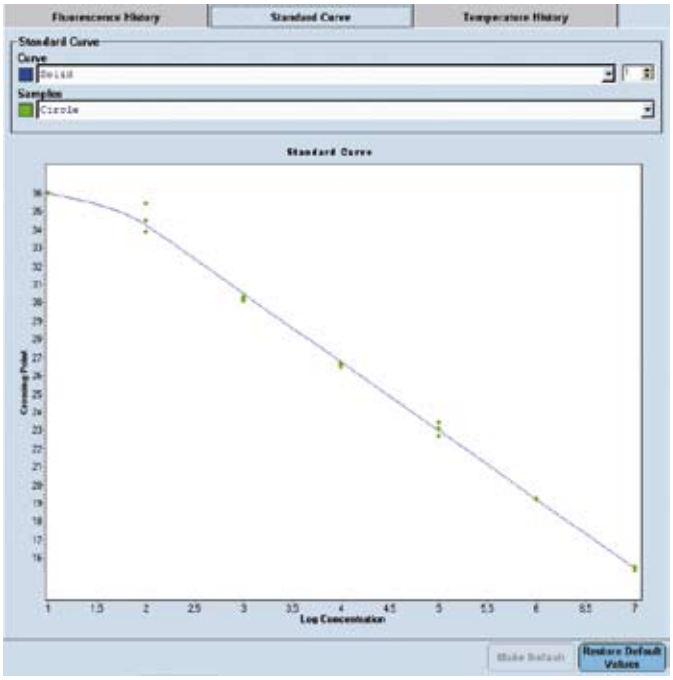
3. Click in the *Global action* bar to save your settings.

13.1.3 Specifying the Appearance of Standard Curve Charts

The *Standard Curve* tab of the *Chart preferences* window controls the appearance of the standard curve charts in quantification analyses. You can specify the appearance of the curve and the sample points from which the curve is derived.

To specify the appearance of the standard curve and sample points:

1. Select the *Standard Curve* tab.



2. The appearance of the curve can be modified as follows:
   - To specify line color, click the colored box under *Curve* to display a color palette, select a color, and click *OK*.
   - To specify line style, select a style from the pull-down list.
   - To specify line width, enter or select a value.
3. The appearance of the sample points can be modified as follows:
   - To specify point color, click the colored box under *Samples* to display a color palette, select a color, and click *OK*.
   - To specify point style, select a style from the pull-down list.
4. Click in the *Global action* bar to save your settings.

13.1.4 Specifying the Content and Appearance of the Temperature Chart

The *Temperature* tab of the *Chart preferences* window controls the appearance of the *Temperature History* chart, which displays temperature readings and fluorescence acquisition points. The chart is displayed on the *Run Protocol* tab (where it is labeled "Overview") and on the *Data* tab.

To specify content and appearance of the temperature chart:

1. Select the *Temperature History* tab.
2. To include or exclude temperature readings, select or deselect the *Show Temperature* box.
3. The appearance of the temperature lines on the chart can be modified as follows:
   - To specify the *line color*, click the colored box under *Show Temperature* to display a color palette, select the color you want, and click *OK*.
   - To specify the *line style*, select a style from the pull-down list.
   - To specify the *line width*, enter or select a value.
4. To include or exclude fluorescence acquisition points, select or clear the *Show Acquisitions* box.
5. To specify the appearance of the acquisition points on the chart:
   - To specify the *point color*, click the colored box under *Show Acquisitions* to display a color palette, select the color you want, click *OK*.
   - To specify a point style, select a style from the pull-down list.
6. Click  in the *Global action* bar to save your settings.

■

13.1.5 Overriding Default Chart Preferences

In some cases, you may want an individual chart, analysis, or experiment to use different chart settings from the defaults you specified in the *Chart preferences* item. You can override the default settings at the following levels:

- An individual chart
- All charts within an analysis
- All charts within an experiment

When you specify custom settings at any of these three levels, the new settings override the default values for the charts at that level.

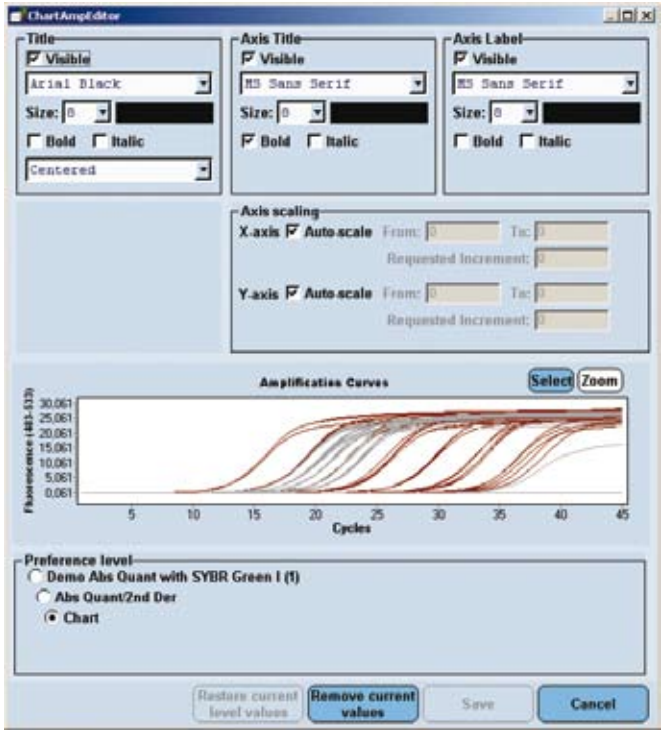
To override chart preferences:

1. Open the experiment and right-click the chart you want to modify.
   To override preferences for all charts within an analysis or within an experiment, right-click any chart in the analysis or experiment.

►►►

2 Select *Chart Preferences*.

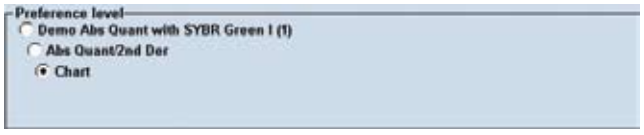
The *ChartAmpEditor* dialog box opens, containing options for the chart type similar to those in the *Chart Preferences* window described above. However, the dialog box includes an additional option for setting the chart X- and Y-axis scale.



3 Before you make any changes, you must select the level at which to apply the changes.

In the *Preference level* area, select one of the following:

- Experiment name to apply the settings to all charts in the current experiment
- Analysis name to apply the settings to all charts in the current analysis (you must have opened the menu from an analysis chart for this option to be available)
- *Chart* to apply the settings only to the current chart



The settings can be saved for only one level at a time. That is, if you make changes at the chart level, select the analysis level and make more changes and click Save, only the changes for the analysis level are saved. The settings for a higher level do not override settings saved at a lower level. For example, if you change the title color to blue at the chart level for a standard curve and save the setting, and subsequently change the title color to green at the experiment level and save the setting, the standard curve title remains blue; it does not change to green.

4 Change text settings in the *Title*, *Axis Title*, and *Axis Label* boxes, as needed.

For more information, see section *Specifying Chart Heading and Label Styles*.

5 Change the chart-specific settings (if any) in the box below the *Title* section.

The options displayed depend on the type of chart that was active when you opened the dialog box. For some chart types, there are no chart-specific settings.

▶ ▶ ▶

6. In the *Axis scaling* area, you can choose *Auto-scale* or set the range of units for the X axis and Y axis and the increment size.

   If you decide to set the axis scales manually, you must first deselect *Auto-scale* by clicking in the related checkbox. Then you have to fill the values into the *From*, *To* and *Requested Increment* fields.

   - If you select 0 as the increment size, the increment size is determined automatically.
   - If you set an increment size so small that the labels overlap, the setting is ignored and the increment size is determined automatically.

7. If you need to undo your changes and restore the previous values for the selected level, click *Restore current level values*.

8. When finished, click *Save*.

■

Example of overriding chart preferences:

1. Right-click the amplification curve chart in an Absolute Quantification analysis and select *Chart Preferences*.

2. The *Chart* level is selected by default; deselect *Auto-scale* for the X-axis, set the scaling range from 1 to 50, and click the *Save* button to confirm the settings.

3. Reopen *Chart Preferences*, select the *Abs Quant* (analysis) level, deselect *Auto-scale* for the X-axis, set the scaling range from 1 to 100, and save the settings.

   Result: The *Amplification Curve* chart now has a scaling range of 1 to 50. The scaling range for all other charts in the analysis module (*e.g.,* the *Standard Curve* chart) is now 1 to 100.

4. Reopen *Chart Preferences* (the *Chart* level is selected by default), click *Remove Current Values*, and save the settings.

   Result: The amplification curve chart now has a scaling range of 1 to 100. The settings for the chart level were removed, so the value for the level above (the analysis level) is applied.

5. Reopen *Chart Preferences* (the *Chart* level is selected by default), and set the scaling range from 1 to 150, click *Restore Current Level Values*, and close the dialog box.

   Result: The amplification curve chart scaling range remains at 1 to 100, because the 1 to 150 setting was not saved. When you click *Restore Current Level Values*, the previously saved setting (1 to 100) is restored.

■

13.1.6 Creating a Separate Chart Preferences Item and Making it the Default

You can create multiple chart preference items and specify which item is to be used as the default. You can change the default designation whenever you need to. If you delete all instances of a chart preference item, the software creates a new default item the next time you log in. The settings are the application defaults.

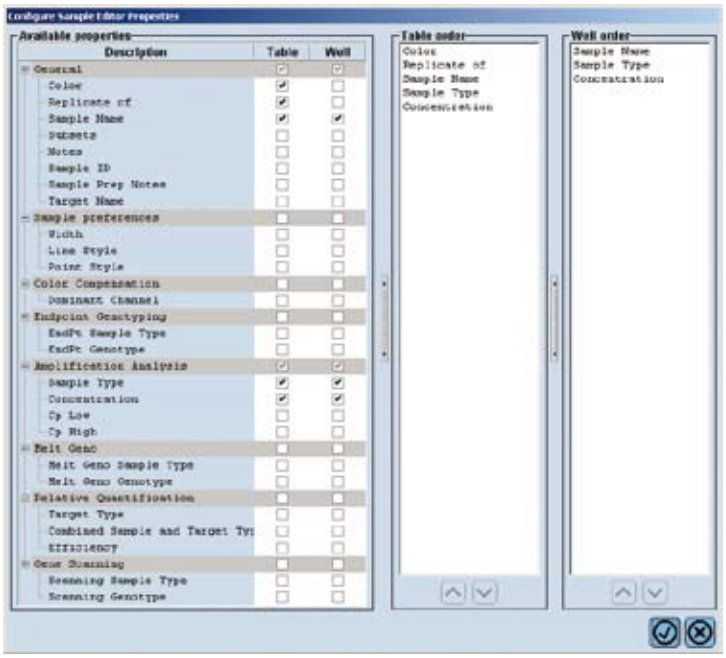
To create a separate chart preferences item and make it the default:

1	In your user folder in the LightCycler® 480 Software *Navigator*, open the *Preferences* subfolder.
2	Select the default item for the *Chart preferences* and copy it: Navigate to a location to save the item, enter a name for the new preference item, and click *Save*.
3	Open the preferences item and modify the preferences, as described in the previous section.
4	To specify this preferences item as the default, click *Make Default* in the *Preferences* editor pane.

13.2 Using Sample Preferences

You can modify the appearance of sample lines and points for the charts of an experiment:

1. In the *Sample Editor* action bar click *Configure Properties*. The *Configure Sample Editor Properties* dialog is displayed.



2. In the *Available properties* list, select or deselect the following properties in the *Sample preferences* category to be displayed in *Table View* and/or *Plate View*.
   - Width
   - Line Style
   - Point Style

   The selected properties are displayed in the corresponding *Table order* or *Well order* list.

3. (Optional) Select a property in the *Table order* or *Well order* list and click the or button to change the order of the properties.

4. Click to close the *Configure Sample Editor Properties* dialog. The properties are displayed in the *Table* or *Plate View* according to your selection.

   The property selection is saved with the experiment.

■

To modify the sample preferences for an experiment:

1. To change the default color for a sample, click the colored square next to the sample name in the sample list to open a color palette.

   Select a color and click *OK*.

   The changes are applied to all selected samples.

2. To change the default sample name, click the sample name, and type a new name.

   The default sample name is applied to new experiments; existing experiments are not affected.

3. To change the line style used for the sample, click in the *Line Style* column, and select a new style from the pull-down list.

   For example, you can select a dashed line instead of a solid line.

4. To change the line width, click in the *Width* column, and enter a new width.

5. If you prefer to see a sample line as a string of measurement points, click in the *Point Style* column, and select a style from the pull-down list. (If you prefer solid lines, leave the *Point Style* set to “Nothing”.)

6. Click  in the *Global action* bar to save your settings.

7. To view the charts in the *Analysis* window with the corresponding properties, select *Sample preferences' settings* in the *Legend Property Selector*.

13.3 Specifying User Preferences

User preferences specify the following:

- Default directories for importing files and exporting LightCycler® 480 Software files
- The default database folders in which to save LightCycler® 480 Software items, such as experiments, macros, and queries
- Chart and sample preference items to apply as the default, when multiple instances of a preferences item are available

To specify user preferences:

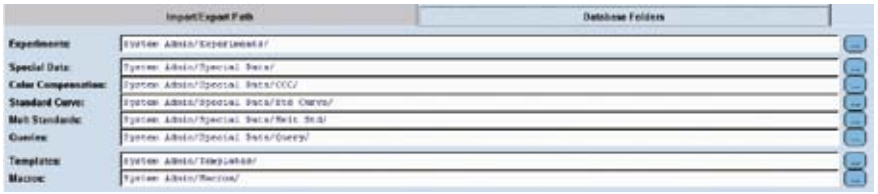
1. In your user folder in the LightCycler® 480 Software *Navigator*, open the *Preferences* subfolder, and double-click *User preferences*.

2. To specify import/export directories, select the *Import/Export Path* tab (if not currently selected).

   In each box, type a directory path on your local computer or click the ... button, navigate to a location on your local computer or the network, and click *OK*.

3. To specify default folders, select the *Database Folders* tab.

   In each box, type the path for the folder location in the Navigator or click the ... button to navigate to a location on your local computer or the network. Select a folder, and click *OK*.

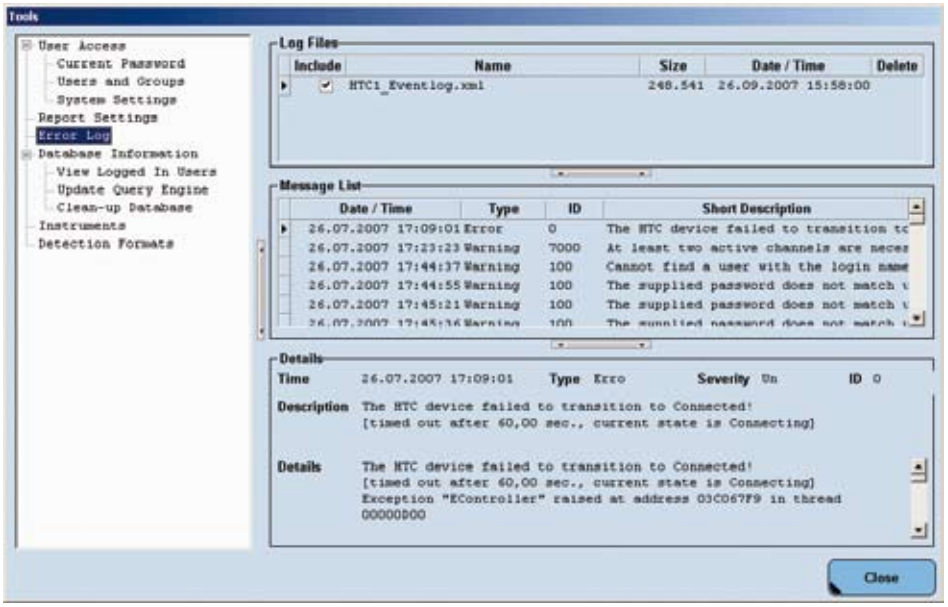


4. Click on the *Global action* bar to save the experiment with the new settings.

These settings will be applied next time you open an experiment.

14 Administrative Tools

Administrative tools are accessible via the *Tools* dialog. Open the *Tools* dialog by clicking the button. The *Tools* dialog has a *Navigator* on the left that lists the available options and an *Editor* pane on the right.



The administrative tools allow you to perform the following:

- *User Access*: Manage user access, which includes managing user passwords, user and group accounts and general system settings
- *Report Settings*: Define settings for the report
- *Error Log*: View the error log
- *Database Information*: View the database status and manage the database
- *Instruments*: Manage the connection settings to LightCycler® 480 Instruments, view the operation log and view the self-test
- *Detection Formats*: Define detection formats

Access to the administrative tools modules is dependent on your user role.

14.1 Managing User Access

To use the LightCycler® 480 Software, you must have a user account in the LightCycler® 480 Software database. User accounts have different levels of access to the software, depending on the role assigned to the account and the groups to which the account belongs.

This section explains the function of user accounts, roles and groups and explains how to manage these aspects using the LightCycler® 480 Software *User Management* tool. The section also explains how to change a user password. Read this section if you are responsible for creating or modifying user accounts or if you want to understand the privileges associated with your account. Read the section on passwords if you need to change your password.

Your own user account must have the Local Administrator role to use the User Access tool.

14.1.1 Understanding User Accounts

A user account provides access to the LightCycler® 480 Software. The user account specifies the user's login name and password and defines the user's level of access to the software.

When you create a user account, you must assign it a role. The role determines the tasks the user can perform using the software. For more information, see section *Understanding Roles*. You can also add a user account to one or more groups. Users in the same group have access to the objects belonging to group members. For more information, see section *Understanding Groups*.

Each user account has a default folder in the LightCycler® 480 Software *Navigator* labeled with the user's full login name, with several default subfolders. The user's default folder and subfolders cannot be deleted, renamed, or moved. However, each user can create additional folders underneath the default folders.

A user called "admin" (for System Administrator) is created automatically when LightCycler® 480 Software is installed. The admin user has the Local Administrator role and creates other user accounts. The admin account cannot be edited or disabled.

Once a user account has been created, it cannot be edited or deleted in a traceable database. A user account can, however, be made inactive by the Local Administrator. An inactive user account cannot have a role and cannot be assigned to a group.

14.1.2 Understanding Groups

A group is a collection of user accounts. The members of a group have access to objects belonging to any group member. For example, a group member can open any experiment belonging to another member.

Users can belong to more than one group. A user has access to another user's objects when both users are members of at least one group, regardless of membership in other groups. For example, if user Bob belongs to Groups A and B, while user Susan belongs to Groups B and C, both Bob and Susan have access to each other's objects because both are members of Group B. The level of access a user has to objects belonging to others is determined by the user role assigned to the user account. For more information about user roles, see the next section.

Setting up a user group is especially important if several Expert Users access a common remote database from several individual control units or data workstations connected via a network. If you want to share database objects and use them on different control units or data workstation within the network, all Expert Users that require this access must be member of one group. For details on accessing a remote database see section Setting up a Client/Server Network.

14.1.3 Understanding Roles

Each user account is assigned to one and only one role. The role determines the user's privileges. There are three roles:

- Standard User
- Expert User
- Local Administrator

Roles cannot be created or deleted, but certain access privileges can be enabled or disabled for each role. For more information, see section *Working with Roles*.

It is possible to have multiple Standard Users, Expert Users and Local Administrators.

14.1.4 Privileges of the Standard User Role

Standard Users can do the following:

- Change their password
- View experiment data and print reports
- View experiments and folders in the navigator
- Use macros
- Import and export data in the navigator
- Include and exclude samples from the analysis if enabled by an administrator
- View database information
- View the instrument tool and the login history tabs tool
- Edit the analysis notes field

Standard Users cannot do the following:

- Change experiments, except as noted below
- Change the instrument tool
- View detection formats and report settings
- Save objects, macros or templates.

14.1.5 Privileges of the Expert User Role

Expert Users can do the following:

- Change their password
- Use the *Run programming* module to create and execute experiments, including the following:
  - Use the *Sample Editor*, Property Editor, and Property Viewer
  - Use the Subset Editor
  - Add an analysis to an experiment and edit all analysis settings
  - Apply and create templates and macros
- Create standard curves and Color Compensation objects
- Create experiment macros
- Create all other objects and open, copy, execute, modify and move any of their objects; for experiments, this includes modifying sample information, adding an analysis to the experiment, including and excluding samples from the analysis, and using the analysis toolbar to change any of the analysis settings
- Rename their non-default folders and objects
- Open, copy, and execute objects owned by the Local Administrator
- Open, copy, and execute objects owned by other Expert Users who are members of the same group
- View and copy items from the *Roche* folder
- Delete their non-traceable objects, if enabled by the Local Administrator
- Create and execute queries
- Change their preference settings
- Manage detection formats when enabled by an administrator
- Access the instrument tool and add an instrument

Expert Users cannot do the following:

- Create, delete, move, modify, or rename objects belonging to the Local Administrator or other Expert Users
- See the folders or objects belonging to Expert Users who are not members of the same group
- Copy, delete or rename experiment objects (including their own experiment objects)
- Delete, move, copy, or rename default folders (including their own folders)

14.1.6 Privileges of the Local Administrator Role

Local Administrators can do the following:

- Everything that an Expert User can do
- Use the *Run programming* module to create and execute experiments
- Create and use existing templates and macros to execute experiments and analyze results
- Create all other objects and open, copy, execute, modify, delete, and move any of their own objects (modification rights include modifying sample information, adding an analysis to the experiment, and using the analysis toolbar to change any of the analysis settings)
- Open, execute and copy items belonging to other Local Administrators
- Open items in the *Roche* folder
- Create system folders that are owned by the Local Administrator but can be read by all users
- Create, open, copy, execute, modify, delete and move objects in folders belonging to Expert Users
- Use the *User Access* tool to manage users and groups; for more information, see section *Managing Users, Groups and Roles*.
- Maintain the database (update, reindex and cleanup)
- Activate the following access privileges for roles:
  - For Roche Users: The ability to access objects owned by the Local Administrator
  - For Expert Users: The ability to delete non-traceable objects owned by the user and to edit detection formats

Local Administrators cannot do the following:

- Delete or deactivate the *admin* account
- Modify or move objects in the *Roche* folder
- Move, delete or modify objects owned by other Local Administrators; for example, one administrator cannot copy objects into another administrator's folder
- Delete, move, copy or rename default folders (including their own default folders)

14.1.7 User Access to Objects

The access rights to certain objects (experiments, folders, templates, preferences) in the LightCycler® 480 database are defined by the user role. Access to each kind of object is regulated by specific kinds of permissions. The following table lists user access rights to database objects:

For an **experiment**, there are six kinds of permissions:

- Read — View the experiment in the navigator, open the experiment, and export the experiment to a file
- Move — Move the experiment from one folder to another
- Modify — Make changes to the experiment
- Execute — Execute the experiment on an instrument
- Rename — Change the experiment name
- Delete — Delete the experiment from the database

Owner	Type of User	Rights in ...	
		Traceable Database	Research Database
Admin	Experiment owner	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read	Read, Delete
	Administrator not in group	Read	Read, Delete
	Expert user in same group	Read	Read
	Expert user not in group	Read	Read
	Standard user in same group	Read	Read
	Standard user not in group	Read	Read
Expert	Experiment Owner	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Administrator not in group	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Expert user in same group	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read	Read
	Standard user not in group	None	None

Owner	Type of User	Rights in ...	
		Traceable Database	Research Database
Standard	Experiment Owner	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Administrator not in group	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Expert user in same group	Read, Move, Modify, Execute	Read, Move, Modify, Execute, Delete, Rename
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read	Read
	Standard user not in group	None	None

For a **folder**, there are six kinds of permissions:

- Read — View the folder and its contents in the navigator
- Delete — Delete an empty folder
- Copy — Make a copy of the folder in another location (copies tree but not objects)
- Write — Save a new object to the folder or create subfolder
- Move — Move the folder from one parent folder to another
- Rename — Change the name of a folder

Owner	Type of User	Rights in ...	
		Traceable Database	Research Database
Admin	Folder Owner	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Administrator not in group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
Expert	Folder Owner	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Administrator not in group	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	None	None
Standard	Folder Owner	Read, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Administrator not in group	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Expert user in same group	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename	Read, Delete, Copy, Write, Move, Rename
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	None	None

For **templates and macros** there are six kinds of permissions:

- Read — View and open in the navigator, apply to experiment, and export
- Edit — Open and edit notes and template type only
- Delete — Delete the template
- Copy — Make a copy of the template in another location
- Move — Move the template from one parent folder to another
- Rename — Change the name of a template

Owner	Type of User	Rights in ...	
		Traceable Database	Research Database
Admin	Template/Macro owner	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Administrator not in group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	Read, Copy	None
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
Expert	Template/Macro owner	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename
	Administrator not in group	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	None	None
Standard	N/A (Standard user cannot create templates)		

For a **preference**, there are six kinds of permissions:

- Read — View in the navigator
- Edit — Open in navigator and edit
- Delete — Delete the preference
- Copy — Make a copy of the preference in another location
- Move — Move the preference from one parent folder to another
- Rename — Change the name of the preference

Owner	Type of User	Rights in ...	
		Traceable Database	Research Database
Admin	Preference owner	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename
	Administrator in same group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Administrator not in group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
Expert	Preference owner	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move
	Administrator in same group	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move
	Administrator not in group	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	None	None
Standard	Preference owner	Read, Edit, Copy, Move	Read, Edit, Copy, Move
	Administrator in same group	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move
	Administrator not in group	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move
	Expert user in same group	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename	Read, Edit, Delete, Copy, Move, Rename
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	None	None

Standard objects include standard curves, melt standards, and Color Compensation objects.

For a standard object there are five kinds of permissions.

- Read — View in the navigator
- Rename — Change the name of the standard object
- Delete — Delete the standard object
- Copy — Make a copy of the standard object in another location
- Move — Move the standard object from one parent folder to another

Owner	Type of User	Rights in ...	
		Traceable Database	Research Database
Admin	Standard object owner	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move
	Administrator in same group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Administrator not in group	Read, Delete, Copy	Read, Delete, Copy
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
Expert	Standard object owner	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move
	Administrator in same group	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move
	Administrator not in group	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move
	Expert user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	None	None
Standard	Standard object owner	Read, Rename, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Copy, Move
	Administrator in same group	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move
	Administrator not in group	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move
	Expert user in same group	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move	Read, Rename, Delete, Copy, Move
	Expert user not in group	None	None
	Standard user in same group	Read, Copy	Read, Copy
	Standard user not in group	None	None

14.1.8 Managing Users, Groups, and Roles

The *User Access* tool allows you to perform the following:

- Create, modify, enable, or disable user accounts
- Assign roles to user accounts and change role assignments:
  - Research database: modify user account and role
  - Traceable database: modify user password
- Create or delete user groups and assign users to groups

You must have the Local Administrator role to use the *User Access* tool.

To open the User Access tool:

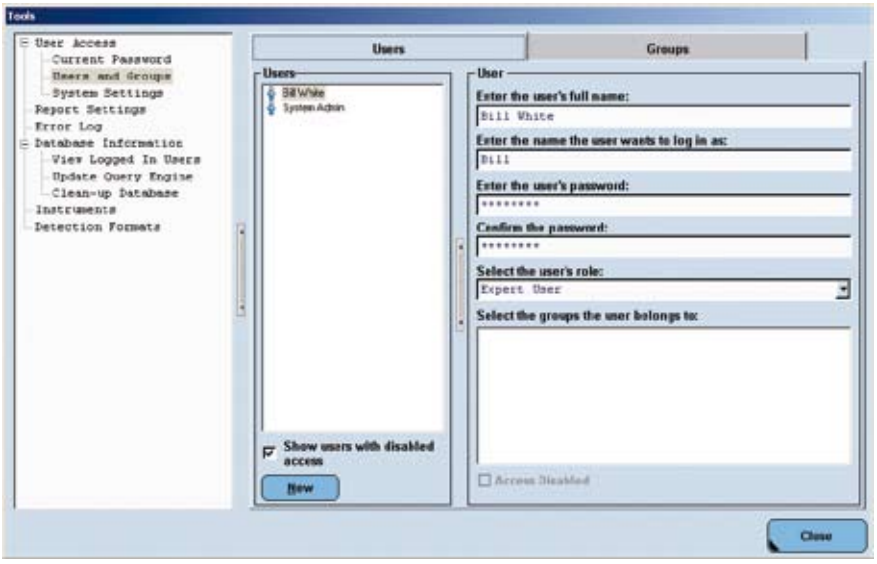
- From the *Tools* navigator, open *User Access*, and select *Users and Groups*.
- The *Users* tab is selected by default.

Working with Users

When working with the traceable (audit trail) LightCycler® 480 database, a user account can never be deleted, only disabled. In addition, the user's full name, login name and role cannot be changed.

To create a new user account:

1. In the *User Access* tool, click *Users and Groups*. Select the *Users* tab (if not already selected).
2. Click *New*.
3. Enter the user's full name, login name and password, and select a role for the user.

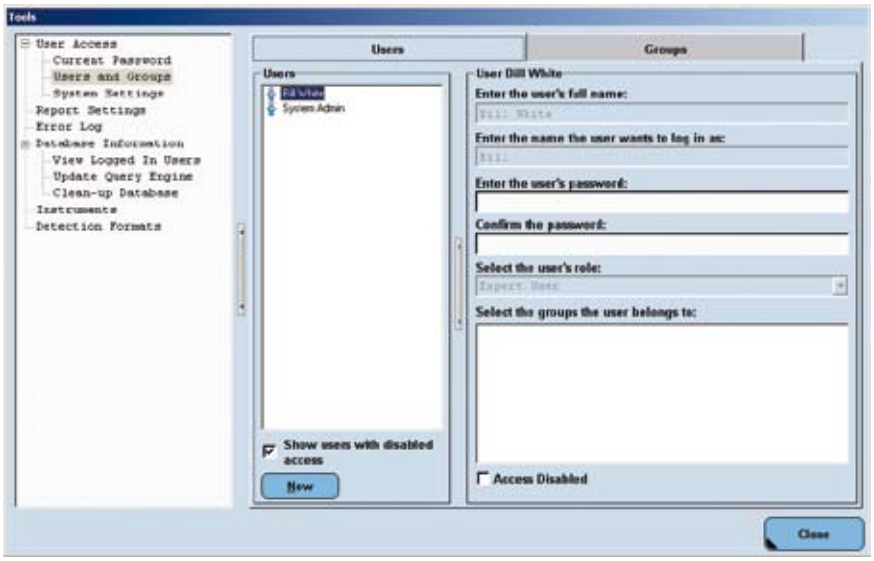


4. Check each group to which the user should be added. If no groups have been created, you can add the user when you create the group.
5. Click *Close*.
   A default folder for the new user is added to the *Navigator*.

■

To edit, enable, or disable a user account:

1. In the *User Access* tool, click *Users and Groups*. Select the *Users* tab (if not already selected).
2. Select the user name in the *Users* list. Information about the selected user is displayed:



3. In a traceable database the only information you can change is the password and group membership.
4. To disable the user account, select the *Access Disabled* checkbox; to reactivate a disabled account, clear the *Access Disabled* checkbox.

   You cannot disable the System Admin account.
5. When finished, click *Close*.

■

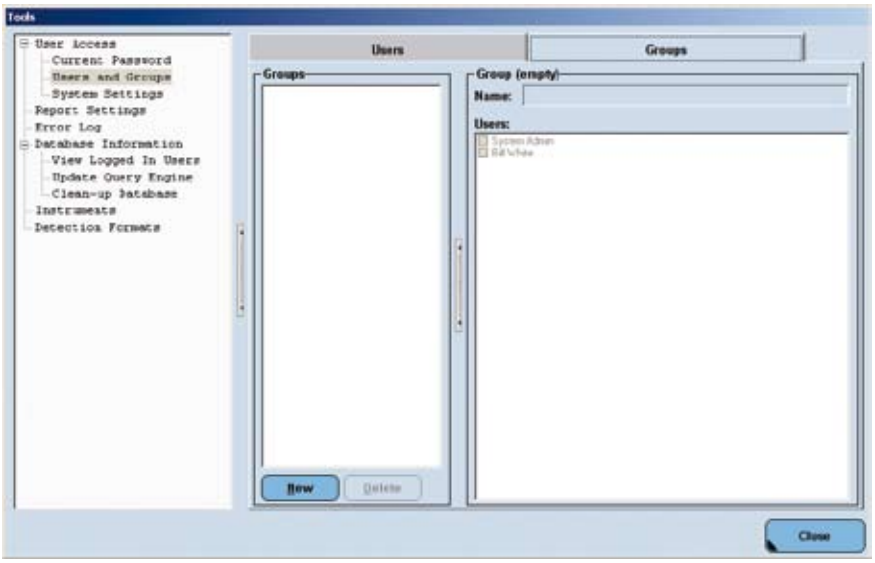
Working with Groups

When working with the traceable (audit trail) LightCycler® 480 database, a user account can never be deleted, only disabled. In addition, the user's full name, login name and role cannot be changed.

As an alternative to the procedure described below, you can always access the Group window directly by double-clicking a group object in the Navigator.

To create a new group:

1. In the *User Access* tool, click *Users and Groups*. Select the *Groups* tab (if not already selected).



2. Click *New*.
3. Type a name for the group in the *Name* box.
4. To add users to the group, check the names of the users you want to add.

   You can create a group without adding users.
5. Click the empty group icon that was created in the *Groups* list to confirm your input.
6. If you did not add users to the group, a message asks you to confirm saving the group without users. Click *Yes*.

   The group is added to the *Groups* folder in the *Navigator*.

To edit a group:

1. In the *User Access* tool, click *Users and Groups*. Select the *Users* tab (if not already selected).
2. Select the group name in the *Groups* list.
3. Change the group name or select and deselect members of the group. You can also assign a group to a user when you edit the user account. For more information, see section *Managing Users, Groups, and Roles*.
4. Click the group name in the *Groups* list to confirm your changes.

To delete a group:

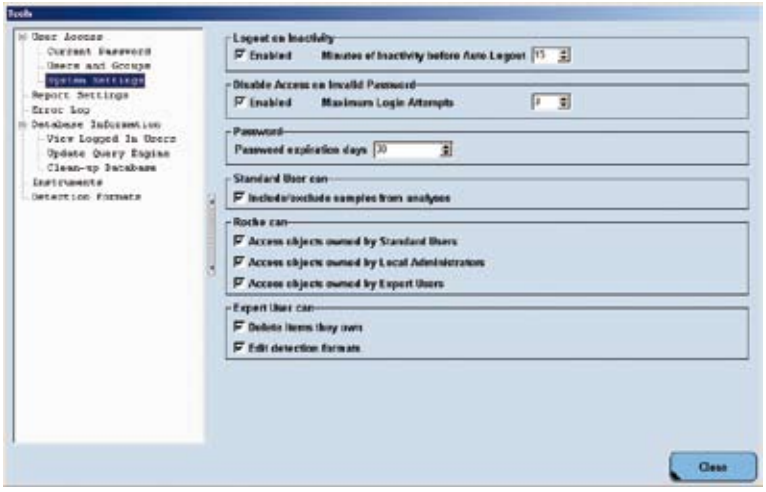
1. In the *User Access* tool, click *Users and Groups*. Select the *Users* tab (if not already selected).
2. Select the group name in the *Groups* list.
3. Click *Delete*.
4. A message asks you to confirm the deletion of the group. Click *Yes*.
   The group is deleted from the *Groups* folder in the *Navigator*.

14.1.9 Working with Roles

You cannot create or delete roles, and you cannot change a user's role assignment. You can modify certain access rights associated with the Expert User and Roche User roles. You cannot modify access rights of the Local Administrator role. You can also specify the period of inactivity before a user is automatically logged off as well as the maximum login attempts before an access is disabled on entering an invalid password.

To set conditions for access and modify a role's access rights:

1. In the *User Access* tool, click *System Settings*. The available options are displayed in the *Editor* pane:



   The following options are available:

Name	Description
Logout on Inactivity	When enabled, causes users to be automatically logged out after a designated period of inactivity.
Minutes of Inactivity	The period of inactivity [1 – 999 min.] after which auto logout occurs.
Disable Access on Invalid Password	When enabled, causes a user account to be disabled after a designated number of unsuccessful login attempts.
Maximum Login Attempts	Specifies the number of unsuccessful login attempts [1 – 5] that causes automatic logout.
Password expiration days	Specifies the number of days [1 – 99999] before a password expires.
Standard User can Include/exclude samples from analysis	When selected, Standard Users may include or exclude samples from an analysis.
Roche can Access objects owned by Standard users	When selected, allows Roche Users to access objects owned by Standard Users.
Roche can Access objects owned by Local Administrators	When selected, allows Roche Users to access objects owned by Local Administrators.
Roche can Access objects owned by Expert Users	When selected, allows Roche Users to access objects owned by Expert Users.
Expert User can Delete items they own	When selected, allows Expert Users to delete their own objects.
Expert User can Edit detection formats	When selected, allows Expert Users to edit detection formats.

2. Select or deselect the available options.
3. When finished click *Close*.

14.1.10 Changing Your Password

When you are assigned an account on the LightCycler® 480 Software, you receive an initial password, which you can use to log onto the LightCycler® 480 Software the first time (you will be prompted to change your initial password upon your first login). You can change your password whenever you want.

To change your password:

- In the *User Access* tool, select *Current Password*.
- Enter your current password in the *Old Password* field.
- Enter the new password in the *New Password* field and again in the *Confirm Password* field.
- Click *Close*.

When the entries in the New Password and Confirm Password fields do not match, the Close button is not active.

The password must contain at least six characters; one character must be a number and one character must be upper case. Passwords are case-sensitive! Remember the password or keep it in a secure place. Do not share your password with others!

14.2 Report Settings

Here you can define whether the Roche logo should appear on the report or not.

In the *Report Settings* tool you can set the appearance of the Roche logo in reports.

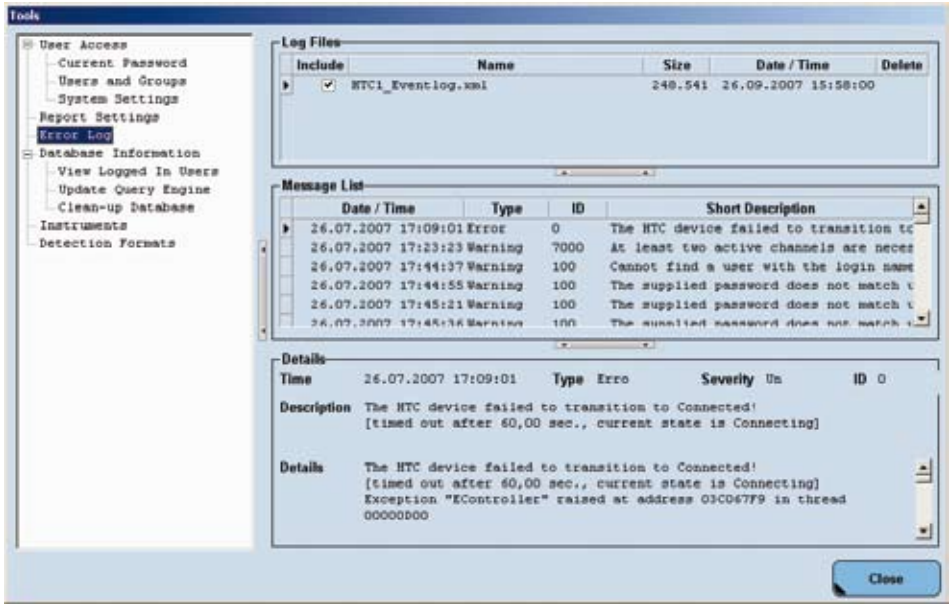
- Select/deselect the *Show Roche Logo* checkbox to set the appearance of the Roche logo on or off.

14.3 Error Log

All errors generated by the software are displayed in the message area, see section *Understanding the LightCycler® 480 Software Main Window*. All software error messages are recorded in several log files, which can be queried with the *Error Log* tool.

If the file size of an Error Log exceeds a limit, a new file will be opened by the software.

After choosing the *Error Log* tool a browser window is displayed with the available log files, message lists, and details of selected error messages. The current file is selected by default.



To display an Error Log file:

1. Open the *Error Log* tool.
2. Click the *Include* checkbox in the *Log Files* list for the Error Log files to be displayed. The corresponding messages are displayed in the *Message List* area.
3. Select a message in the *Message List* area to display the details of this message.

To delete Error Log files:

1. Open the *Error Log* tool.
2. Click the *Delete* checkbox in the *Log Files* list for the Error Log file to be deleted.

The currently used Error Log file cannot be deleted.

14.4 Database Information

The *Database Information* window allows you to:

- Display the users logged onto the current database
- View status of the database engine; allows updating if out of date
- Perform a batch export, optionally deleting the exported objects

Tab	Usage
View Logged in Users	Displays a list of the currently logged-on users.
Update Query Engine	Displays the status of the database query engine. If updating the database is necessary, the *Update* button is active. *Updating the database might be necessary after you updated to a new LightCycler® 480 Software version. Reindex button: When the database increases in size the time to access your data might also increase. Use the reindex function to optimize the organization of the data in the database thus minimizing the access time to your data.*
Clean-up Database	This option provides two functions: - You can delete selected objects from the navigator of a traceable database. - Administrators can create a database with the same structure (*i.e.*, users, groups, and folders) and basic content as the current database. *Database clean up is similar to a batch export with the difference that multiple database objects can be exported and deleted from the database at the same time.*

Although the Logged in Users and Query Engine options can be accessed by both Expert Users and Local Administrators, the Clean-up option can be accessed only by Local Administrators.

14.4.1 Traceable and Research Databases

LightCycler® 480 Software uses a database with an audit trail (traceable database) or a database without an audit trail (research database).

- When working in a traceable database, you must confirm all changes to database objects and submit a reason for the change. A traceable database does not allow experiments and experiment-related objects to be renamed or deleted, *e.g.*, Color Compensation objects, external melting standards, external standard curves.

  In a traceable database, experiments might even not be copied. But it is possible to rename and delete templates and empty folders. You can also rename folders.

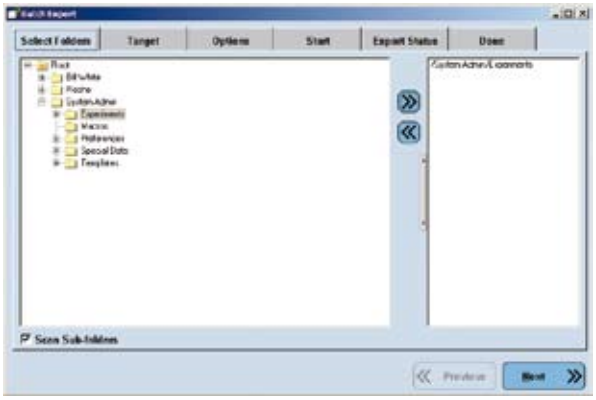
- In a research database you are free to change database objects without confirming the change and without submitting a reason for your actions.

  In a research database you can rename, copy or delete experiments and experiment-related objects.

14.4.2 To Clean up the Database

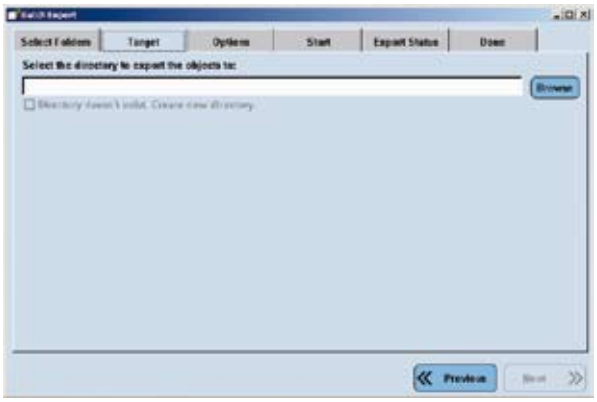
1. Open the *Database Information* tool.
   Click the *Clean-Up Database* option. The Clean up wizard opens.

2. Select the source. If you want to clean-up the complete database, select *Root*. Select the *Scan Sub-folders* box to include all subfolders.



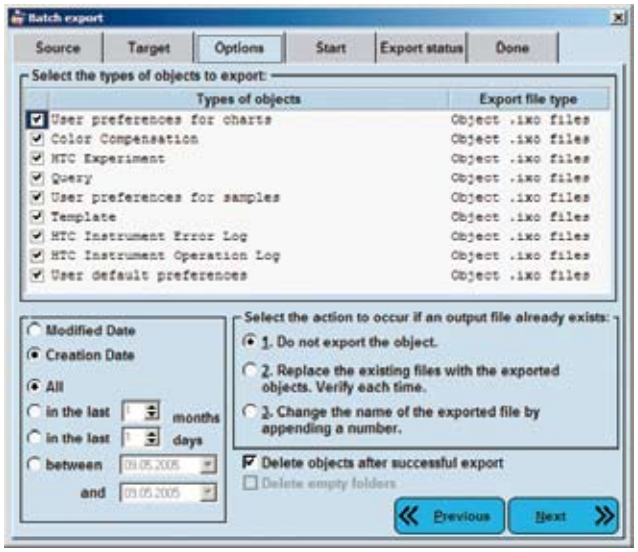
   Use the and buttons to add or delete sources to the clean-up.

3. Select the target directory to which you want to export the database objects.



► ► ►

4 On the *Options* tab, select all database object types you want to export and delete from the currently installed database:



To delete the selected objects, you must tick the checkbox *Delete objects after successful export*. Otherwise the objects are just exported and not deleted.

All other options are identical to the *Batch Export* wizard. For details see *Exporting Multiple Experiment Files Simultaneously*.

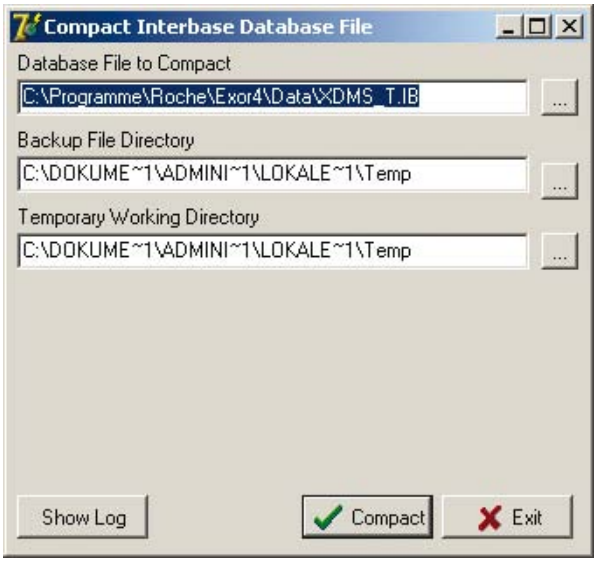
5 Proceed to the next steps of the wizard to complete the database clean up.

14.4.3 To Compress the Database

To compress a database, the LightCycler® 480 Software provides the *CompactIB* tool. The *CompactIB* tool only compresses the data structure in the database; no database objects are deleted.

1. Start the *CompactIB* tool by selecting the entry from the *Roche* program group in the Windows Start menu.

The *Compact Interbase Database File* dialog box is displayed.



2. ▶ Select the database you want to compress.
   ▶ Select the *Backup File* and *Temporary Working Directory*.
3. Click *Compact*.

■

14.4.4 How to Handle Databases from Software Version 1.3 or Earlier

While software version 1.5 is fully backwards compatible, some of the additional features are not available in databases created with software version 1.3 or earlier.

- ▶ New virtual LightCycler® 480 Instrument II Instruments
- ▶ Universal CC objects
- ▶ Roche Run Templates for LightCycler® 480 Instrument II and for some applications (Endpoint Genotyping and Scanning)
- ▶ New Demo experiments
- ▶ New filter combinations and detection formats

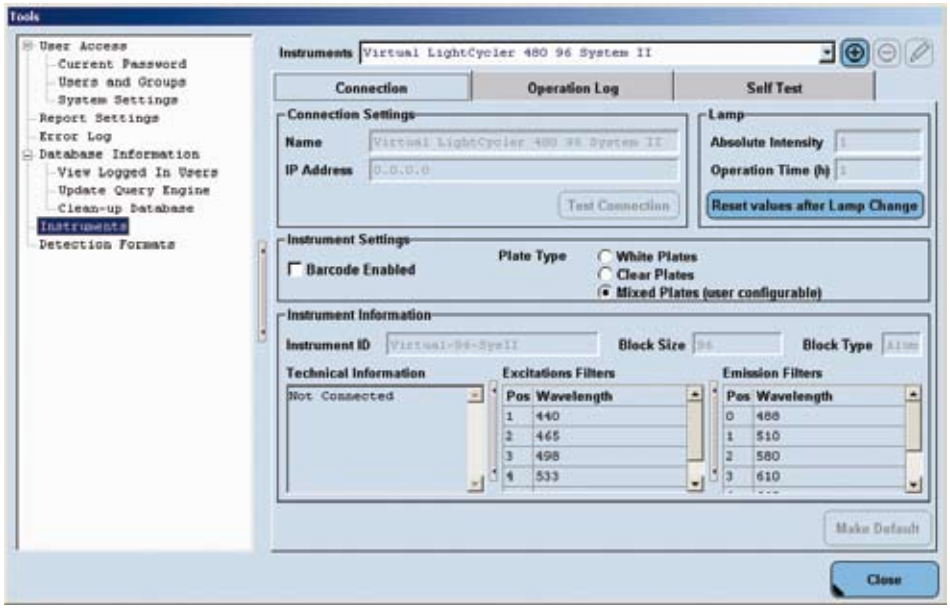
14.4.5 How to Handle Objects from Software Version 1.3 or Earlier

Some objects from software version 1.3 or earlier will not work with software version 1.5. These objects should be deleted and newly created using software V1.5:

- Macros will not work
- Sample List Templates, Analysis Templates and Report Templates will not work correctly
- Standard curve objects (Fit Points) will not work
- Auto pairing in Relative Quantification will not generate any pairs (without editing the sample names in the *Sample Editor*), but existing pairs are preserved.

14.5 Instruments

The *Instrument* window allows you to view information for the currently active instrument and to change the active instrument and the used multiwell plates.



The *Instruments* window has the following control elements and input fields:

- Connection tab

Name	Description
Instruments	Select the instrument to view
Make Default	Set the selected instrument the active instrument
New	Create a new instrument object and activate the connection settings fields
Delete	(Inactive) You cannot a delete an instrument object
Edit	(Inactive) You cannot edit an instrument object in a traceable database. The instrument name can be edited only in a research database.
Instrument Information	Display the following: - Instrument ID, block size and block type - Technical information - Excitation and emission filters - Instrument firmware version information

By default, four virtual LightCycler® 480 Instruments (two in either 96 or 384 version) are defined in the LightCycler® 480 Software. The virtual LightCycler® 480 Instruments are required to enable programming in offline mode, since you can only program an experiment if an instrument is installed in the LightCycler® 480 Software. If you need to program an experiment while a real instrument is not connected, select one of the virtual instruments in the Instruments dialog and set it as the default. For details, see below.

▶ Connection Settings area

Name	Description
Instrument	Name of the currently selected instrument
Address	IP address of the selected instrument
Test Connection	Option to verify a connection to the selected instrument

▶ Lamp area

Name	Description
Absolute Intensity	Intensity of the instrument lamp as a counter value, read from the instrument
Operation Time	Total time (in hours) the Xenon lamp has been operated, read from instrument
Reset values after Lamp Change	Set lamp operation time to 0. *Select the Reset Counter button only after you have exchanged the Xenon lamp (For details, see section Exchanging the Xenon Lamp.)*

▶ Instrument Settings area

Name	Description
Barcode enabled	Enables the internal bar-code scanner used to read a multiwell plate ID.
Plate Type	Type of plates to be used: White Plates, Clear Plates or Mixed Plates *Make sure the correct plate type is selected before experiments are started.* *If you select Mixed Plates, you must define the plate type in the Overview screen before you start a run.* *The barcode of all clear plates begins with "C" (e.g., C2345678). The barcode enables you to check, which plate type you used in an experiment.*

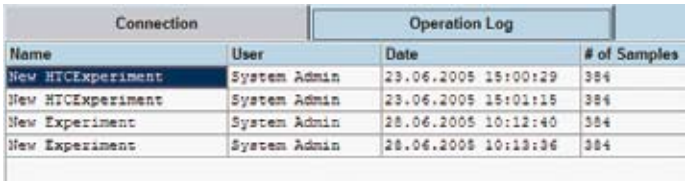
▶ Instrument Information area

Name	Description
Instrument ID	Name of the connected instrument
Block Size	Type of block cycler installed in the connected instrument (96 or 384)
Barcode Enabled	
Technical Information	Version of the current instrument firmware
Excitation Filters	List of excitation filters available in the instrument
Emission Filters	List of emission filters available in the instrument

▶ Operation Log tab

To view the Operation log:

1. In the *Instruments* section of the *Tools* window, select the instrument name from the *Instruments* list.
2. Select the *Operation Log* tab.
3. The *Operation Log* displays a list of the runs performed on the instrument. The log includes basic information about each run, such as the experiment name, user name, date of run, and number of samples (96 or 384).



■

▶ Self Test tab

Name	Description
View Self Test	Displays the most recent self test report from the instrument: ▶ Instrument ID ▶ Module Status ▶ Self Test Result ▶ Instrument Software Version ▶ Block Serial Number ▶ Block Size ▶ Block Type ▶ IP Address ▶ Version of controller firmware
Print	Print the most recent self test report from the instrument.
Save as PDF	Save the most recent self test report from the instrument as a PDF file.

Defining an Instrument

To define and connect a LightCycler® 480 Instrument follow the steps described below:

1	Open the Tools dialog by clicking the button.
2	From the *Navigator* of the *Tools* dialog select *Instruments*.
3	Next to the Instruments selection box click .
4	Enter a name for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument and click *OK*.
5	On the *Connection* tab enter the IP address of the Instrument (default 192.168.95.41).
6	(Optional) Click *Test Connection* to test the IP address.
7	Click *Make Default* to make this instrument your default instrument.
8	Click *Close*.

14.6 Detection Formats

A detection format specifies one or more excitation–emission filter combinations. The *Detection Format* tab is used to define detection formats and to specify which detection formats are active (*i.e.*, available to be selected for an experiment). When programming a new experiment, you can choose detection formats to be used during the run from detection formats previously defined on the *Detection Format* tab. If a detection format contains more than one filter pair, you can choose which of the combinations is actually applied during a run by using the *Customize* option, (For details, see section *Programming and Running an Experiment*.)

The following default detection formats are available for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument I filter set:

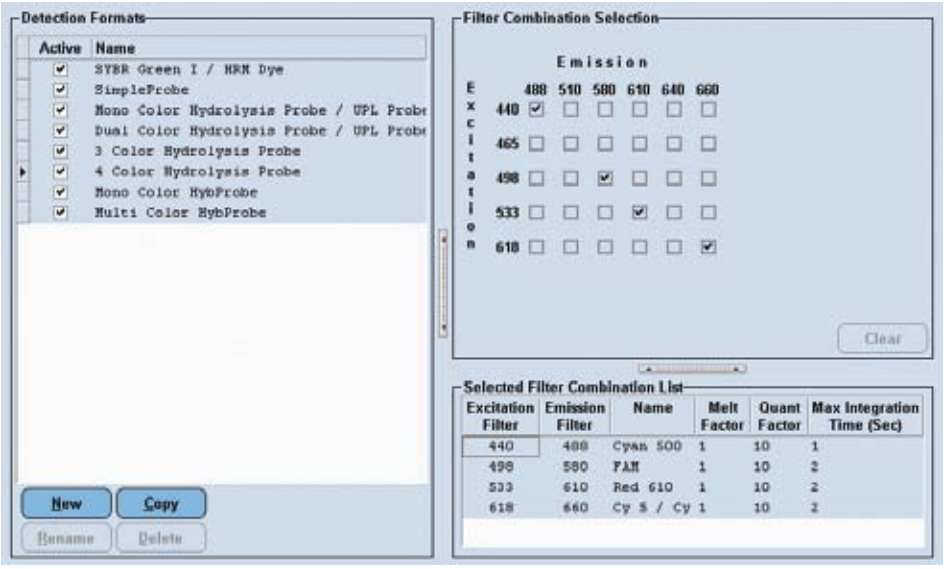
Detection Format	Filter Combination Name	Excitation Filter	Emission Filter
SYBR Green I / HRM Dye	SYBR Green I / HRM Dye	483	533
SimpleProbe	SimpleProbe	483	533
Mono Color Hydrolysis Probe / UPL Probe	FAM	483	533
Dual Color Hydrolysis Probe / UPL Probe	FAM	483	533
	VIC / HEX / Yellow555	523	568
Multi Color Hydrolysis Probe	Cyan 500	450	500
	FAM	483	533
	VIC / HEX / Yellow555	523	568
	Red 610	558	610
	Cy 5	615	670
Mono Color HybProbe	Red 640	483	640
Multi Color HybProbe	Fluos	483	533
	Red 610	483	610
	Red 640	483	640
	Cy 5	483	670

The following default detection formats are available for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II filter set:

Detection Format	Filter Combination Name	Excitation Filter	Emission Filter
SYBR Green I / HRM Dye	SYBR Green I / HRM Dye	465	510
SimpleProbe	SimpleProbe	465	510
Mono Color Hydrolysis Probe / UPL Probe	FAM	465	510
Dual Color Hydrolysis Probe / UPL Probe	FAM	465	510
	VIC / HEX / Yellow555	533	580
3 Color Hydrolysis Probe	FAM	465	510
	VIC / HEX / Yellow555	533	580
	Cy 5/Cy 5.5	618	660
4 Color Hydrolysis Probe	Cyan 500	440	488
	FAM	498	580
	Red 610	533	610
	Cy 5/Cy 5.5	618	660
Mono Color HybProbe	Red 640	498	640
Multi Color HybProbe	Fluos	465	510
	Red 610	498	610
	Red 640	498	640
	Cy 5/Cy 5.5	498	660

Default detection formats cannot be edited.

The *Detection Format* tab includes a *Detection Format* list, a *Filter Combination Selection* area, and a *Selected Filter Combination List*.



The *Detection Format* list is used to manage detection formats. It has the following control elements:

Name	Usage
Active	Select the *Active* box to make the detection format listed on the corresponding row available for use in the software.
Name	Click the name entry of a detection format to change the name.
New	Activate the next available row in the *Detection Format* list to enter a name for a new format.
Copy	Copy the selected detection format.
Rename	Activate the currently selected detection format name for editing.
Delete	Delete the currently selected detection format.

Detection formats that are displayed as shaded in the Detection Format list cannot be edited (e.g., all Roche default detection formats).

For the detection format selected in the *Detection Format* list, the *Filter Combination* selection area displays a grid of emission and excitation filter names, with a checkbox for each possible combination. Select checkboxes for the emission–excitation combinations to include them in the currently selected detection format.

Valid (i.e., selectable) filter combinations are those for which emission wavelength minus *excitation wavelength is* ≥ *40.*

Details of the selected emission–excitation filter combinations are displayed in the *Selected Filter Combination List* below the *Filter Combination* selection area:

Name	Description
Excitation Filter	Display the excitation filter value
Emission Filter	Display the emission filter value
Name	Enter a name for the filter pair
Melt Factor	Multiplication factor to be applied to the filter pair for melt analysis (when the dynamic integration time mode is selected on the *Customize Detection Formats* dialog).
Quant Factor	Multiplication factor to be applied to the filter pair for quantification analysis. The Quant Factor represents the fold signal stroke from the initial background fluorescence to plateau phase (when the dynamic integration time mode is selected on the *Customize Detection Formats* dialog).
Maximum Integration Time	The maximum integration time that can be used for this pair when the dynamic integration mode is selected in the *Detection Format Definitions* dialog box. (For details, see section *Running an Experiment*.)

To define a detection format for a new fluorescent dye:

1. Open the *Detection Formats* tool.
   Click *New*.
2. Set your filter combination selection.
3. Set the *Quant Factor* to a value of “20” (to make sure not to exceed the dynamic range of the camera system) and the *Melt Factor* to “1.2” (if melting curves are run).
   The *Melt Factor* can be kept at “1.2” if decreasing fluorescence is expected during a melting ramp. If fluorescence increases during melt (which is not relevant for Roche probe formats), start with a Melt Factor of “20”.
4. Start the run and use the *Dynamic Integration Time Mode*.
5. In the *Experiment* module analyze the raw data on the Data tab using the Fluorescence History chart. Perform the following steps:
   - Determine the background fluorescence of the first 5 cycles and the plateau fluorescence of the last 5 cycles.
   - Calculate the maximum factor of fluorescence dynamics (= plateau/background fluorescence) and multiply by 2-3 (as safety range for higher fluorescence dynamics in later experiments) to obtain the *Quant Factor*.
6. The integration time per filter combination can be set between 10 msec – 10 sec. All detection formats supported by Roche require a maximum integration time < 2 sec. This should be taken as a starting value for all new detection formats. Only if very noisy data are obtained, the maximum integration time should be extended.

■

14.7 Setting the Plate Type

Two types of multiwell plates are available for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument:

- White plates
- Clear plates.

Use only the PCR multiwell plates recommended in this Operator's Manual.

Use the clear multiwell plates only with recommended formats, hydrolysis probes and SYBR Green I. Setting the Clear Plates option disables the built-in plate detector in the block cycler unit. For details see section Description of the Detection Unit.

The Local Administrator is responsible for the correct setting of the multiwell plate used (see section *Connection tab*). If experiments are to be run with both type of plates, the Local Administrator must ensure this setting in the *Connection tab*. Only the *Mixed Plates* setting enables the user to configure the used plate for the actual experiment.

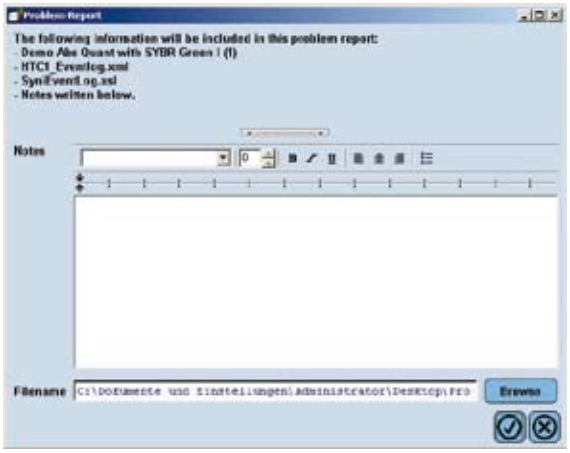
15 Diagnostic Tools

15.1 Instrument Problem Report

LightCycler® 480 Software includes the *Instrument Problem Report* as a diagnostic tool to monitor and report LightCycler® 480 Instrument performance: In the case of an instrument problem you can export an *Instrument Problem Report* (*.ipr) and forward it to your support representative. The *Instrument Problem Report* object contains error log and operation log information as well as the experimental data of the source experiment.

To export an instrument problem report:

1. Select the object (experiment, macro, etc.) which caused the problem in the *Navigator* window. The *Problem Reporting* button in the *Action* bar is enabled.
2. Click the *Problem Reporting* button.
3. The *Problem report* window opens.



4. Enter additional notes describing the problem into the *Notes* field.
5. In the *Filename* field, a default file destination and name is listed. Click *Browse* if you want to use a different file destination or name.
6. Confirm your entries by clicking the button and save the *Problem Report* as an *.ipr file.

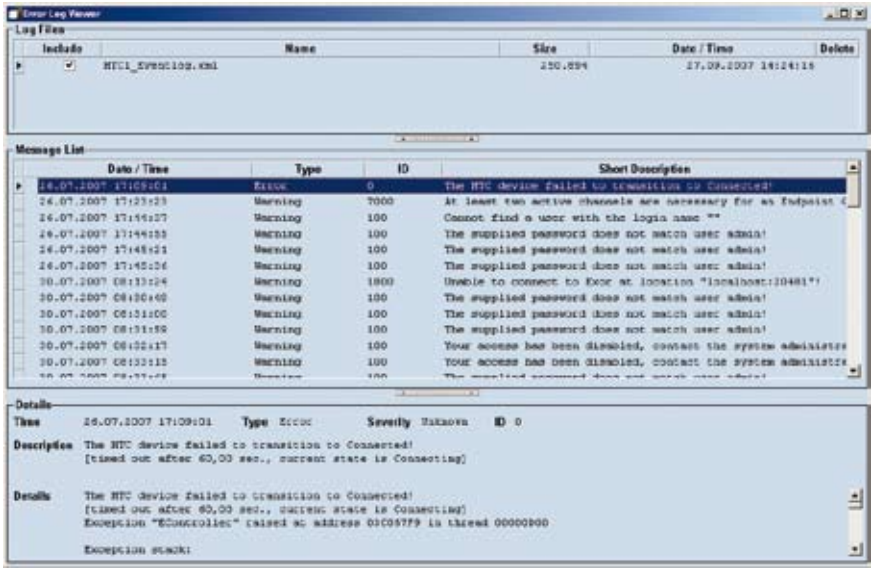
   In case the problem report generation fails, it is recommended to close and reopen the experiment and the software before creating the problem report.

15.2 Error Log

All errors generated by the software are displayed in the message area, see section *Understanding the LightCycler® 480 Software Main Window*. All software error messages are recorded in several log files, which can be queried with the *Error Log* tool.

To display an Error Log file:

1. Right-click in the *Message Area* of the *Overview* window.
2. Click *Show log* in the context menu.
   The *Error Log Viewer* window is displayed.



3. Click the *Include* check box in the *Log Files* list for the Error Log files to be displayed.
   The corresponding messages are displayed in the *Message List* area.
4. Select a message in the *Message List* area to display the details of this message.

To delete Error Log files:

1. Right-click in the *Message Area* of the *Overview* window.
2. Click *Show log* in the context menu.
   The *Error Log Viewer* window is displayed.
3. Click the *Delete* checkbox in the *Log Files* list for the Error Log file to be deleted.

The currently used Error Log file cannot be deleted.

15.3 Self Test

In the *Instruments* section of the *Tools* window you can view, print or save the most recent Self Test information for an instrument. For a description see section *Instruments*.

16 Installation and Maintenance of LightCycler® 480 Software

The LightCycler® 480 Software consists of the application, a database, and a database object server (called "Exor4"), which communicates with the database.

Read this section to learn more about the following topics:

- Installing LightCycler® 480 Software
- Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software and connecting an instrument
- Saving an existing database and installing additional databases
- Logging onto different databases
- Replacing an existing database file
- Setting up a client/server network
- Removing LightCycler® 480 Software

On the LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, the LightCycler® 480 Software - including one traceable database (XDMS_T) and one research database (XDMS_R) - is already pre-installed.

- If you want to start the LightCycler® 480 Software on the instrument PC that has been supplied, proceed with section *Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software and Connecting an Instrument*.
- If you want to install the LightCycler® 480 Software on a separate PC, proceed with section *Installing LightCycler® 480 Software*.

The LightCycler® 480 Software is pre-installed on all new LightCycler® 480 PCs .

16.1 Installing LightCycler® 480 Software

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is controlled by the LightCycler® 480 Software which is loaded on the control unit connected to the instrument. The LightCycler® 480 Software operates the LightCycler® 480 Instrument using the information provided with the experiment protocol. Software installation is performed using a self-extracting installation program. To install the software on a LightCycler® 480 control unit or on a non-Roche PC follow the steps below.

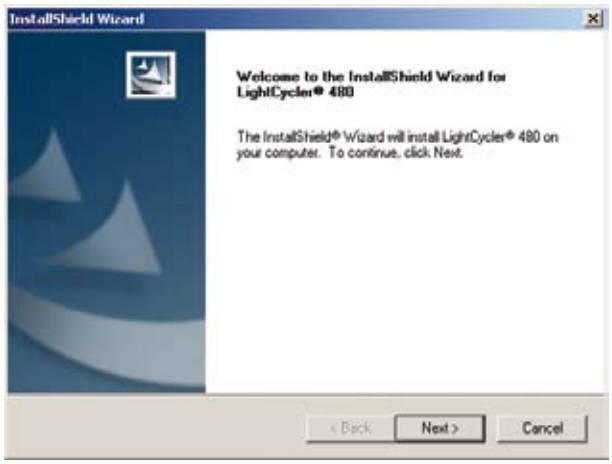
All previous versions of the LightCycler® 480 Software must be removed before installing version 1.5.

To install and run LightCycler® 480 Software on a non-Roche PC, the PC must fullfil the following minimum requirements:

- Pentium 4 or equivalent, 3.2 GHz
- 2 GB RAM
- 40 GB hard disk
- Network card
- Windows XP Professional, English version
- Graphics/Display min. 1280×1024 display resolution
- CD-RW/DVD-R drive

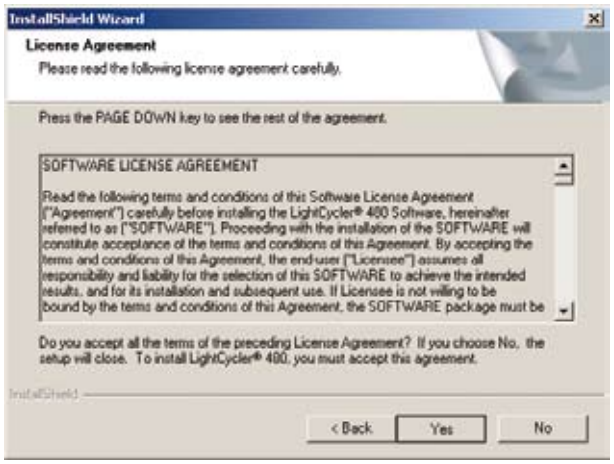
To install the LightCycler® 480 Software:

1. Ensure that you have the administration rights to install the software.
   Insert the LightCycler® 480 Software CD. If installation does not start automatically, double-click LightCycler480_Software_Setup.exe. The installation process transfers files, extracts the files, and prepares the installation wizard. The *InstallShield wizard Welcome* window opens. Click *Next*.

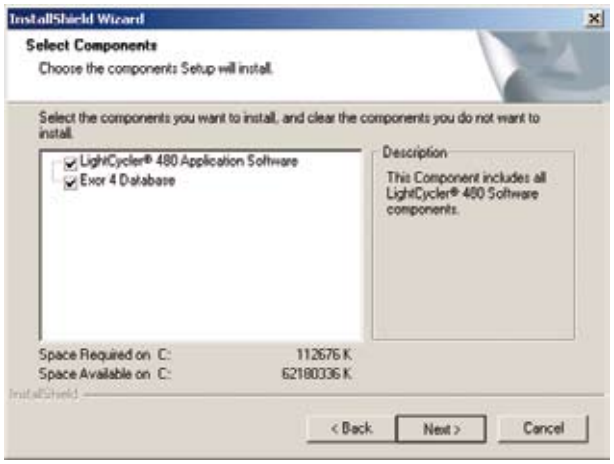


▶ ▶ ▶

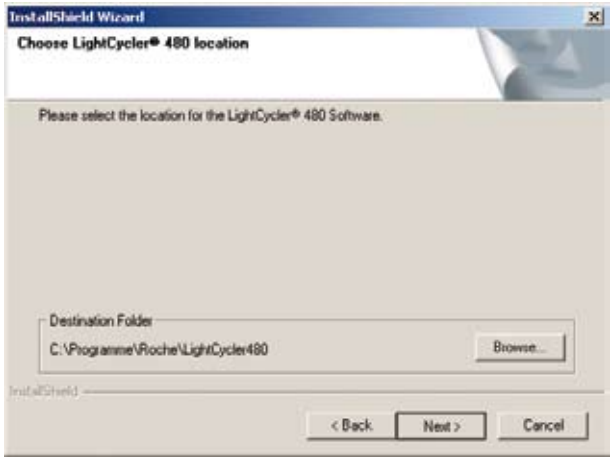
2 You are prompted to agree to the license conditions. Click *Yes* to proceed.



3 In the *Select Components* window, select the components you want to install (Light Cycler® 480 Software or Exor4 database or both). Both components are selected by default. Click *Next*.

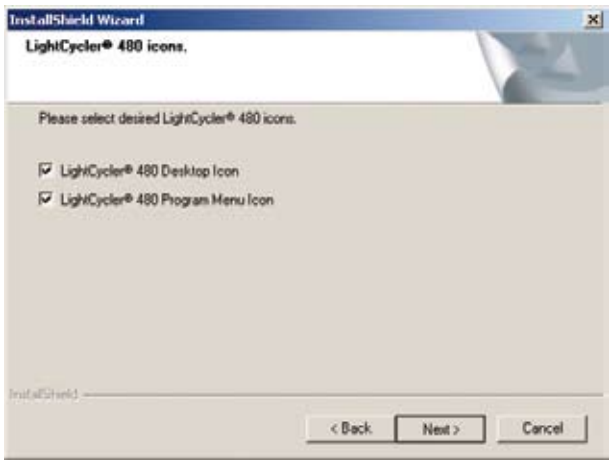


4 Select the location of LightCycler® 480 Software: either keep the default settings to install the LightCycler® 480 Software or browse to select a location for installation. Click *Next*.

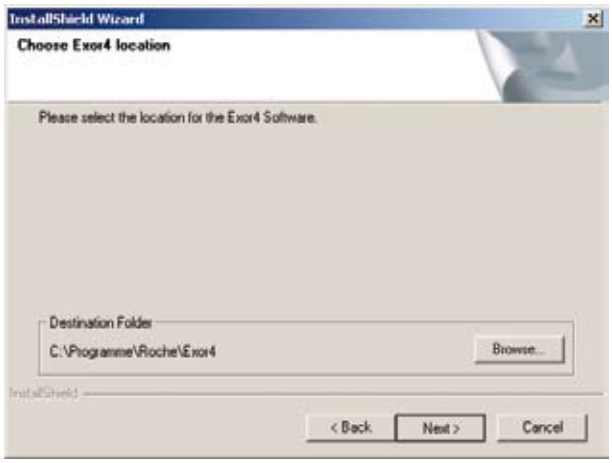


▶ ▶ ▶

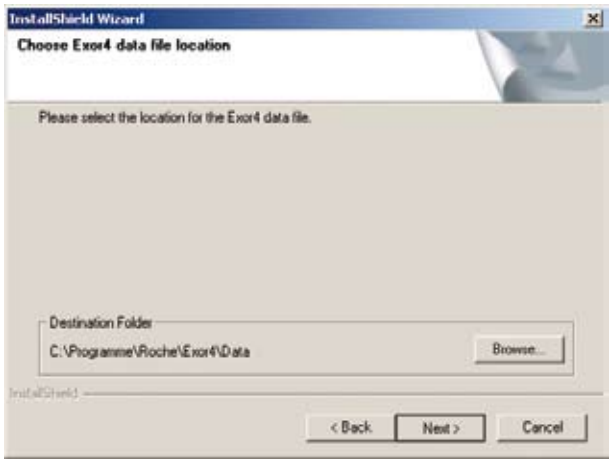
5 In the *LightCycler® 480 icons* window, select which program icons you want to create on the Windows desktop. Deselect the icon you do not want (but at least one icon has to be selected), then click *Next*.



6 In the *Choose Exor4 location* window, use the default settings to install the Exor4 object server or browse to select the location of the database engine. Click *Next*.



7 In the *Exor4 database file location* window, use the default settings to install the data base or browse to select the location of the database file. Click *Next*.



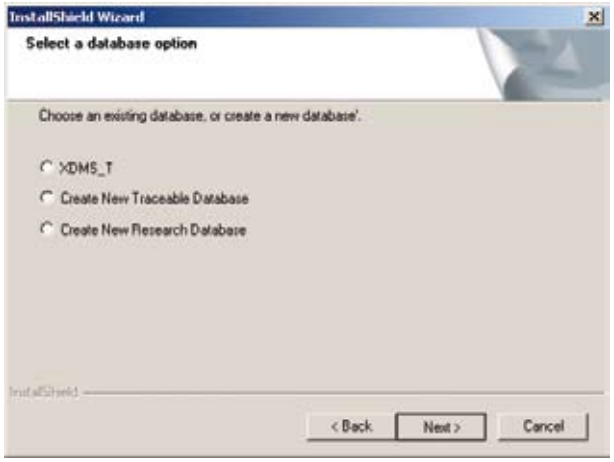
▶ ▶ ▶

8 Select whether you want to install

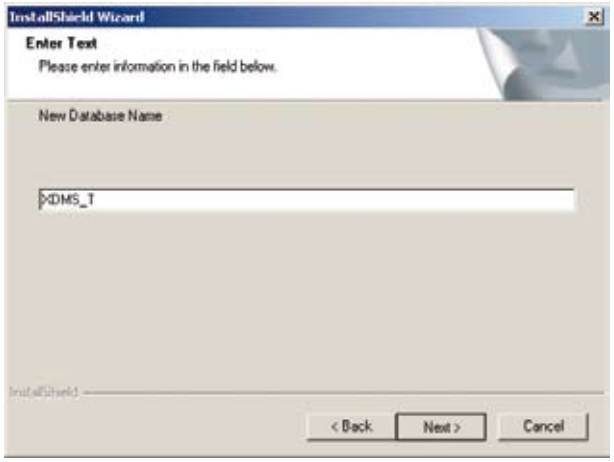
- an existing database (if any). The names of existing databases are displayed
- a new traceable database
- a new research database.

For detailed information about traceable and research databases see section *Database information*.

Click *Next*.



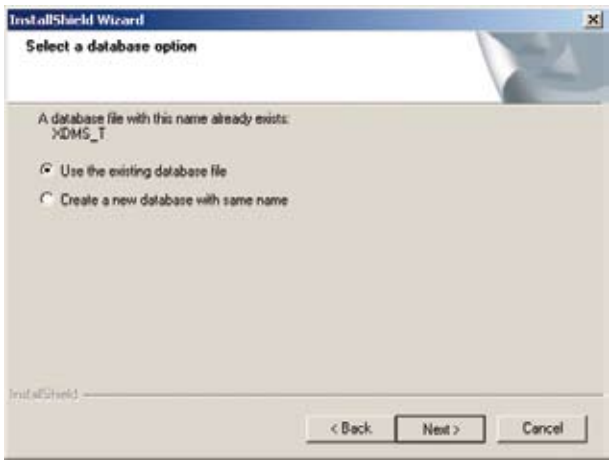
9 If you selected to install a new database in the previous step, you can enter a name for the new database. Click *Next*.



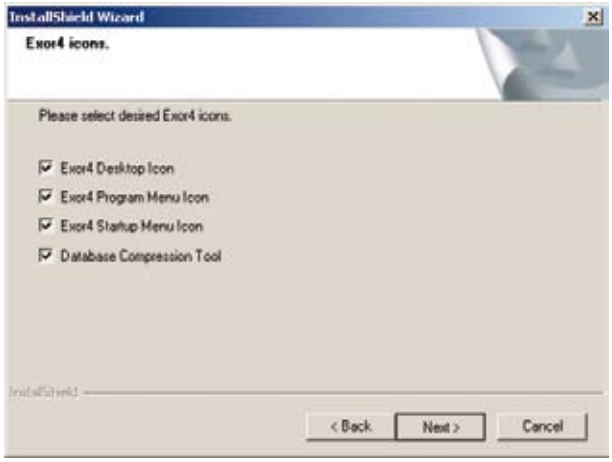
▶ ▶ ▶

D

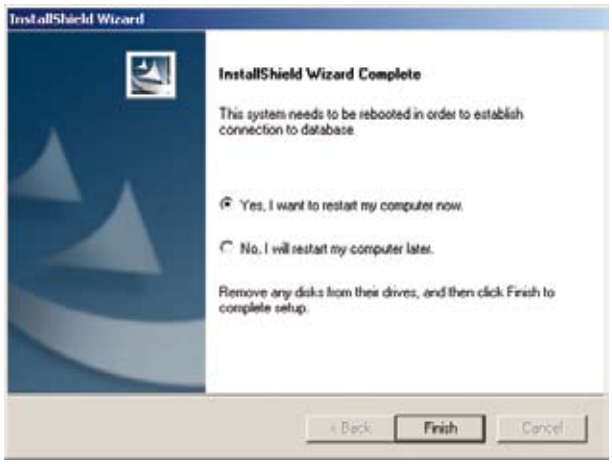
If the entered database name already exists, you can choose whether to use the existing database or to create a new one with the same database name. The existing database is maintained.



10 In the *Exor4 icons* window, select which Exor4 icons you want to create on the Windows desktop. Deselect the icon you do not want (but at least one icon has to be selected), then click *Next*.



11 The selected components are installed. When the installation process has finished, the *Installation Complete* window appears. Select *Yes, I want to restart my computer now.* Click *Finish*.



16.2 Starting the LightCycler® 480 Software and Connecting an Instrument

This section describes how to start LightCycler® 480 Software the first time and how to connect a LightCycler® 480 Instrument to the software.

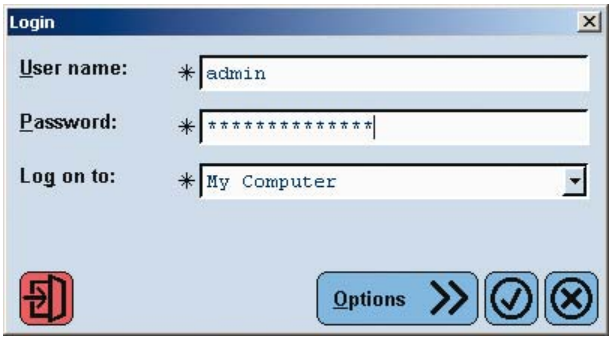
1. After the restart, wait until the password window appears.
   Enter login and password:
   - **Login: operator**
   - **Password: LC480**

   Click *OK*.

2. Switch on the LightCycler® 480 Instrument.

3. Double-click the LightCycler® 480 Software icon on the Windows desktop.

4. Log in to the software using the “admin” user name and “LightCycler480” as the initial password.

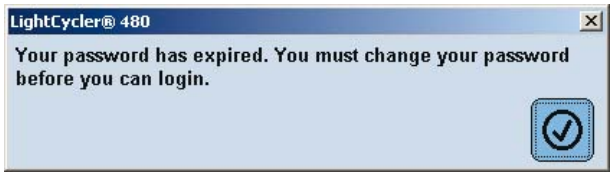


Log on to: Select the database you want to log on to. For detailed information see section *Logging onto Different Databases*

By default there are 2 databases preinstalled: one traceable and one non-traceable (research) database. Please select the database you want to log on to.

► ► ►

5 ▶ A message appears telling you that you must change the password now.



▶ Click 

▶ Enter your current password in the *Old Password* field.

▶ Enter the new password in the *New Password* field and again in the *Confirm Password* field.

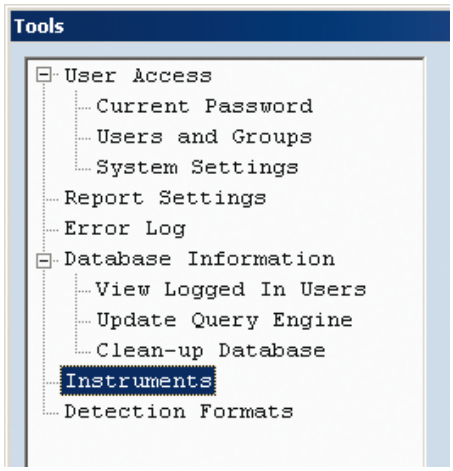
▶ Click 

When the entries in the New Password and Confirm Password fields do not match, the  *button is not active.*

The password must contain at least six characters; one character must be a number and one character must be upper case. Passwords are case-sensitive! Remember the password or keep it in a secure place.

6 Open the *Tools* window by clicking the  button.

7 ▶ In the *Tools* navigator select *Instruments*.



▶ The *Instruments* window will appear.

▶ ▶ ▶

D

8

- Next to the instruments selection box click .
- Enter a name for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, and then click .

Be aware that you use the identical name for the same LightCycler® 480 Instrument when working with more then one database. Otherwise the active instrument will not be set as default any more when changing the database.

- In the *Connection Settings* tab enter the IP Address "*192.168.95.41*"

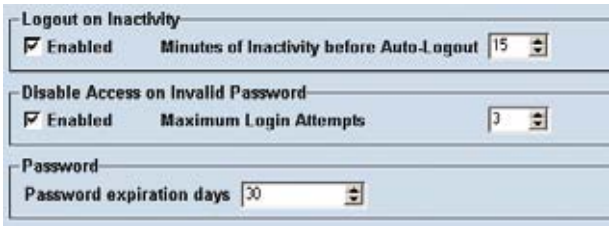
- Click *Test Connection* to test the IP address and to establish a connection with the instrument. The message "*Test Connection succeeded*" should appear. Click .
- Click the *Make default* button.
- Close the *Tools* window.

Alternatively, if you do not want to connect the LightCycler® 480 Software to a real instrument, select one of the four virtual instruments (either for 96- or 384-well format) and make it the default

9

- Open the *Tools* dialog box again, then select *Instruments*.
- Check if the instrument serial number is visible in the field *Instrument ID*. If yes, the instrument is correctly installed

10 In the Tools navigator, select System Settings. The system settings window will appear.



- The settings for *Maximum Login Attempts* and *Password expiration days* might be changed if inappropriate.

Close the *Tools* window

11 Click the *Exit* button to exit the LightCycler® 480 Software.

16.3 Saving an Existing Database and Installing Additional Databases

Save a copy of your database routinely for backup purposes. Before saving the database, make sure the size of the database is equal to (or less than) 700 MB, the capacity of one CD or 4.5 GB corresponding DVD, dependent on your system. To check the size of your database, proceed as follows:

Be aware that the size of experiments in a traceable database and therefore the size of the complete traceable database is enlarged compared to software 1.3 or earlier. This is due to precalculations performed automatically after a run is finished (to speed up subsequent analysis calculations) which are saved in the revision history of each experiment. Thus, the experiment size within a traceable database might exceed 10 MB

Consequently it is recommended to check the size of a database regulary and save a copy of the database when being useful. Make sure the size of the database does not exceed 4.5 GB when saved to a removable DVD.

To check the database size:

1. In Windows Explorer, select C:\Program Files\Roche\Exor4\Data. (The location of the database corresponds to the setting during installation; it may vary depending on what you entered during installation of the database file. See also section *Installing LightCycler® 480 Software*.)
2. Right-click the database (*.IB) you want to check. From the menu, select *Properties* and read the size from the corresponding menu item.

When you need to compress the database file (e.g., if the database has exceeded the size of 700 MB (CD) or 4.5 GB corresponding DVD), you can use the CompactIB tool.

To compress a database file:

1. Shutdown all running database engines by right-clicking the Exor4 icon in the system tray and selecting *Shutdown*.
2. Select the database you want to compress in the Windows Explorer under *C:\Program Files\Roche\Exor4\Data*. (The location of the database corresponds to the setting during installation; it may vary depending on what you entered during installation of the database file. See also section *Installing LightCycler® 480 Software*.)
3. Right-click the database you want to compress. From the menu, select *Properties* and select the *Security* tab. Check the *Allow* box for *Full Control* and *Modify* for all existing groups or user names. Click *OK*.
4. In the *Start* menu, select *Programs/Roche/CompactIB*.
5. The *Compact Interbase Database File* window opens. In the *Database File to Compact* box, enter the directory of the database or click ... to navigate to a location, and click *Open*.
6. Click *Compact* to start the process.

To save a database file:

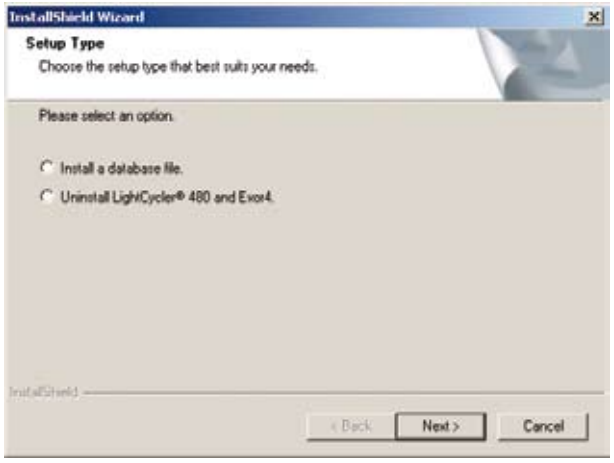
1. Shutdown the Exor4 by right-clicking the Exor4 icon in the system tray and selecting *Shutdown*.
2. Save the database (*.IB) on a CD by using the CD record software on your PC.

To install additional databases:

If the LightCycler® 480 Software is already installed on your computer, you can use the LightCycler® 480 Software setup program to install additional databases:

When installing an additional database, the Exor4 location and database file location cannot be changed. There can be only one location for Exor4, and subsequent database files must be in the same location as the original database was installed.

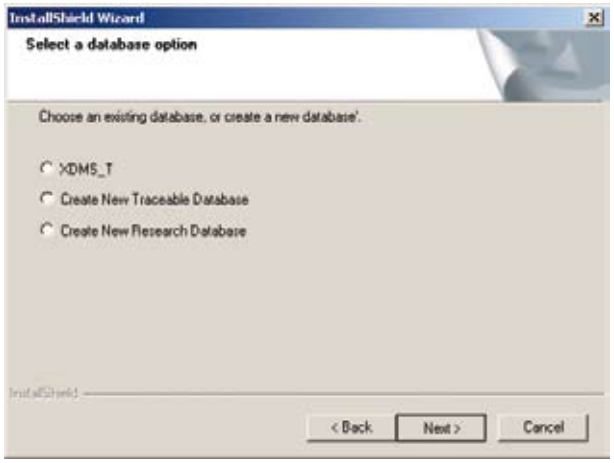
1. Shutdown all running database engines by right-clicking the Exor4 icon in the system tray and selecting *Shutdown*.
2. Insert the LightCycler® 480 Software CD. If installation does not start automatically, double-click LightCycler480_Software_Setup.exe.
3. The *Setup Type* window is displayed. Select *Install a database file*, and click *Next*.



4. Select whether you want to install
   - a new traceable database
   - a new research database
   - an existing database (if any). The names of existing databases are displayed.

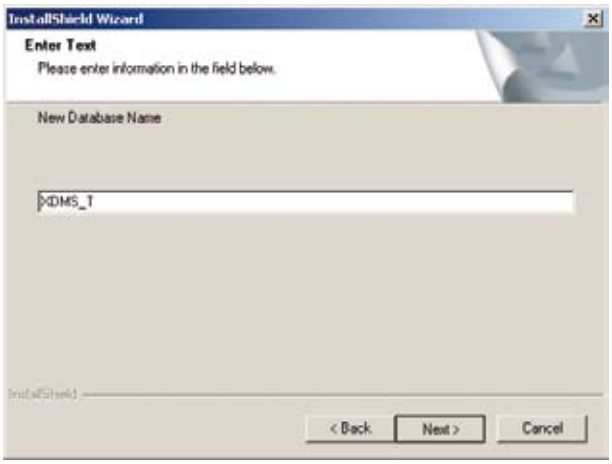
   For detailed information about traceable and research databases see section *Database information*.

   Click *Next*.

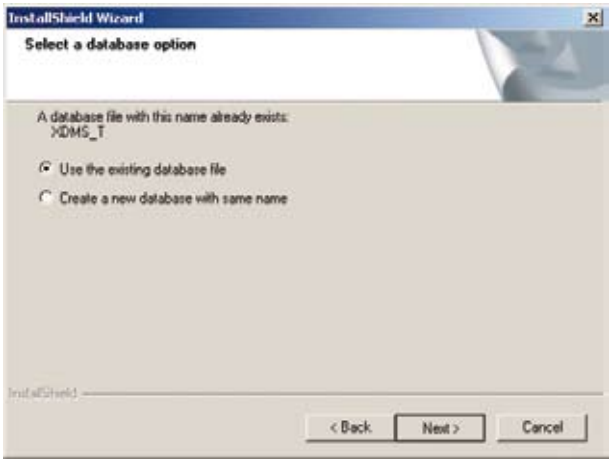


► ► ►

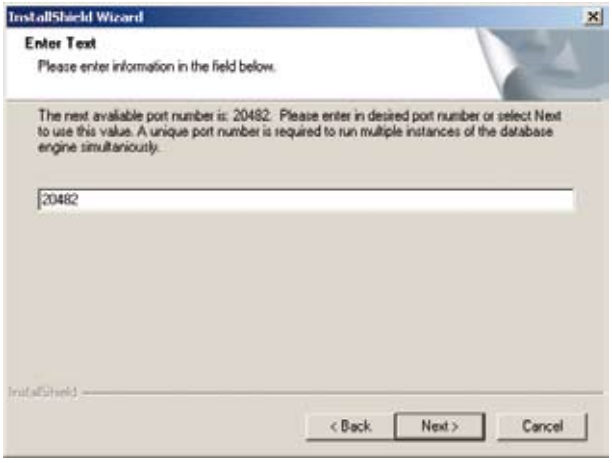
5 The software prompts you to name the new database. Enter a database name, and click *Next*.



If the entered database name already exists, you can choose whether to use the existing database or to create a new database with the same database name. The existing database is maintained.

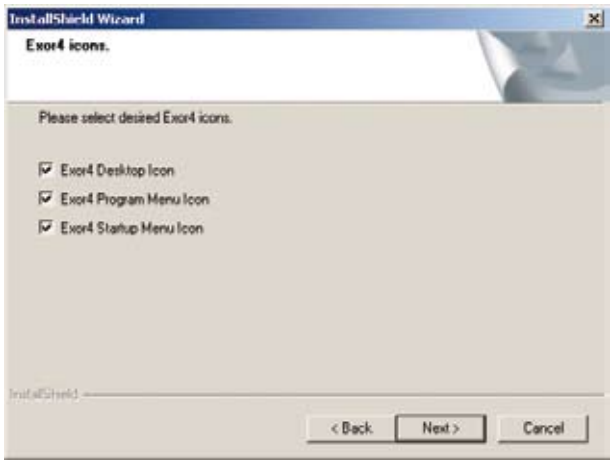


6 The software prompts you to enter a port number for the database. Use the default value or enter a unique port number, and click *Next*.

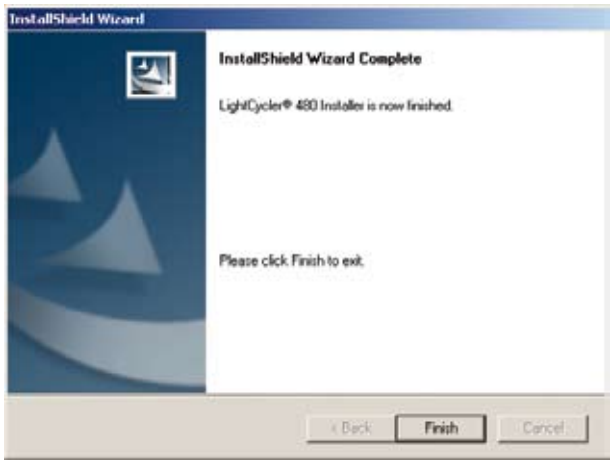


▶ ▶ ▶

7 Select the location for program icons. These are locations from which the LightCycler® 480 Software can be started. Deselect the icon locations you do not want, and click *Next*.



8 A message states that the maintenance is complete. Click *Finish*.



The installation process installs another Exor4 icon on your desktop. Before you can log onto the new database, you must start the newly installed Exor4 service either by double-clicking the icon on your desktop or by rebooting the system.

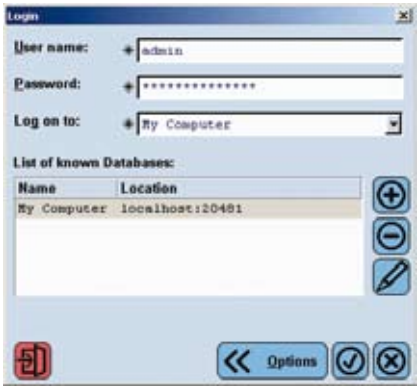
Before defining an experiment using the newly installed database you need to define an instrument. See section Defining an Instrument for details.

16.4 Logging on to Different Databases

You can log on to an additionally installed database by selecting a previously included database in the *Log on to* pull-down menu.

1. Double-click the LightCycler® 480 Software icon to launch the LightCycler® 480 Software.

2. A login dialog box opens. Click *Options* to display the list of known object servers.

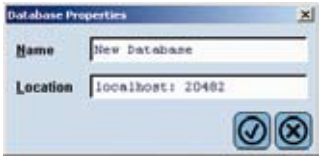


3. Click ⊕. A *Database Properties* window opens.

4. Enter a name for the database and its location.
   - If the database is located on the same computer as the LightCycler® 480 software, enter “localhost” and the port number of the database to be integrated, separated by a colon.
   - If the database is located on a remote computer, enter either the IP address or the network name of the remote computer, and the port number of the database to be integrated, separated by a colon (*e.g.*, 10.127.65.190:20482).

   If the remote computer receives its IP address dynamically (via DHCP) it is best to use the computer name.

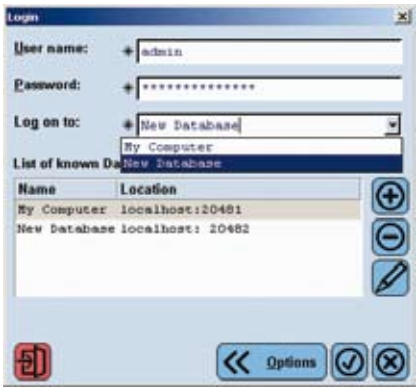
   Click ✓.



To find the port number for a database, point at the Exor4 icon in the system tray, and read the object server properties, which are displayed as shown below.

► ► ►

5 The database is included in the *List of known Databases* and can be selected in the *Log on to* box.



Log on to the software using the *User name* "*admin*" and *Password* "*LightCycler480*" as the initial password for the newly installed database.

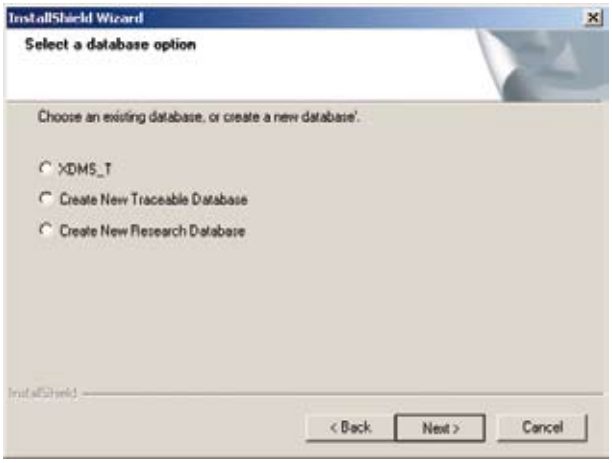
To remove a database from the List of known Databases select a database and click . To change the name or location of a database click .

16.5 Replacing an Existing Database File with a Database File of the Same Name

You can replace an existing database file by a database file of the same name (*e.g.*, after reinstalling LightCycler® 480 Software). No additional Exor4 service is necessary to perform this task.

To replace an existing database file with a database file of the same name:

1. Exit the LightCycler® 480 Software.
2. Shutdown database engine corresponding to the database to be replaced by right-clicking the Exor4 icon in the system tray and selecting *Shutdown*.
3. Copy the database file to be restored (*e.g.,* from a CD) into the database directory.



The name of the database must be identical with the name of the deleted database. Rename the database if necessary.

4. Start the Exor4 service by double-clicking the icon on your desktop.
5. Start the LightCycler® 480 Software.

All passwords and the user structure are stored in the database and not in the software. Therefore use the initial login data:
"admin" as user name and "LightCycler480" as the password.

If you have replaced your database with the original database from the LightCycler® 480 Software CD, also use the initial login data:
"admin" as user name and "LightCycler480" as the password.

■

To log onto the restored database you must enter the user name and password for this database.

16.6 Setting up a Client/Server Network

LightCycler® 480 Software provides network functionality. This allows you to connect the application to a LightCycler® 480 database on a remote computer. It is even possible to host several connections from different users to a single remote database. Accordingly, a LightCycler® 480 client/server network can be set up that connects up to 5 LightCycler® 480 control units and data workstations (*i.e.,* PCs not connected to a LightCycler® 480 Instrument but having LightCycler® 480 Software installed for data analysis) to one LightCycler® 480 database server.

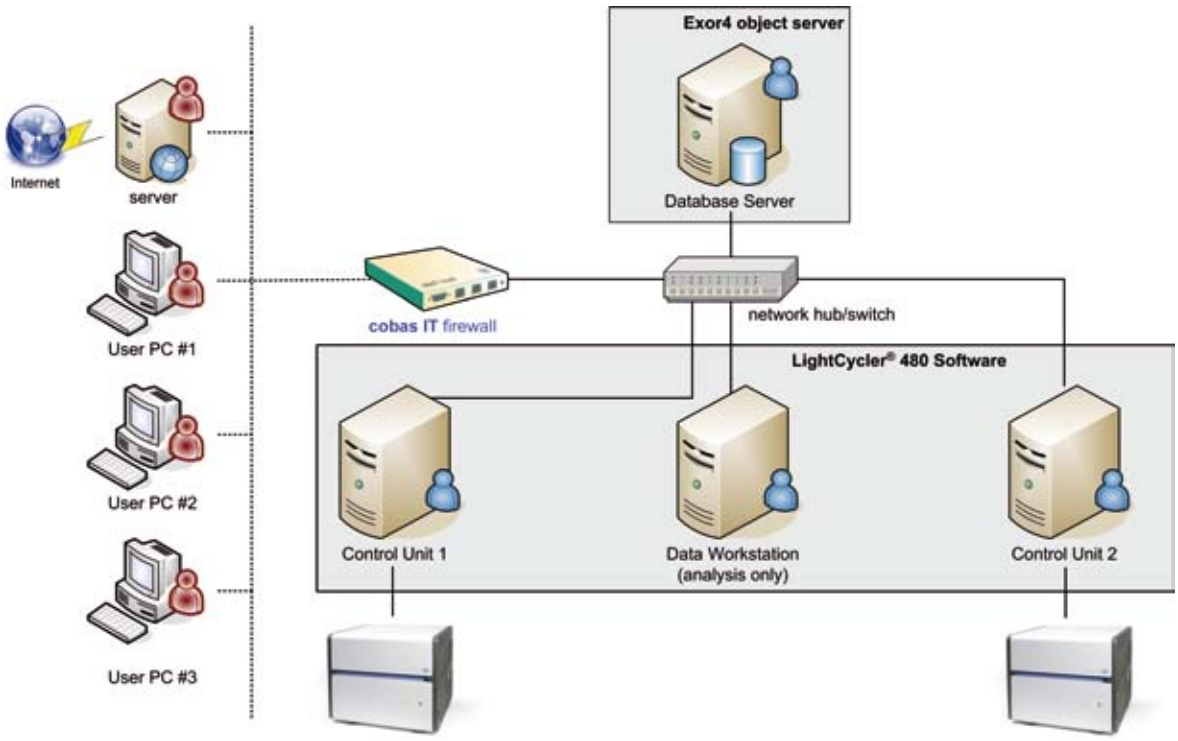
You can also set-up a network of LightCycler® 480 applications without installing a shared remote database server simply to enable easy data exchange between several LightCycler® 480 control units and data workstations.

Before connecting LightCycler® 480 control units and data workstations to a remote database server via a network that is also connected to an unprotected, foreign network, you should carefully read and understand the disclaimer on connection of a LightCycler® 480 System to a network under 'General Precautions'.

The following gives an overview of the principle options for setting up such a network solution. Note that also combinations of these sample configurations are possible.

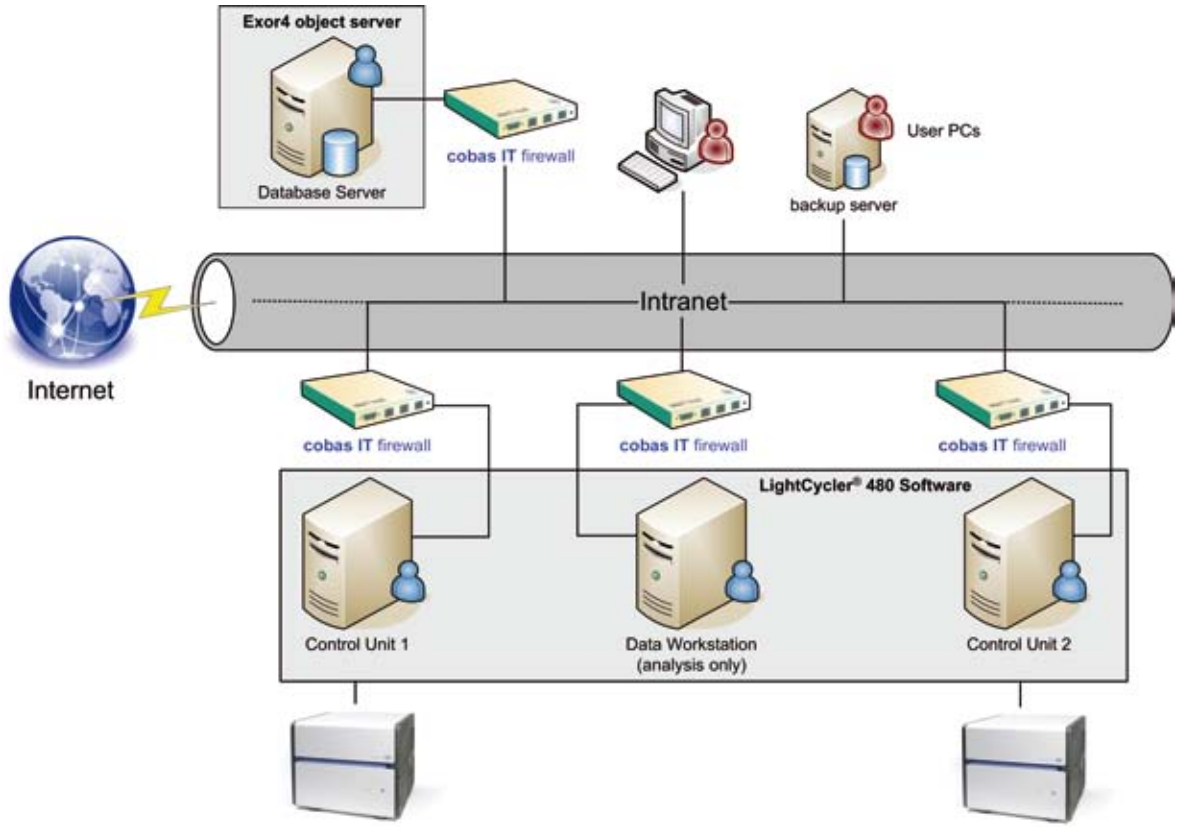
The symbol denotes a Roche computer system, while the symbol denotes a non-Roche computer system provided by the user.

1. A sub-network consisting of LightCycler® 480 applications on Roche computer systems only is connected to a foreign, unprotected network (*e.g.*, a laboratory network or Intranet). The LightCycler® 480 sub-network may consist of any combination of LightCycler® 480 instruments with their control units, data workstations, and/or a database server. To secure the LightCycler® 480 sub-network from any potential threats (*e.g.,* network-borne attacks), network traffic to and from the LightCycler® 480 sub-network must be controlled by the **cobas IT** firewall.



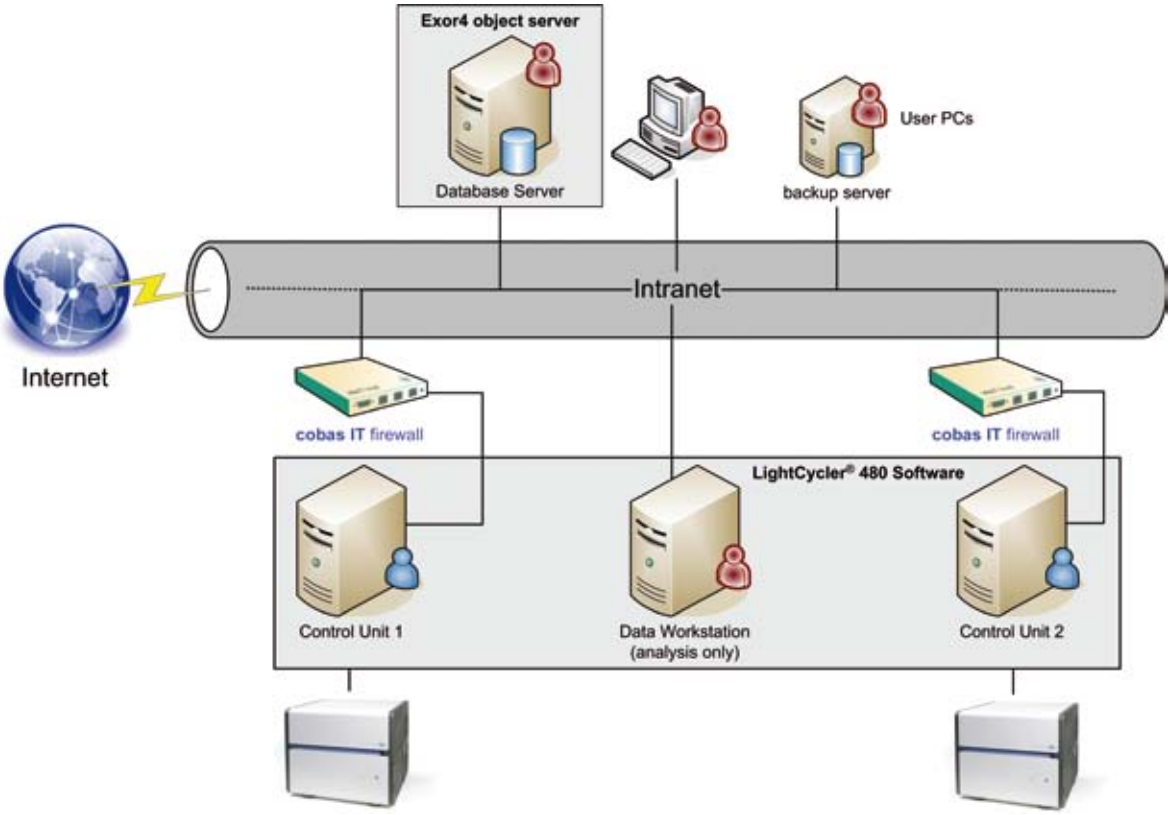
The LightCycler® 480 sub-network may also be run as an isolated, local network with no connection to a foreign network. No router to another network or Internet connection need be installed in this case.

2. All LightCycler® 480 applications (LightCycler® 480 Software on control units and data workstations, and Exor4 Object Server software on the remote database server) are installed on Roche computer systems, connected directly to a foreign, unprotected network (*e.g.,* a laboratory network or Intranet). In this case, each LightCycler® 480 application must be secured individually by a **cobas IT** firewall. Additionally, the security of the communication between the database server and the LightCycler® 480 applications is warranted by setting up Virtual Private Network connections (VPN) between them.



D

3. Some of the LightCycler® 480 applications (LightCycler® 480 Software on data workstations, and/or Exor4 Object Server software on the remote database server) are installed on non-Roche computer systems. These non-Roche systems and LightCycler® 480 control unit(s) are connected directly to a foreign, unprotected network (*e.g.*, a laboratory network or Intranet). In this case, each LightCycler® 480 control unit must be secured individually by a **cobas IT** firewall. Security of non-Roche systems has to be ensured by the user.



When setting up a LightCycler® 480 client/server network solution, observe the following general conditions and restrictions:

If in doubt, contact your local Roche service engineer who will guide through these rules.

- Exor4 Object Server software, which must be installed together with the LightCycler® 480 database on the remote database server, is compatible with both Microsoft Windows XP Professional (service pack 2) and Microsoft Server 2003.

Nevertheless, as Roche has not validated the functionality of Exor4 Object Server software in combination with Microsoft Server 2003, and since Microsoft Server 2003 can only be installed on a non-Roche computer system, Roche cannot support this configuration.

In addition to the remote database, it is also possible to use a local database on the control unit. When you start the LightCycler® 480 Software on the control unit, you can choose which database (local or remote) you want to log on to.

- The same version of LightCycler® 480 Software must be installed on all control units and data workstations.

Only the Exor4 Object Server and the LightCycler® 480 database are installed on the database server.

- Each LightCycler® 480 Instrument must be connected to a separate control unit.
- The LightCycler® 480 database server must run constantly while a user being is logged on to Windows. The Exor4 Object Server must be up and running.
- For safety reasons all users should log on to different accounts of the remote database.
- The number of active connections to the remote database should not exceed 5.
- The use of a virtual instrument on the remote database is limited to 1 for each type (96-well or 384-well).
- Templates and macros must be defined either on LightCycler® 480 instrument control units or in a separate local database on a LightCycler® 480 data workstation.
- Should the network connection between an instrument control unit and the database server be lost during a LightCycler® 480 run, the experimental data should to be exported from the LightCycler® 480 Software on the control unit and imported into the remote database.
- Powering down of the database server during a LightCycler® 480 run may lead to an undefined status of the database and therefore to a possible loss of data.

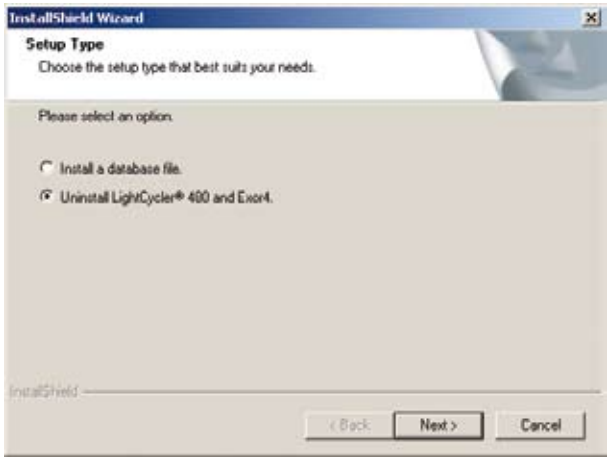
16.7 Removing LightCycler® 480 Software

Follow these steps to uninstall the LightCycler® 480 Software from your local computer.

To uninstall LightCycler® 480 Software:

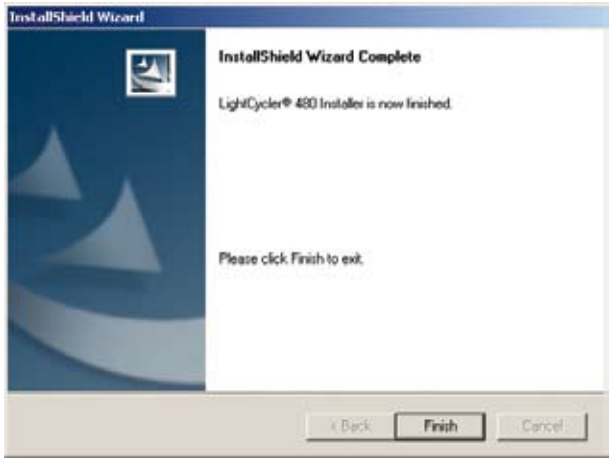
1. Shutdown all running database engines by right-clicking the Exor4 icon in the system tray and selecting *Shutdown*.

2. Insert the LightCycler® 480 Software CD. If installation doesn't start automatically, double-click LightCycler480_Software_Setup.exe. The *Setup Type* window is displayed. Select *Uninstall LightCycler® 480 Basic Software*.



3. You are prompted to confirm the deletion. Click *OK*.

4. A message states that the *InstallShield Wizard* has finished performing maintenance operations. Click *Finish*.



Maintenance

E

Chapter E • Maintenance

Description of the maintenance procedures required for the LightCycler® 480 Instrument

E	Maintenance	353
1	**General Maintenance**	353
2	**Cleaning Instructions**	353
2.1	General Cleaning	353
2.2	Preventive Maintenance	353
3	**Exchanging the Xenon Lamp**	354
4	**Exchanging the Ventilation Dust Filters**	358
5	**Exchanging Fuses**	360

Maintenance

1 General Maintenance

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument is maintenance-free.

2 Cleaning Instructions

Never clean the LightCycler® 480 Instrument without turning the instrument power switch off and disconnecting the power cable.

Do not poor fluids into the thermal block cycler, the compartment of the block cycler unit, or the interior of the instrument.

As with all potentially biohazardous specimens, universal safety precautions should be taken when handling and processing samples. Spills should be immediately disinfected with an appropriate disinfectant solution to avoid spreading contamination to laboratory personnel or equipment. Handling and disposal of infectious material should be performed according to local safety guidelines.

2.1 General Cleaning

Regular cleaning of the LightCycler® 480 Instruments and accessories is not obligatory required. If necessary, clean the housing of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument, the thermal block cycler, and the block cycler cover with a mild commercial detergent. If necessary, use 70% ethanol for disinfecting the instrument housing, the thermal block cycler, and the block cycler cover.

Cleaning of the LightCycler® 480 block cycler unit: pipette into all wells 20µl (384-well block) respectively 125µl (96 well block) of 70% Ethanol or Isopropanol. After waiting 15 minutes pipette up and down several times. Remove the liquid and let the block cycler unit dry before using again. Take care not to destroy the block coating.

2.2 Preventive Maintenance

The area around the LightCycler® 480 Instrument should be checked regularly, to ensure that the air flow is unrestricted and that books, papers, or other supplies are not interfering with the air flow. For detailed requirements, see section *Installation*.

3 Exchanging the Xenon Lamp

Sufficient intensity of the Xenon excitation lamp is a requirement for optimal detection of fluorescent signals during real-time PCR and melting curve analysis. Therefore, the LightCycler® 480 Instrument automatically and continually measures the intensity of the Xenon lamp. If the lamp intensity falls below 50% of its initial intensity, you are automatically warned by the LightCycler® 480 Software that the Xenon lamp must be exchanged. The Xenon lamp is available as an exchange spare part from Roche. Please contact your local Roche representative for details.

Use only the exchange Xenon lamp available directly from Roche (Cat. No. 04 686 136 001).

Never exchange the Xenon lamp without turning the instrument power switch off and disconnecting the power cable. Non-compliance poses the danger of electric shock and damage to the eyes by the bright light of the lamp.

Before exchanging the Xenon lamp, make sure you have waited an appropriate period of time (approximately 20 minutes) after you shut down the LightCycler® 480 Instrument to allow the lamp to cool. Directly after completion of a run, the lamp is hot enough to cause an immediate burn.

In its cold state the lamp has a high internal pressure (as much as 20 bar). During operation the internal pressure is around three times higher than in the cold state. The lamp is extremely unlikely to explode but the possibility cannot be entirely ruled out. Therefore, when handling the Xenon lamp always use the protective jacket or cap supplied. When installing the lamp, remove the protective jacket or cap and always take the following precautions: wear goggles and gloves and protect your neck (e.g., with a thick scarf). Take the same precautions when removing the lamp.

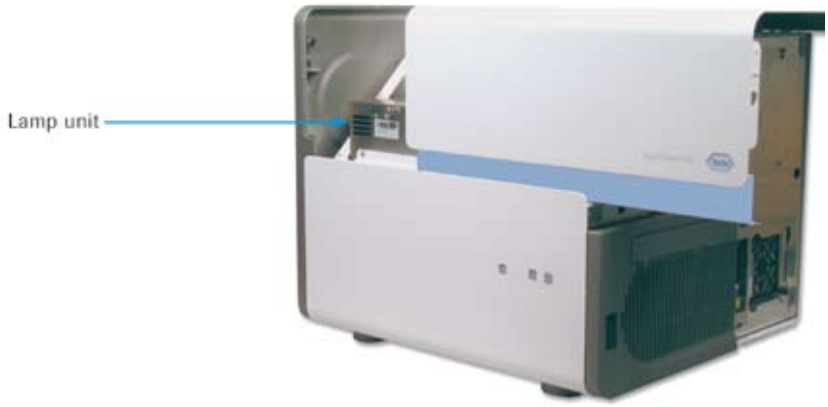
Do not get finger marks, grease, paint or the like on the bulb. Before using the lamp, remove any such marks with isopropanol or ethanol or any other suitable agent that leaves no residues on the bulb.

The Xenon lamp does not contain any materials which are harmful to the environment so they are not subject to special waste disposal regulations. Prior to disposal, the old lamp should be stored in their protective jacket or cap where it cannot be easily accessed. Where possible, the lamp should be disposed off by a specialist waste management company. If this is not possible, put on protective clothing, wrap the lamp completely in leather or thick cloth, smash the lamp, including the discharge tube, with a suitable implement and dispose off the pieces.

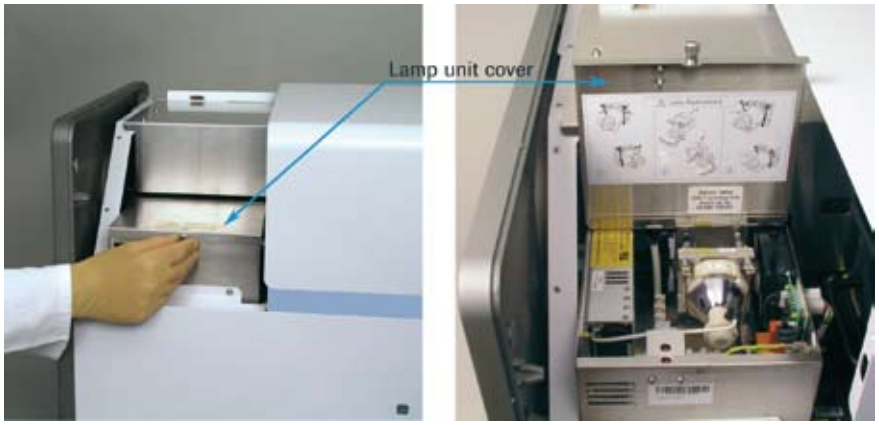
The steps below describes how to exchange the Xenon lamp.

1. Remove the right instrument panel.

2. Now you can easily move the instrument cover to the right, giving access to the lamp unit.



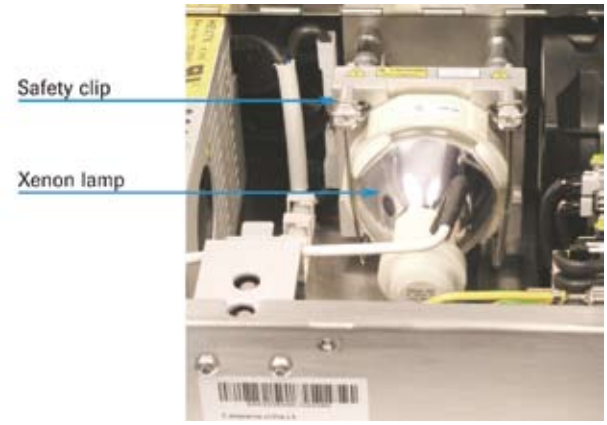
3. To access the Xenon lamp, you have to remove the lamp unit cover first. The cover is fixed by a screw. Unscrew the cover and open it.

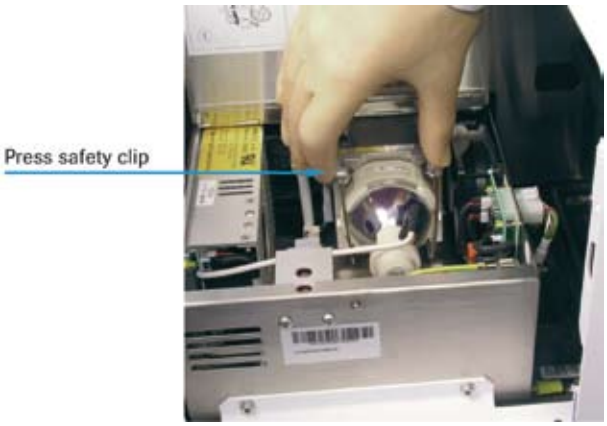


▶ ▶ ▶

E

4 The Xenon lamp is fixed by a clip which itself is secured by a screw. Unscrew the clip and open it.

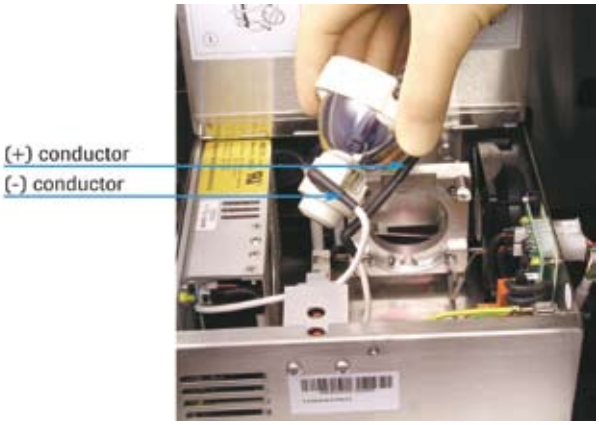




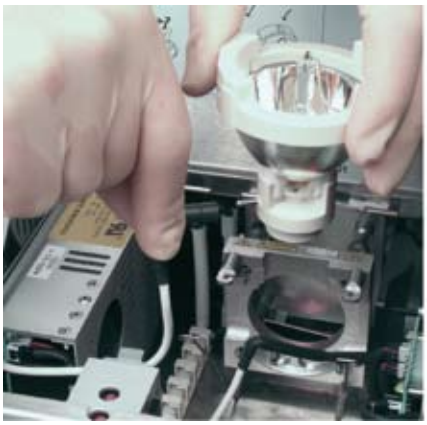
▶ ▶ ▶

E

5 Lift the Xenon lamp out of its clamp and remove the two conductors.



6 Install the new Xenon lamp. First attach the (–) conductor, and then the (+) conductor.



7 Complete installing the new Xenon lamp by putting it back into its clamp. Make sure the (–) conductor points upwardly. Follow Steps 4 to 1 above exactly in reversed order.

8 *After you exchanged the Xenon lamp, make sure to reset the lamp counter in the Instruments window of the Tools dialog of the LightCycler® 480 Software (for details, see section Administrative Tools.) The instrument will read and save the intensity of the lamp as the starting intensity value. During operation, the instrument compares this saved value to the actual lamp intensity to determine the loss of lamp intensity. When the lamp intensity reaches 50% of its starting intensity, you will be informed and prompted to exchange the lamp.*

4 Exchanging the Ventilation Dust Filters

The electronic rack of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument is cooled by ventilation. Two ventilation inlets are located in the lower right corner of the right side of the instrument (right beside the block cycler compartment) and in the back of the instrument. To avoid any contamination of the instrument interior by dust particles, these ventilation inlets carry dust filters.

The dust filters should be exchanged regularly every year. You can order exchange dust filters directly from Roche (Cat. No. 04 686 128 001).

Four exchange dust filters are part of the LightCycler® 480 System package.

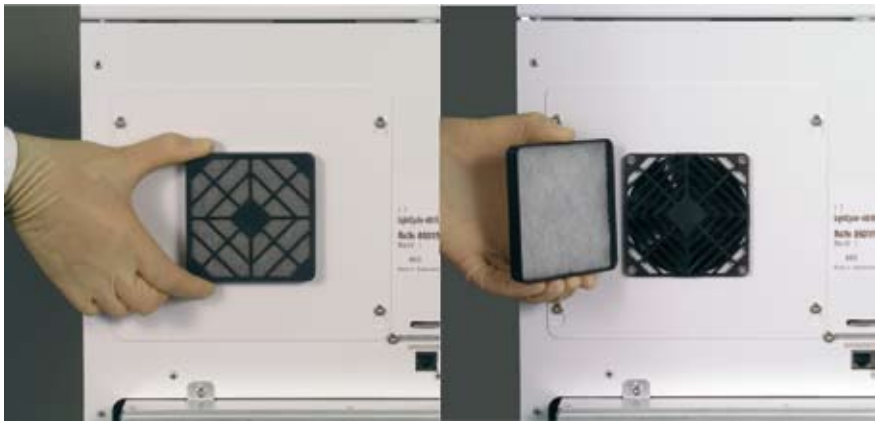
The steps below describes how to exchange the ventilation dust filters.

1 Remove the right instrument panel to access the lateral ventilation inlet.

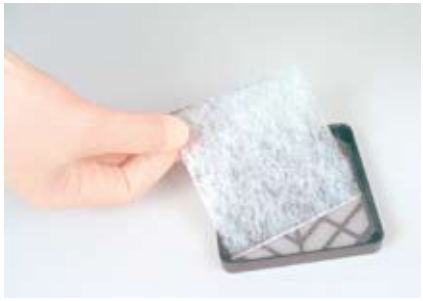
2 Remove the ventilation dust filter carrier.

▶ ▶ ▶

3 In the same way, remove the dust filter carrier from the rear ventilation inlet.



4 Remove the used dust filters from each carrier and insert new filters.



5 Replace each dust filter carrier on the corresponding ventilation inlet. Reassemble the right instrument panel.

■

E

5 Exchanging Fuses

The LightCycler® 480 Instrument contains eight fuse types. Fuses must be exchanged by the user when they are blown. The LightCycler® 480 System package includes 10 replacement fuses for each type.

The following table provides an overview over the types and location of fuses used by the LightCycler® 480 Instrument:

Type	Location	Labeling	Amperage Voltage	Consumer Load
Primary fuses				
High-breaking capacity (T 10A H / 250V)	Left side of power box (when viewed from the instrument front side), instrument exterior 	FUSES LINE INPUT 2 × T10A H / 250V	2 × T10A / 250V	Line input instrument

▶ ▶ ▶

Type	Location	Labeling	Amperage Voltage	Consumer Load
Secondary fuses				
High- or low-breaking capacity	Right side of power box, instrument interior *To access secondary fuses F1 – F5, remove the right instrument panel.*	F1	T3.15 A / 250V	Detection unit
		F2	T8 A / 250V	Block cycler unit
		F3, F4, F5	T16A / 250V	Thermal block cycler Peltier elements

►►►

E

Type	Location	Labeling	Amperage Voltage	Consumer Load
Secondary fuses				
	 *Each of the secondary fuses F1 – F5 has a LED, which indicates its intactness. If a fuse is blown, the corresponding LED will be off.*			
Xenon lamp fuse				
	Instrument interior, right side of Xenon lamp module, above the lamp's mains socket.  *To access the Xenon lamp fuse, remove the instrument cover.*		2 × T1.6A / 250V	Xenon lamp

E

To exchange a primary or secondary fuse:

1. Using a screwdriver, unscrew the cover of the fuse chamber:

2. Remove the cover together with the fuse attached from the chamber.

3. Exchange the blown fuse with a replacement fuse and place it back in the chamber.

4. Screw up the cover again.

■

To exchange the Xenon lamp fuse:

1. Remove the instrument cover.

2. The Xenon lamp fuse is located above the mains socket of the Xenon lamp module.

3. Using forceps, press the clamps of the left and right side of the fuse holder inward. Pull the fuse holder out of its chamber.

4. Exchange the blown fuse with a replacement fuse and place the fuse holder back in the chamber.

5. Re-assemble and close the instrument cover.

Appendix

F

Chapter F • Appendix

Troubleshooting, index
and ordering information

F	Appendix	367
1	**Troubleshooting**	367
1.1	Messages in the Message Area of the LightCycler® 480 Software	368
1.2	Instrument Control Software Messages	369
1.3	Hardware Errors	371
2	**Ordering Information**	373
3	**Index**	375

F

Appendix

1 Troubleshooting

The monitoring of an experiment and the error history records are used to support the servicing of the LightCycler® 480 Instrument. The LightCycler® 480 Software offers a diagnostic tool ("Problem Reporting") to collect all parameters related to the runs performed. Refer to Chapter D Software, section 13. Diagnostic Tools for more details on generating an Instrument Problem Report.

System messages and errors which may potentially occur are listed in the tables below. For each message the probable cause and corrective action typically required for solving the problem are shown. Call your Roche representative for troubleshooting assistance.

Data derived from a run where a system message appeared should be reviewed carefully. If the validity of the results is doubtful, repeat the run.

1.1 Messages in the Message Area of the LightCycler® 480 Software

System Message	Type	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
Timed out while waiting for large enough buffer to resume consuming!	Warning	Instrument disconnected / power off during a run.	Reconnect / restart instrument
An error occurred during the run! The run will now be aborted	Warning	Instrument disconnected / power off during a run	Reconnect / restart instrument
Experiment New Experiment contains no acquisitions	Warning	The run does not contain acquisitions	Select an analysis mode and an acquisition type.
Please activate an instrument before setting up a new run	Warning	There is no default instrument defined.	Click on “Open Tools”, goto Instruments and set an instrument as default.
Dispatcher Exception: Attempted to connect instrument xxxxxx to a different instrument (yyyyyy) on port HTC on 192.168.95.41. Please choose the correct instrument in the software, connect to a different instrument/ port, or create a new instrument if this is a new instrument (hasn’t been connected before)!	Warning	The instrument connected to the IP address has changed.	Click on “Open Tools”, goto Instruments and create a new instrument, and set it as default.
Failed to open log file C:\Program Files\Roche\LightCycler480\Bin\Logs \Instr_xxxxxx000.log. A connected instrument is already using the log file!	Warning	The instrument is already connected	-
Cannot find a user with the login name “xy”	Warning	User does not exist in database.	Click on “Open Tools” and check user settings under “Users and Groups”. Define user as appropriate.
The supplied password does not match user xy!	Warning	Wrong password entered.	Check password entered.
The application was unable to abort the run in a timely manner, please save the experiment to recover any data acquired this far. The application may not behave as expected until restarted!	Error	Hardware or software error in the instrument.	Save the experiment and restart LightCycler® 480 Software.
An error occurred during the run! The run will now be aborted	Error	Hardware or software error in the instrument.	If instrument’s status LED is RED, restart instrument.

1.2 Instrument Control Software Messages

Error No.	System Message	Type	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
16	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Communication Error with Block Cycler Controller.	Restart instrument.
26	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Communication Error with Detection Controller.	Restart instrument.
36	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Communication Error with Raw Data controller 3.	Restart instrument.
46	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Communication Error with Detection Controller 3.	Restart instrument.
11001	Command not allowed	Error	The command send to the instrument cannot be executed at this time.	a) check MWP, try command again b) after error: restart LightCycler® Software and recover data from instrument c) restart instrument
10006	Wrong instrument type connected	Error	The software is not connected to a Light Cycler® 480 Instrument or the instrument EEPROM is defect.	Check if you are connected to the correct instrument. Contact Roche technical service if it is the case.
100100010	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Block Cycler Controller Board removed or not properly connected.	Check Block Cycler Controller Board.
100100020	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Detection Control Motors Controller Board removed or not properly connected.	Check Detection Control Motors Controller Board.
100100040	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Detection Control Controller Board removed or not properly connected.	Check Detection Control Controller Board.
100100050	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Data Reduction Controller Board removed or not properly connected.	Check Data Reduction Controller Board.
100100080	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Controller Firmware is older as expected.	Restart instrument.
100100100	Restart instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Indicator Board defect or unplugged.	Check Indicator Board.
100600120	Command not allowed	Warning	Command cannot be executed due to a previous error.	If instrument status LED is RED, restart instrument. If instrument status LED is GREEN, check multiwell plate and repeat command.
100600130	Command not allowed	Warning	Command cannot be executed due to a previous error.	If instrument status LED is RED, restart instrument. If instrument status LED is GREEN, check multiwell plate and repeat command.

Error No.	System Message	Type	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
100800100		Warning Error	Block cycler and cover are not compatible. Block cycler EEPROM defect.	Check thermal block cycler and block cycler cover. Check EEPROM cable.
101100100		Warning	Wrong MWP orientation. MWP was loaded during initialization.	Check multiwell plate.
101100110		Warning	Multiwell plate and block cycler are not compatible.	Check multiwell plate and thermal block cycler type.
101400130		Error	Door is open. Micro switch defect.	Close door. Check Micro switch.

1.3 Hardware Errors

Error No.	System Message	Type	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
210259098	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Block temperature out of range.	Check block cycler. Check settings for ramp rate (°C/s).
210259120	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Electronic rack temperature over 90°C.	
210260004	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Cover Heater on failed.	Check block cycler cover.
220257060	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Init light barrier X-Axis failed	Check Loading
220257060	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Init LB X-Axis failed	Check Loading
220272069	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Loading move command failed	Check Loading
220272759	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Loading move command failed	Check Loading
220274056	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Motor Z- or X-Axis not connected	Check Loading
220274059	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Loading blocked during movement	Check Loading
220513059	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Init light barrier Z-Axis failed	Check Loading
220513060	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Init light barrier Z-Axis failed	Check Loading
224257400	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	MWP Detection sensor failed	Check MWP Sensors
230257122	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	LB Ex Filter Wheel defect.	Check Filter Wheel.
230258124	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Motor Ex Filter Wheel defect.	Check Filter Wheel.
230513130	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Xenon Lamp defect.	Check Xenon lamp.
240117060	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Synch-Error	Camera temperature too high.	Check camera. Check environmental temperature.
310000095	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	No block inserted	Check Block
310000096	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	No block cycler inserted. Sensor data are not available.	Check Block, Block Connection.
310000097	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Block sensor shortcut	Check Block
310000099	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	No block cycler cover or not recognized.	Check block cycler cover heater.
310000104	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Block inhomogeneity detected	Check Block

Error No.	System Message	Type	Possible Cause	Corrective Action
310000107	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error		Check block cycler.
310000108	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Block cycler temperature sensor defect.	Check block cycler.
310000112	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	No block cycler inserted. Sensor data are not available.	Check block cycler and block connection.
310000115	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	No block inserted Sensor data are not available.	Check block cycler and block connection.
310000118	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Electronic Rack temperature sensor unplugged or defect.	Check Electronic Rack temperature sensor.
310000145	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Fuse F5 defect.	Check fuse F5.
310000146	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Fuse F4 defect.	Check fuse F4.
310000147	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Fuse F3 defect.	Check fuse F3.
310000148	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Fuse F2 defect.	Check fuse F2.
340000050	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Camera FireWire cable unplugged. Camera data cable unplugged. Ex Motor or LB on Optics unit defect. Electronic Rack Fan defect.	Check Camera. Check Optics module. Check Electronic Rack Fan.
340000060	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Camera temperature too high.	Check camera. Check environmental temperature.
340000067	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Cover Markers not found.	Check block cycler cover and camera.
340000080	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Asynch-Error	Optics cable unplugged. LB Em Filter Wheel defect. Block cycler cover markers not found. The Reference Channel EEPROM is not programmed.	Check Xenon lamp. Check Optics module. Check Filter Parameters.
500100850	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Error	Appears in combination with 230513130 (Xenon Lamp defect).	Check Xenon lamp.
500500420	Restart Instrument, inform Roche service	Error	No open channel Found TL-Slave 1.	Check instrument connection.

2 Ordering Information

Roche Applied Science offers a large selection of reagents and systems for life science research. For a complete overview of related products and manuals, please visit and bookmark our home page, http://www.roche-applied-science.com, and visit our special interest site for

- the LightCycler® 480 System:
  http://www.lightcycler480.com
- the MagNA Pure System family for automated nucleic acid isolation:
  http://www.magnapure.com
- DNA & RNA preparation – Versatile Tools for Nucleic Acid Purification:
  http://www.roche-applied-science.com/napure
- Redefining Real-Time qPCR Assays with prevalidated UPL-probes:
  http://www.universalprobelibrary.com

Instruments		
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, 96-well	1 instrument with control unit and accessories	05 015 278 001
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II, 384-well	1 instrument with control unit and accessories	05 015 243 001
Software		
LightCycler® 480 Software, Version 1.5	1 software package	04 994 884 001
LightCycler® 480 LIMS Interface Module	1 software package	05 066 310 001
LightCycler® 480 Gene Scanning Software	1 software package	05 103 908 001
LightCycler® 480 Multiple Plate Analysis Software	1 software package	05 075 122 001
Accessories		
LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (96-well) Silver	96-well thermal block cycler unit, including block cycler cover, storage box and loading device	05 015 219 001
LightCycler® 480 Thermal Block Cycler Unit (384-well) Silver	384-well thermal block cycler unit, including block cycler cover, storage box and loading device	05 015 197 001
Spare Parts		
LightCycler® 480 Dust Filters	4 filters	04 686 128 001
LightCycler® 480 Xenon Lamp	1 lamp	04 686 136 001
Disposables		
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 96	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	04 729 692 001
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 384	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	04 729 749 001
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 96, clear	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	05 102 413 001
LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate 384, clear	50 plates with 50 sealing foils	05 102 430 001
LightCycler® 480 Sealing Foil	1 x 50 foils	04 729 757 001
LightCycler® 480 Sealing Foil Applicator		04 706 170 001

PCR Reagents		
LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Master	5 × 100 µl (500 reactions, 20 µl each)	04 909 631 001
LightCycler® 480 PCR Master SYBR Green	1 kit (5 × 100 reactions, 20 µl each) 1 kit (10 × 500 reactions, 20 µl each)	04 707 516 001 04 887 352 001
LightCycler® 480 Probes Master	1 kit (5 × 100 reactions, 20 µl each) 1 kit (10 × 500 reactions, 20 µl each) 1 kit (1 × 5000 reactions, 20 µl each)	04 707 494 001 04 887 301 001 04 902 343 001
LightCycler® 480 Genotyping Master	1 kit (4 × 96 reactions, 20 µl each)	04 707 524 001
LightCycler® 480 RNA Master Hydrolysis Probe	1 kit (5 × 100 reactions)	04 991 885 001
Labeling Reagents		
LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Dye	1 ml	04 909 640 001
SimpleProbe 519 Labeling Reagent	100 µmol	04 687 132 001
LightCycler® 480 CYAN 500 Labeling Reagent	1 vial (100 µmol)	04 764 153 001
LightCycler® Fluorescein CPG	1 g 5 columns	03 138 178 001 03 113 906 001
LightCycler® Red 640-N-hydroxysuccinimide ester	1 vial	12 015 161 001
LightCycler® Red 610-N-hydroxysuccinimide ester	1 vial	03 561 488 001
LightCycler® 480 Demo Kit	1 kit (3 instrument runs)	04 710 924 001
Isolation of Nucleic Acids		
High Pure PCR Template Preparation Kit	100 purifications	11 796 828 001

3 Index

Index word **page**

21 CFR Part 11 compliance 10

Abort a run 133

Absolute Quantification analysis 161
- Performing methods 162
- Using the Fit Points method 170
- Using the Second Derivative Maximum method 168
- Viewing results 176

Absolute Quantification experiment
- Using the Fit Points method 172

Acquisition 254
- Acquisitions (per °C) 130

Add
- Analysis notes 154

Adjust
- Threshold 171

Administration folder 101

Administrative tools
- Overview 294

Administrator
- Local Administrator role 299

Advanced Analysis mode 180

Aluminium thermal block cycler 51
- Specifications 34

Amplification curve endpoints
- Analysis 216

Analysis
- Performing 148
- Removing 154
- Renaming 155

Analysis modules 147

Analysis notes
- Adding 154

Analysis results
- Exporting 156

Analysis steps
- Overview 148

Analysis subset 266

Analysis window 150

F

Apply
Color Compensation ... 256
Subset template ... 269
Template ... 137, 260

ATF file ... 102
Importing ... 113

Auto pairing
Relative Quantification analysis ... 184

Background correction range
Setting ... 173

Basic Analysis mode ... 180

Batch export ... 116

Batch import ... 120

Block cycler cover ... 49, 52, 80

Block cycler door ... 51

Block cycler loading device ... 80

Block cycler unit ... 47, 51

Building blocks
LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 47

CCD camera ... 47, 55

Change
Genotype call ... 230, 243

Chart
Copying ... 273
Displaying ... 153
Exporting ... 272
Exposure History ... 131
Fluorescence History ... 131
Menu ... 153
Overview ... 270
Panning ... 275
Preferences ... 270, 282
Printing ... 270
Temperature History ... 131
Types ... 131
Types of information ... 270
Zooming ... 153, 274

Chart data
Exporting ... 273

Chart heading
Specifying ... 284

Chart label styles
Specifying ... 284

Chart preferences
Overriding default ... 287
Overriding, example ... 289

F

Chart preferences item
Creating ... 290
Making it the default ... 290
Opening ... 282

Cleaning ... 353

Color Compensation ... 119, 147, 149, 168
Applying ... 256
Insufficient ... 252
Selecting ... 151
Using ... 249

Color Compensation analysis
Overview ... 248

Color Compensation (CC) object ... 248
Applying ... 133

Color Compensation experiment
Performing ... 250
Running ... 253

Configure
Sample Editor properties ... 138

Connect
LightCycler® 480 Instrument to the software ... 336

Control unit ... 45
LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 31

Cooling elements ... 52

Copy
Sample information ... 152
Table region to the clipboard ... 276

Create
Experiment from templates ... 261
New object ... 103
Result sets ... 199
Subset ... 266
Subset template ... 269
Template ... 260

Crossing point (Cp) ... 161
Of the sample ... 162

Crosstalk ... 248

Crosstalk remaining
Recommendations ... 252

Customize
Charts ... 282
Online data display ... 132
Report ... 278
Samples ... 282

Cy5 ... 56, 57
Reporter dye ... 67

Cycle ... 129

Database
Checking the size ... 339
Cleaning-up ... 315
Installing additional databases ... 339
Logging off ... 96
Logging on to a different database ... 343
Remote database ... 346
Research database ... 314
Saving an existing database ... 339
Traceable database ... 314
Updating ... 314

Database file
Compressing ... 339
Replacing with a database file of the same name ... 345
Saving ... 339

Database handling
Software Version 1.3 or earlier ... 317

Database Information window ... 314

Database items
Navigation ... 100

Define
Instrument ... 322
Melt program ... 206
Program ... 128
Temperature targets ... 128

Deselect
Sample ... 108, 111

Detection channels ... 56
LightCycler® 480 Instrument I filter set ... 56
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II filter set ... 57

Detection format ... 323
Defining for a new fluorescent dye ... 326
Overview ... 63
Setting ... 126

Detection formats
LightCycler® 480 Instrument I filter set ... 323
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II filter set ... 324
Supported detection formats ... 61
Tm Calling analysis ... 208

Detection unit ... 47, 54
Filter sets ... 32
Specifications ... 32

Detector
Detection unit ... 32

Determine
Fit Points ... 171

Diagnostic tools ... 328

Display
Chart ... 153

F

Disposables 58

Dual-color experiment 182

Dust filter 50
Exchanging 358

Dye combinations
With universal CC object 248

Emission filter 55, 56

Endpoint Genotyping
Performing with PCR Read 220
Performing with Pre/Post Read 223
Result control concept 231
Template 231

Endpoint Genotyping analysis 216
Charts 228
Overview 217
Performing 225
Results 227
Supported samples 219

Endpoint Genotyping experiment
Measurement modes 219

Enter
Sample information 139

Enter data
In Plate View 141
In Table View 141

Environmental parameters
LightCycler® 480 Instrument 29

Environmental requirements 42

Equipment
Additionally required 62

Error Log 313, 329
Deleting files 313, 329

Errors
Hardware errors 371

Exchanging
Thermal block cycler 80

Excitation
Detection unit 32

Excitation–emission filter combinations
LightCycler® 480 Instrument I 56
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II 57

Excitation filter 55, 56
Wavelengths 32, 33

Excitation light source 54

Exclude
Samples ... 111

Exit software ... 96

Experiment
Creating from templates ... 261
Programming ... 124
Types of permission ... 300

Experiment macro
Creating ... 262
Running ... 263

Experiment raw data
Exporting ... 113

Experiment run
Starting ... 133

Experiment text file ... 114

Export ... 96
Analysis results ... 156
Batch export ... 102, 116, 314
Chart ... 272
Chart data ... 273
Directories ... 293
Experiment raw data ... 113, 115
Individual LightCycler® 480 Software objects ... 115
Instrument Problem Report ... 328
Multiple files ... 116
Object ... 113
Object data ... 102
Sample editor data ... 146
Sample information ... 112, 142, 153
Table data ... 276

External melting standard object
Saving ... 244

External standard curve
Generating ... 202
Using ... 166

FAM ... 56, 57
Reporter dye ... 67

Files
Importing ... 113, 119
IXO ... 102

Filter
Excitating ... 55

Filter combination
Selecting ... 151

Filter combinations
LightCycler® 480 Instrument I ... 56
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II ... 57

F

Filter combinations for detection format
Selecting ... 127
Filter set
LightCycler® 480 Instrument I ... 32
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II ... 33
Fit Points
Determining ... 171
Fit Points method
Performing an Absolute Quantification analysis ... 170
Performing an Absolute Quantification experiment ... 172
Fluorescein ... 56, 57
Fluorescence chart
Specifying content ... 284
Specifying information ... 285
Fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) ... 64, 232
Fluos ... 56, 57
Folder
Types of permission ... 302
FRET (fluorescence energy transfer) ... 64, 232
Fuses ... 360
Exchanging ... 363
Exchanging fuse of the Xenon lamp ... 364
Location ... 360
Types ... 360
Generate
Report ... 278
Genotype analysis
Template ... 259
Genotype call
Changing ... 230, 243
Genotype group
Renaming ... 242
Genotyping ... 70, 147
Global action bar ... 96
Grouping method
Melting Curve Genotyping analysis ... 238
Handheld bar-code scanner ... 46
Specifications ... 36
Haplotype analysis ... 216
Hardware errors ... 371
Heated lid ... 51
Heat-transfer technology ... 52
High Confidence algorithm ... 168

High Sensitivity algorithm 168

HybProbe probes 56, 57
Monitoring PCR 69

Hydrolysis probes 56, 57
Monitoring PCR 67

Import
Batch import 102, 120
Data files 102
Files 113, 119
Multiple files 120
Sample Editor data 144
Sample information 142

Include
Samples 111

Initial password 92

Insert
New thermal block cycler 84

Install
Additional databases 340
LightCycler® 480 Instrument II 43
LightCycler® 480 Software 331

Installation requirements
LightCycler® 480 Instrument 40

Instrument 95
Defining 322
Virtual Instrument 123

Instrument Problem Report 328
Exporting 328

Instrument window 319

Integration time mode
Setting 127

Interfaces
LightCycler® 480 Instrument 30

IXO file 102
Importing 113

Lamp unit 47, 54

LAN interface 46, 50

LightCycler® 480 client/server network
Conditions and restrictions 348

LightCycler® 480 Control Kit 61

LightCycler® 480 Genotyping Master 60, 61

LightCycler® 480 High Resolution Melting Master 60

F

LightCycler® 480 Instrument
Conformity ... 11
Connecting to the software ... 336
Cover removed ... 48
Description ... 47
Installation requirements ... 40
License statements ... 11
Main building blocks ... 47
Specifications ... 29
Symbols ... 18
Warnings and precautions ... 19

LightCycler® 480 Instrument I filter set
Detection channel ... 56
Detection formats ... 324

LightCycler® 480 Instrument II
New features ... 26

LightCycler® 480 Instrument II filter set
Detection channels ... 57
Detection formats ... 324

LightCycler® 480 Instrument master mixes ... 60

LightCycler® 480 Instrument Operator's Manual
Structure ... 16

LightCycler® 480 Instrument run
Preparing ... 77
Starting ... 77

LightCycler® 480 Multiwell Plate ... 59

LightCycler® 480 Probes Master ... 60, 61

LightCycler® 480 RNA Master Hydrolysis Probes ... 60, 61

LightCycler® 480 Software
21 CFR Part 11 compliance ... 10
Components ... 90
Installing ... 331
New functions ... 26
Overview ... 90
Removing ... 350
Starting ... 92, 336

LightCycler® 480 Software main window
Areas ... 94

LightCycler® 480 SYBR Green I Master ... 60, 61

LightCycler® Cyan 500 ... 56, 57
Reporter dye ... 67

LightCycler® Red 610 ... 56, 57
Reporter dye ... 67

LightCycler® Red 640 ... 56, 57
Reporter dye ... 67

LightCycler® Red 705 ... 57

LIMS ... 31, 254, 262

F

LIMS connection 53

Loading device 52, 80

Log off 96

Macro 257, 262

- Creating an experiment macro 262
- Roche Macros 263
- Running an experiment macro 263
- Types of permission 303

Mains switch 76

Maintenance 353

Manual

- Structure 16
- Symbols 17
- Text conventions 17

Master mixes

- LightCycler® 480 Instrument 60

Master reagents

- LightCycler® 480 Instrument 60

Melting Curve analysis 206

- After PCR with SYBR Green I dye 66

Melting Curve Genotyping

- Grouping samples 234
- Types of sample groups/calls 234

Melting Curve Genotyping analysis 216

- Charts 241
- Displaying the raw data 234
- Grouping method 238
- Overview 232
- Performing 238
- Resolution of a sample 234
- Result control concept 245
- Results 240
- Score 234
- Template 245
- Used melting standards 234

Melting Curve Genotyping experiment

- Performing 235

Melting Curves chart 207

Melting Peaks chart 207, 214

Melting standards

- Melting Curve Genotyping analysis 234

Melting Temperature analysis

- Content 207

Melt program

- Defining 206

F

Message area
Parts ... 99
Messages ... 368
Instrument control software messages ... 369
Modify
Subset ... 268
Module bar ... 97
Monitoring PCR
With HybProbe probes ... 69
With hydrolysis probes ... 67
With the SYBR Green I Dye ... 65
Mono-color experiment ... 182
Multicolor ... 55, 56, 250
Endpoint Genotyping ... 219
Multicolor detection ... 67, 69
Multicolor HybProbe detection format ... 127
Multiwell plate ... 58
Loading ... 53, 78
Removing ... 53
Sealing ... 59
Multiwell plate bar-code scanner ... 51, 53
Specifications ... 35
Multiwell plate loader ... 48, 49, 51
Multiwell plate (MWP) image ... 109
Information provided ... 110
Printing ... 110
Zooming in/out ... 109
Multiwell plate type
Setting ... 327
Navigation
Database items ... 100
Network
Client/Server ... 346
Principle options for setting up ... 346
Network cable ... 46
Network solution
Condition and restrictions ... 348
New functions
LightCycler® 480 System ... 26
Noiseband
Setting ... 170, 174
Object
Creating ... 103
Exporting ... 96, 113

F

Object files 102

Object handling
Software Version 1.3 or earlier 318

Object types
Suitable for templates 258

Online data display
Customizing 132

Open
Chart Preferences item 282

Operation log 328
Viewing 321

Optics unit 47, 54

Ordering information 373

Overcompensation
Recommendations 252

Pair samples 199

Pan
Chart 275

Password
Changing 311
Expiration days 310
Initial password 92

PCR efficiency 163, 164

PCR efficiency correction 180

PCR Read 219

Peak data
Sorting 212

Peltier elements 52

Perform
Advanced Relative Quantification experiment 187
Analysis 148
Basic Relative Quantification experiment 185
Color Compensation experiment 250
Endpoint Genotyping analysis 225
Endpoint Genotyping with PCR Read 220
Endpoint Genotyping with Pre/Post Read 223
Manual Tm Calling analysis 214
Melting Curve Genotyping analysis 238
Melting Curve Genotyping experiment 235
Tm Calling analysis 208

Permissions
Object-specific 300

Plate detector 53, 327

Plate View
Entering data ... 141
Power box ... 50
Power cable ... 45
Power requirements
LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 40
Preference
Types of permission ... 304
Preferences
Chart preferences ... 270, 282
Folder ... 282
Overview ... 282
Sample preferences ... 291
User preferences ... 293
Pre/Post Read ... 219
Print
Chart ... 270
Multiwell plate (MWP) image ... 110
Report ... 281
Problem Report ... 102, 328
Program ... 128
Defining ... 128
Ending ... 133
New experiment ... 124
Provide
Standard curve ... 164
Quantification ... 147
Quantification analysis
Template ... 258
Query
Creating ... 314
Executing ... 104
Query tab ... 104
Range
Of reaction volume ... 125
Reagents ... 60

F

Relative Quantification analysis
Advanced Analysis mode ... 180
Analysis modes ... 179
Auto pairing ... 184
Basic Analysis mode ... 180
Editing subordinate analyses ... 193
Identifiers ... 184
Invalidating ... 203
Overview ... 179
Principles ... 183
Result control concept ... 205
Template ... 203
Viewing subordinate analyses ... 193
Viewing the results ... 198

Relative Quantification experiment
Types ... 182

Relative Quantification experiment (advanced)
Performing ... 187

Relative Quantification experiment (basic)
Performing ... 185

Remove
Analysis from experiment ... 154
LightCycler® 480 Software ... 350
Thermal block cycler ... 81

Rename
Analysis ... 155
Genotype group ... 242
Subset ... 268

Report ... 258
Customizing ... 278
Generating ... 278
Printing ... 281
Settings ... 312
Template ... 258

Report subset ... 266

Resolution
Melting Curve Genotyping analysis ... 234

Result control concept
Endpoint Genotyping ... 231
Melting Curve Genotyping analysis ... 245
Relative Quantification analysis ... 205

Result set
Creating ... 199
Viewing amplification curves for the samples ... 201

Roche folder ... 101

Run
Aborting ... 133
Color Compensation experiment ... 253
Template ... 258

F

Run module 97
Opening 97
Sample capacity
LightCycler® 480 Instrument 30
Sample Editor 135
Sample Editor data
Exporting 146
Importing 144
Sample Editor properties
Configuring 138
Sample information
Copying 152
Entering 139
Exporting 142, 153
Importing 142
Sample points
Specifying appearance 286
Sample preferences 282
Modifying for an experiment 292
Using 291
Samples
Auto pairing 199
Deselecting 108, 111
Excluding 111
Including 111
Manual pairing 200
Selecting 108, 111, 152
Selecting by clipboard data 277
Viewing amplification curves 201
Sample Table 111
Sorting 112
Sample Table data
Exporting 112
Sample template 258
Save
External melting standard object 244
Standard curve 164
Score of a sample
Melting Curve Genotyping analysis 234
Sealing
Multiwell plates 59
Sealing foil 59
Second Derivative Maximum method 167
Performing an Absolute Quantification analysis 168

F

Select
Color Compensation ... 151
Filter combination ... 151
Samples ... 108, 111, 152
Samples by clipboard data ... 277
Samples from a chart ... 154

Select samples
To include in result calculations ... 152
To view in charts ... 152

Self Test ... 329

Sequence-independent detection assays ... 63

Sequence-specific detection
In qPCR ... 70

Sequence-specific probe binding assays ... 63

Set
Detection format ... 126
Noiseband ... 170

Shipping
LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 30

Silver thermal block cycler ... 51
Specifications ... 34

SimpleProbe Probes ... 56, 57, 71

Single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) analysis ... 216
Methods ... 216

Single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) detection ... 70

Software License Agreement
LightCycler® 480 Software ... 12

Sort
Sample Table ... 112
Table data ... 276

Space requirements
LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 40

Specifications
Detection unit ... 32
Handheld bar-code scanner ... 36
LightCycler® 480 Instrument ... 29
Multiwell plate bar-code scanner ... 35
Thermal block cyclers ... 34

Specify
Chart heading ... 284
Chart label styles ... 284

Standard curve ... 162
Creating ... 202
External ... 164
Providing ... 164
Saving ... 164
Slope ... 163

F

Standard curve chart
Specifying appearance 286
Standard object
Types of permission 305
Start
Experiment run 133
LightCycler® 480 Software 92, 336
Start-up 76
Status bar 95
Status LEDs 48, 76
Subset 101, 278
Creating 266
Default sample subset 266
Modifying 268
Overview 266
Renaming 268
Template 258
Subset template
Applying 269
Creating 269
SYBR Green I 56, 57, 63, 65
System messages 367
System package
Components 39
System start-up 76
Table column
Changing the width 276
Table data
Exporting 276
Sorting 276
Table region
Copying to the clipboard 276
Table View
Entering data 141
Temperature chart
Specifying appearance 287
Specifying content 287
Temperature targets
Defining 128

F

Template
Applying ... 137, 260
Creating ... 260
Creating subset template ... 269
Genotype analysis ... 259
Overview ... 257
Quantification analysis ... 258
Report ... 258
Run ... 258
Sample ... 258
Subset ... 258
Tm Analysis ... 258
Types ... 257
Types of permissions ... 303

Text conventions
Used in this manual ... 17

Therma-Base
Heat transfer technology ... 52

Thermal block cycler ... 47, 51, 80
Different versions ... 80
Exchanging ... 80
Inserting new one ... 84
Removing ... 81
Specifications ... 34

Threshold
Adjusting ... 171

Threshold line ... 171

Tm Calling ... 147, 206

Tm Calling analysis
Automating ... 209
Performing ... 208
Performing manually ... 214
Results ... 206
Template ... 258

Transport locking device ... 44

Troubleshooting ... 367

Uninstall
LightCycler® 480 Software ... 350

Universal Color Compensation (CC) object ... 248

Universal Probe Library ... 68

Upgrade from Software Version 1.2 to 1.5 ... 28

Use
External standard curve ... 166

F

User 95
Account 295
Expert User role 298
Group 296
Managing 306
Role 296
Standard User role 297

User access
Managing 295
Setting conditions 309
To objects 300

User Access tool
Opening 306

User account
Creating new user account 306
Disabling 307

User folders 101

User group
Creating 308
Deleting 309
Editing 309
Managing 306

User interface conventions 91

User name 92

User preferences 282, 293
Specifying 293

User roles
Managing 306
Modifying access rights 309

Ventilation 41, 50

Ventilation dust filters
Exchanging 358

Ventilation requirements 41

VIC / HEX / Yellow555 ..... 56, 57
Reporter dye 67

View results
Absolute Quantification analysis 176
Relative Quantification analysis 198

Virtual LightCycler® 480 Instrument 123

Warnings and precautions
LightCycler® 480 Instrument 19

Window sections
Resizing 98

F

Xenon lamp 354
Exchanging 354
Exchanging the fuse 364
Fuse 362

Zoom in/out
Chart 153, 274
Multiwell plates (MWP) image 109

F

Published by

Roche Diagnostics GmbH
Roche Applied Science
68298 Mannheim
Germany

© 2008 Roche Diagnostics GmbH
All rights reserved.

05152062001 0208